

www.majazionline.ir

ENGLISH TIME

TEACHER'S BOOK



Tom Merner

Susan Rivers

Setsuko Toyama

www.majazionline.ir

OXFORD

ENGLISH TIME

TEACHER'S BOOK



Tom Merner
Susan Rivers
Setsuko Toyama

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

www.majazionline.ir

Oxford University Press

198 Madison Avenue
New York, NY 10016 USA

Great Clarendon Street
Oxford OX2 6DP England

Oxford New York

Auckland Cape Town Dar es Salaam Hong Kong Karachi
Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Nairobi
New Delhi Shanghai Taipei Toronto

With offices in

Argentina Austria Brazil Chile Czech Republic France Greece
Guatemala Hungary Italy Japan Poland Portugal Singapore
South Korea Switzerland Thailand Turkey Ukraine Vietnam

OXFORD is a trademark of Oxford University Press.

ISBN : 978 0 19 436308 2

Copyright © 2001 Oxford University Press

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Oxford University Press, with the sole exception of photocopying carried out under the conditions described below.

This book is sold subject to the condition that it shall not, by way of trade or otherwise, be lent, resold, hired out, or otherwise circulated without the publisher's prior consent in any form of binding or cover other than that in which it is published and without a similar condition including this condition being imposed on the subsequent purchaser.

Photocopying

The Publisher grants permission for the photocopying of those pages marked "Permission granted to reproduce for instructional use" according to the following conditions. Individual purchasers may make copies for their own use or for use by classes they teach. School purchasers may make copies for use by their staff and students, but this permission does not extend to additional schools or branches.

In no circumstances may any part of this book be photocopied for resale.

Editorial Manager: Shelagh Speers

Senior Editor: Lesley Koustaff

Associate Editor: Sarah Wales McGrath

Senior Production Editor: Joseph McGasko

Production Editor: Arlette Lurie

Art Director: Lynn Luchetti

Designer: Shelley Himmelstein

Art Buyer: Andrea Suffredini

Production Manager: Shanta Persaud

Production Coordinator: Eve Wong

Illustrations: Priscilla Garcia Burris, Mena Dolobowsky,
Zina Saunders, Susan Simon, Jim Talbot, and Jeremy Tugeau

Cover design: Silver Editions

Cover art: Jim Talbot

Printing (last digit): 10 9 8

Printed in Hong Kong.

Table of Contents

Syllabus	4
Introduction	6
Sample Pages and Lesson Plans	8
Conversation Time	8
Word Time	10
Practice Time	12
Phonics Time	14
Reviews	16
Teacher Resource Guide	18
Classroom Management	18
Multiple Intelligences	19
Teacher Tools	19
Practical Teaching Tips	20
Teacher's Log	22
Unit Lesson Plans	24
Classroom Language	24
The Alphabet	26
Unit 1	28
Unit 2	36
Unit 3	44
Review 1	52
Unit 4	56
Unit 5	64
Unit 6	72
Review 2	80
Unit 7	84
Unit 8	92
Unit 9	100
Review 3	108
Unit 10	112
Unit 11	120
Unit 12	128
Review 4	136
Games and Activities	140
Workbook Instructions and Answer Key	148
Storybook Instructions and Answer Key	165
Worksheets Instructions and Answer Key	168
Worksheets	174
Award Certificates	198
Tests Instructions and Answer Key	202
Tests	212
Card List	234
Word List	236

Syllabus

Unit	Unit Title	Topic	Conversation Time	Word Time	Practice Time	Phonics Time
1	In the Neighborhood	People and animals	Good morning. Hello! How are you? Fine, thank you.	Annie Ted Digger girl boy dog	I'm Annie. I'm a girl. You're Ted. You're a boy.	Bb ball bird boy Pp pencil pig pizza
2	In the Meadow	Nature	Ah-choo! Bless you! Thanks.	tree butterfly flower cloud bird lake	This is a butterfly. That's a bird.	Gg garden girl gorilla Kk kangaroo key kite
3	On the Farm	Farm animals	Sh! Be quiet! Sorry. That's okay.	pig cow horse chicken sheep cat	What's this? It's a pig. What's that? It's a cow.	Mm milk mop mother Nn net night nurse
Review of Units 1-3						
4	At the Stationery Store	School supplies	Here you are. Thanks. You're welcome.	pen book eraser pencil ruler pencil case	Is it a/an pen? Yes, it is. Is it an eraser? No, it isn't. It's a pencil.	Dd desk dog duck Tt table teacher tiger
5	At School	Numbers	What's your first name? Emily. What's your last name? Young.	one (1) two (2) three (3) four (4) five (5) six (6) seven (7) eight (8) nine (9) ten (10) eleven (11) twelve (12)	How many cows? One cow. Two cows.	Hh hand horse house Ww water window woman
6	In Gym Class	Feelings	Ouch! Are you okay? I think so.	happy sad cold hot hungry thirsty	Are you happy? Yes, I am. No, I'm not. I'm sad.	Ff feet fish fork Vv van vase violin
Review of Units 4-6						

Unit	Unit Title	Topic	Conversation Time	Word Time	Practice Time	Phonics Time
7	At the Food Court	Food	Are you finished? No, not yet. Please hurry!	hamburgers sushi fried rice dumplings noodles pizza	I/You like hamburgers. I/You don't like pizza.	Ss sea sock soup Zz zebra zipper zoo
8	At the Supermarket	Fruit and vegetables	May I borrow a pen? Sure. Here you are. Thanks.	apples oranges bananas cucumbers potatoes carrots	Do you like apples? Yes, I do. No, I don't.	short a ant bag hat map
9	At the Circus	Physical descriptions	What's wrong? I feel sick. That's too bad.	tall short fat thin young old	He's/She's short. He/She isn't tall.	short e bed egg pen vet
Review of Units 7-9						
10	Around Town	Occupations	What's your telephone number? It's 765-1234. Pardon me? 765-1234.	doctor nurse police officer teacher mail carrier firefighter	Is he a doctor? Yes, he is. Is she a doctor? No, she isn't. She's a nurse.	short i dig in pin sit
11	In Annie's Yard	Actions	Dad, this is my friend, Sam. Nice to meet you, Sam. Hello.	ride a bike climb a tree drive a car draw a picture play basketball sing a song	I/You/He/She/It can climb a tree. I/You/He/She/It can't ride a bike.	short o hot mop on pot
12	At the Park	Actions	I'm going now. Bye-bye! See you tomorrow.	swim use chopsticks fly a kite make a sandwich do a cartwheel play the guitar	Can you/he/she/it swim? Yes, I/he/she/it can. No, I/he/she/it can't.	short u bus nut sun up
Review of Units 10-12						

Introduction

Course Description

English Time is a six-level communicative course intended for elementary school students studying English for the first time. It is designed specifically for children studying in an English as a Foreign Language (EFL) context who do not generally hear English spoken outside the classroom. The syllabus progresses at a natural and steady pace, offering students many opportunities to practice each new language item. The aim of the series is to develop students' speaking, listening, reading, and writing skills through activities that reward their curiosity and appeal to their sense of fun. Three recurring characters— Ted, Annie, and Digger the dog— help focus student interest and involvement throughout the course.

The *English Time* series is designed to be preceded by the two-level introductory series *Magic Time*. These two series can be used separately or as one complete eight-level course. The *Magic Time* syllabus provides a solid foundation of vocabulary and communicative language on which the syllabus of *English Time* is built.

Each level of *English Time* includes the following components: Student Book, Audio Cassette and CD, Wall Charts, Workbook, Storybook, Storybook Cassette, Teacher's Book, and Picture and Word Card Book.

Components

The Student Books

The Student Books feature beautiful, full-color illustrations, and a clear, simple design. The illustrations draw students into the pages to explore and experience the language, enhancing student interest and motivation. *English Time* Levels 1–4 feature twelve 4-page units and four 2-page reviews. Each unit features a theme, such as *At Home* or *At School*, to provide a context to the language. Each page of a unit features a single language function so that the focus of the page is clear. The short units allow students to feel they are progressing rapidly, thus building their confidence and motivation. After every three units, the 2-page reviews recycle previously-learned language in new and meaningful contexts.

At the back of each Student Book is *My Picture Dictionary*, in which students write the vocabulary words as they learn them. Also at the back of the Student Books are four Checklists (one for every three units). These give students an opportunity to check what they know, thus building their confidence and allowing parents to follow their children's progress in English.

The Audio Cassettes and CDs

The Cassettes/CDs feature all Student Book conversations, vocabulary words, patterns, songs, chants, and phonics sounds and words. Additional exercises on each Cassette/CD provide valuable listening practice.

The Wall Charts

The Wall Charts feature enlarged versions of each Conversation Time and Word Time page.

The Workbooks

The Workbooks are a natural extension of the Student Books, providing additional reading and writing reinforcement for each lesson. The Workbooks offer an excellent opportunity for teachers to assess student comprehension and language retention. A unique feature of the Levels 1–2 Workbooks is the support box at the top of each page which provides the target language for students to use as a reference as they complete the exercises. Therefore, students do not have to spend time searching for the target language items in their Student Books.

The Teacher's Books

The comprehensive Teacher's Books provide clear step-by-step lesson plans to teach, practice, and review the language presented in the Student Books. Many of the suggested games and activities include different strategies for large and small classes. They also provide individual, pair, and group tasks. The Teacher's Books also feature the tapescript and answer keys.

Included in each Teacher's Book are a special Teacher Resource Guide; Workbook and Storybook instructions and answer keys; photocopiable Worksheets; individual unit, midterm, and final Tests; and a Games and Activities section. The Teacher Resource Guide provides teaching and class management tips for teachers of English to children. The photocopiable Worksheets allow for additional practice of language presented in the Student Books. The Tests allow teachers and parents to assess students' level of comprehension and their progress. The Games section provides a multitude of fun game ideas to enhance any lesson. Also provided are instructions on how to introduce and check the Workbook activities.

The Storybooks and Cassettes

The Storybooks present the Student Book language and main characters in compelling, continuing stories. In this way, students experience language in a context similar to how it is used in everyday life. Students are able to understand the stories, as no new grammar points are introduced, and new vocabulary items are defined on the pages.

Each Storybook is divided into four chapters, with each chapter corresponding to three Student Book units. A Storybook chapter can thus be read after students have completed three Student Book units. Alternatively, the entire Storybook can be read after completing the whole Student Book. Reviews, answer keys, and a glossary are also provided. Each Storybook is accompanied by a cassette.

The Picture and Word Card Books

The Picture and Word Card Books provide one picture card and one word card for each vocabulary and phonics word in the Student Books. There is also one grammar card for each word in the target patterns presented in the Student Books. Picture and Word Card Book 1 also features two sets of uppercase and lowercase alphabet letters. The Picture and Word Card Books are useful for introducing and practicing language. The cards can be enlarged to any size, depending on the teacher's individual needs. They can be copied onto cardboard or regular paper. Students can personalize the cards by cutting them out and coloring them as they wish.

Course Philosophy

English Time is based on the premise that children learn best when their natural curiosity and sense of fun are engaged, and when new language is introduced in small, manageable amounts. *English Time* introduces language in a spiraling syllabus that gradually builds on and reinforces previously learned language. Thus at each new level students are able to maintain and build on the language they know.

The unit topics and situations are both familiar and of universal appeal to children. Students immediately relate to these situations, resulting in greater language production and retention.

English Time emphasizes student-centered learning, as it creates opportunities for students to produce language in a manner that most closely resembles "real life" communication. For this reason, practice and review activities in *English Time* involve both pair work and group work.

The theory of multiple intelligences suggests that in any language class there are students with different learning styles (see Multiple Intelligences, Teacher Resource Guide, page 19). Therefore *English Time* activities are designed to take a wide range of learning styles into account in order to engage as many students as possible during each lesson.

The *English Time* lesson plans do not follow one particular teaching methodology. Instead, a variety of different, successful methodologies are employed to provide exciting, varied lessons that stimulate and appeal to as many students as possible. Students hear the target language before they produce it (receptive exposure before production). Listening is emphasized so that students are exposed to correct pronunciation and intonation.

Lesson Planning

Thorough planning and preparation are crucial to the success of any lesson. A well-prepared lesson includes more activities than may seem necessary. Preparation of multiple activities allows teachers to maintain the pace of the lesson, abandon activities that are not working, and keep the focus on students and their learning.

A sound lesson plan includes activities to review previously learned language, introduce new language, and practice all language in an organized, educationally sound, and enjoyable manner. *English Time* Teacher's Books provide a detailed, step-by-step lesson plan for each Student Book page. Teachers are encouraged to modify these lesson plans to meet their individual needs.

English Time Lesson Plans

1. Warm-Up and Review

Each lesson plan begins with a quick, fun activity that reviews the language introduced in the previous lesson and other related language. This activity helps students to both recall the language and "switch" to English-speaking mode.

2. Introduce the Target Language

New language is introduced before students open their Student Books so that they focus on the meaningful demonstration of the language. Step-by-step suggestions show how to introduce the target language using Picture and/or Word Cards, realia, drawings, and/or gestures.

3. Practice the Target Language

Students open their Student Books at this stage. Each Student Book page provides exercises to practice the language. The Teacher's Book provides detailed instructions on how to fully exploit each Student Book page. The tapescript, answer keys, and ideas on how to check exercises are provided where appropriate.

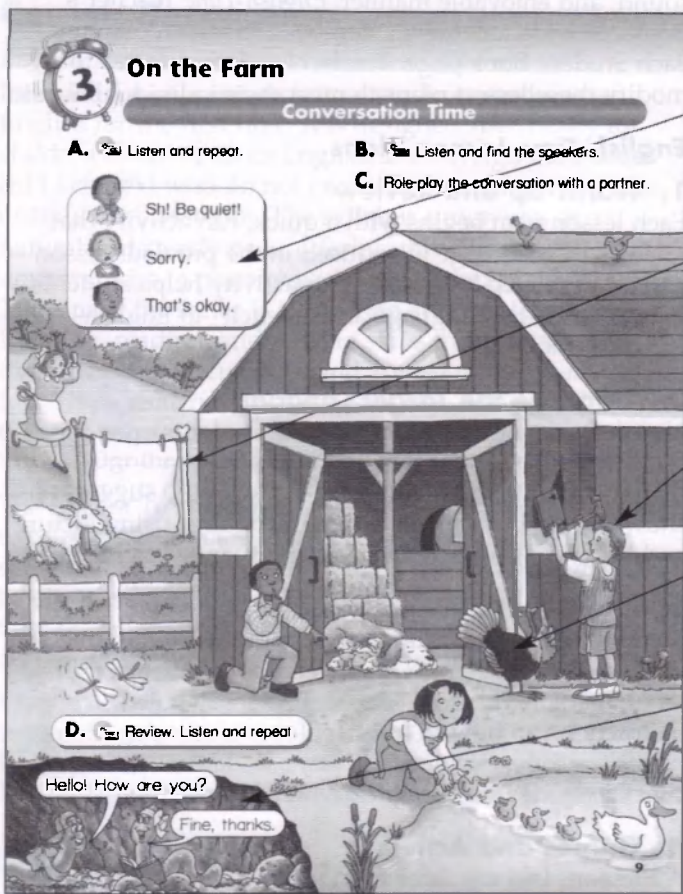
4. Games and Activities

All lessons include three or more games and activities that offer students further practice with the target language. Activities frequently combine previously learned language with the target language, so that students are continually building on what they have learned. Teachers can choose games and activities that are appropriate to their needs. Optional photocopiable Worksheets at the back of the Teacher's Books provide extra grammar and phonics practice.

5. Finish the Lesson

Each lesson plan concludes with a quick, fun activity which reviews the new language, gives the lesson a feeling of closure, and ends the class on a positive note.

Conversation Time Sample Page and Lesson Plan



The conversation box features the conversation and the speakers.

Digger the dog's bone is hidden for students to find in every Conversation Time scene.

Speakers from the conversation are featured in context for students to find in the large scene.

Three optional extra vocabulary items related to the unit theme are located within the Conversation Time scene.

Worm World reviews conversations and grammar from previous units in a humorous way.

Warm-Up and Review

1. Play a game or do an activity which reviews the phonics sounds learned in the previous lesson. An activity is provided in each lesson plan.
2. Check the Phonics Time Workbook page that students did in class or for homework. Answer keys and detailed instructions on how to check the activities are provided at the back of the Teacher's Book.

Introduce the Conversation

1. Model the conversation in such a way that students can understand the meaning. To do this, bring students (the same number of students as there are speakers in the conversation) to the front of the classroom and have them face each other. Stand behind each student and model his/her line(s) of the conversation, using appropriate facial expressions and body language to convey meaning. This way students know who says which line of the conversation. Each Lesson Plan contains examples of natural body language and facial expressions for each line of the conversation.


2. Teach the meaning of specific new words or phrases in the conversation through drawings, actions or pictures. Students retain language better if they understand the meaning. Detailed examples are provided in each lesson plan.
3. Model the conversation again, as in Step 1, so that students hear it again. Students listen and do not repeat.
4. Divide the class into groups (the same number of groups as there are speakers in the conversation). Model each line of the conversation again. Group A repeats the first line of the conversation, Group B repeats line two, and so on. Groups then change roles and repeat the conversation until each group has practiced each role.
5. Students are now ready to say the conversation on their own, without any modeling. Groups say the appropriate lines of the conversation. They then change roles and say the conversation again. Continue until each group has taken on each role. Prompt when necessary.

Optional substitution:


Introduce other vocabulary that can be substituted into the conversation, and practice the conversation with this new vocabulary. For example: Students substitute *Good afternoon* and *Good evening* for *Good morning*. Suggested substitutions are provided where appropriate.

Talk About the Picture

1. Students open their Student Books for the first time at this point.
2. Talk about what is happening in the large scene in order to recycle language and bring the picture to life. It is *not* important that students understand each word as this is a receptive exercise focusing on exposure to English and recycling previous language in a new context. A suggested short reading is provided in each lesson plan. When reading a word in **bold** type, point to its picture in the scene. When reading an *italicized* word, pantomime it. This conveys the meaning of words students have not heard before. Alternatively, use the Wall Charts instead of a Student Book to talk about the picture.
3. Ask questions about the large scene in order to elicit language and draw students further into the picture. Encourage students to answer using words, phrases, or simple sentences. Provide the answers if necessary. Suggested questions are provided in each lesson plan.

Practice the Conversation**A.  Listen and repeat.**

Focus students' attention on the conversation box at the top of the page. Play the first version of the recording. This version is spoken at slightly slower than natural speed and has no sound effects so that students can focus on the pronunciation of the words and the new language. Students listen to the conversation and repeat, pointing to each speaker in the conversation box.


B.  Listen and find the speakers.

Play the second version of the recording. This version is dramatized, spoken at natural speed, and has sound effects so that students can hear the language as if in real life. This time as they listen, students look at the large scene and find and point to the speaker of each line of conversation. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to find the speakers.


C. Role-play the conversation with a partner.

Students produce the conversation by choosing a partner then role-playing the conversation, using the body language and gestures from Introduce the Conversation. They then change roles and role-play the conversation again.

If a conversation has more than two speakers, divide the class into groups of the same number of students as there are speakers in the conversation. These groups then role-play the conversation. Students in each group continue until each student has taken on each role.

D.  Review. Listen and repeat.

Focus students' attention on the worms at the bottom of the page. Volunteers try to read the worms' speech bubbles or guess what the worms are saying. Prompt if necessary in order to elicit the conversation before playing the recording. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each speech bubble. Students may then choose a partner and role-play the conversation, using appropriate body language and gestures.

 Find Digger's Bone

Digger's Bone is hidden somewhere in the large scene. Students try to be the first to find the bone, raise their hands, and explain where it is hidden. Encourage students to give the location in a sentence or phrase. For example: *It's on the bag* or *On the bag*. Answer keys are provided in each lesson plan.

OPTION: Students can do any fun task relating to Digger's Bone or the situation in the picture. Specific suggestions are provided in the lesson plans.

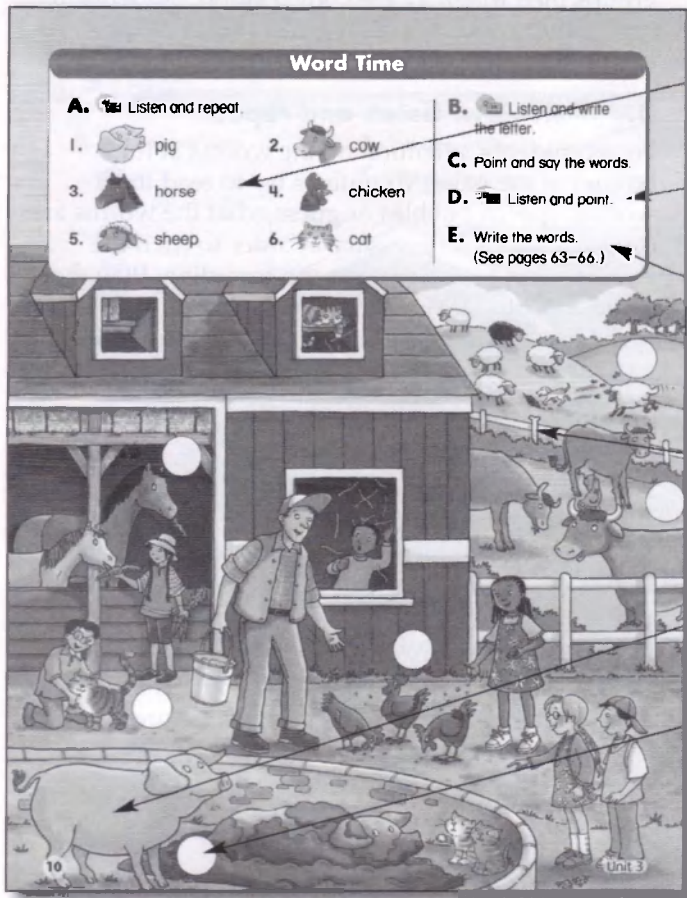
Games and Activities

In order to internalize the new conversation, students practice it through various games and activities. Three or more games and activities are provided in each lesson plan. One of these activities often combines the target conversation with a previously learned conversation in order to recycle language and extend the target conversation.

Finish the Lesson

1. Finish the lesson with a quick, simple game or activity to further practice the conversation. An activity is provided in each lesson plan.
2. Explain and assign the Conversation Time Workbook page to be done in class or for homework. It is very important that students understand what they are to do in each activity so they can concentrate on the target conversation. Detailed instructions on how to do the activities are provided at the back of the Teacher's Book.

Word Time Sample Page and Lesson Plan



Six new vocabulary words are introduced per unit.

Students review the target vocabulary, as well as previously learned conversations and patterns, by listening to the recording, then finding and pointing to the speakers.

My Picture Dictionary at the back of the Student Book gives students the opportunity to create their own picture dictionary.

Digger the dog's bone is hidden for students to find in every Word Time scene.

All new vocabulary items are featured in context for students to find in the large scene.

White circles are placed beside each vocabulary item to help students identify each item in the large scene. Students listen to the recording and write the letter they hear for each vocabulary item in the corresponding white circle.

Warm-Up and Review

1. Play a game or do an activity which reviews the conversation learned in the previous lesson. An activity is provided in each lesson plan.
2. Check the Conversation Time Workbook page that students did in class or for homework. Answer keys and detailed instructions on how to check the activities are provided at the back of the Teacher's Book.

Introduce the Words

Introduce each vocabulary item in such a way that students both hear and understand the meaning of each word. To do this, hold up and name each Word Time Picture Card one by one. Students listen. Hold up and name the cards again, and have students repeat. For added challenge, hold up the cards in random order and have students name them. Alternate methods for introducing the words are provided where appropriate.

Talk About the Picture

1. Students open their Student Books for the first time at this point. They look at the large scene and name anything they can.
2. As in Conversation Time, talk about what is happening in the large scene in order to recycle language and bring the picture to life. It is *not* important that students understand each word. This is a receptive exercise focusing on exposure to English and recycling previous language in a new context. A suggested short reading is provided in each lesson plan. When reading a word in **bold** type, point to its picture in the scene. When reading an *italicized* word, pantomime it. This conveys the meaning of words students have not heard before. Alternatively, use the Wall Charts instead of a Student Book to talk about the picture.
3. Ask questions about the large scene in order to elicit language and draw students further into the picture. Encourage students to answer using words, phrases, or simple sentences. Provide the answers if necessary. Suggested questions are provided in each lesson plan.

Practice the Words

A. Listen and repeat.

1. Focus students' attention on the vocabulary box at the top of the page. Play the recording. Students listen to the vocabulary items and repeat, pointing to each picture in the vocabulary box.

2. For added challenge, say the words in random order. Students listen and point to the pictures in the vocabulary box.

B. Listen and write the letter.

Play the recording. Students listen and, as they hear each vocabulary item named, they find that item in the large scene. They then write the letter they hear in the white circle for that vocabulary item. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task. Detailed instructions for checking students' answers are provided in each lesson plan.

C. Point and say the words.

Individually, students point to and name each of the target vocabulary items in the large scene in any order they wish.

OPTIONS:

1. Point to each vocabulary item on the Wall Chart, and have students point to and name the same item in their books.
2. Divide the class into pairs. Students in each pair take turns pointing to and naming each of the target vocabulary items.

D. Listen and point.

Focus students' attention on the large scene. Play the recording. Students listen to the sound effects and words. As they hear a vocabulary item named, they find and point to the corresponding item in the large scene. As they hear a sentence or conversation, they find and point to the speaker(s). Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

E. Write the words. (See pages 63–66.)

Students turn to *My Picture Dictionary* at the back of the Student Book. They look through the alphabetical Picture Dictionary to find the picture of each target vocabulary item, then write the word next to it.

Find Digger's Bone

Digger's Bone is hidden somewhere in the large scene. Students try to be the first to find the bone, raise their hands, and explain where it is hidden. Encourage students to give the location in a sentence or phrase. For example: *It's on the bag* or *On the bag*. Answer keys are provided in each lesson plan.

OPTION: Students can do any fun task relating to Digger's Bone and the situation in that lesson. For example, students might find Digger's Bone, then draw a picture of a clown with bones for shirt

buttons. Specific suggestions are provided in the lesson plans.

Extra Vocabulary. Focus students' attention on that unit's Conversation Time page. Write the extra vocabulary items listed in each lesson plan on the board and read them. For meaning, draw simple pictures of the items on the board, name them in the students' native language, or have students look up the words in their dictionaries. Read the words again, and have students repeat. Students then find, point to, and name the three items in the large scene. These extra words may be used in any of the suggested games and activities.

Games and Activities

In order to internalize the new vocabulary, students then practice it through various games and activities. Three or more games and activities are provided in each lesson plan. The first of these activities practices only the target vocabulary so that students focus only on the new words. The remaining games and activities generally allow students to practice the new vocabulary in combination with other meaningful language they know. For example: Students practice the new food vocabulary in the context of *I like/don't like* sentences.

Option: Personalize the Picture. Students do a fun activity to personalize the picture, thus involving them more fully in the topic and language. An activity is provided in each lesson plan.

Finish the Lesson

1. Finish the lesson with a quick, simple game or activity to further practice the vocabulary. An activity is provided in each lesson plan.
2. Explain and assign the Word Time Workbook page to be done in class or for homework. It is very important that students understand what they are to do in each activity so they can concentrate on the target vocabulary. Detailed instructions on how to do the activities are provided at the back of the Teacher's Book.

Practice Time Sample Page and Lesson Plan

Practice Time

A. Listen and repeat.

What's this? that? It's a pig. a cow.

What's - What is It's - It is

B. Listen and repeat. Then practice with a partner.

1. What's this? It's a pig.
2. What's that? It's a horse.
3. What's that? It's a cat.
4. What's this? It's a cow.
5. What's this? It's a chicken.
6. What's that? It's a sheep.

C. Look at page 10. Point to the picture and practice with a partner.

D. Listen and sing along. (See "What's This?" on page 58.)

Unit 3 11

New grammar patterns are presented as complete sentences.

Contractions are written out in full form.

Six substitution exercises serve as controlled practice for the target patterns.

Simple situational art for each substitution exercise helps to provide meaning.

Students look back to the Word Time page. Then, using that unit's vocabulary and grammar, they make sentences about various scenes on the page. This allows students to use the grammar patterns in a less controlled and more meaningful, natural context.

A grammar song in each unit provides a fun review of the new grammar patterns.

Warm-Up and Review

1. Play a game or do an activity which reviews the vocabulary learned in the previous lesson. An activity is provided in each lesson plan.
2. Check the Word Time Workbook page that students did in class or for homework. Answer keys and detailed instructions on how to check the activities are provided at the back of the Teacher's Book.
3. Review any previous patterns that pertain to the target pattern. For example: Review *I like apples* before introducing *Do you like oranges?* Detailed activities are provided where appropriate.

Introduce the Patterns

Introduce the target patterns in a methodical, step-by-step way. Once students are familiar with the patterns, provide an activity which allows students to practice using the patterns immediately. Detailed instructions are provided in each lesson plan. Explicit instruction of grammar rules is neither necessary nor recommended in the lower levels, as it could prove too overwhelming.

Practice the Patterns

A. Listen and repeat.

1. Write the text from the pattern box(es) on the board so all students can see it clearly. Play the recording, pointing to each word. Students listen.
2. Play the recording again. Students listen, look at the pattern box(es) in their books, and repeat, pointing to each word.
3. Students then try to say the patterns on their own, while looking at the pattern box(es) in their books. Prompt if necessary, or play the tape again until students can do this with ease.
4. Write the explanation of the contraction(s) on the board. Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Then say each pattern with the full form of the contraction(s). Students repeat. Students practice each pattern in the pattern box(es), using both the contractions and the full form of the contractions.

B. Listen and repeat. Then practice with a partner.

1. Focus students' attention on numbers 1–6. Play the recording. Students listen to each pattern and repeat, pointing to the corresponding pictures in their books.
2. Play the recording again. Students listen to each pattern and repeat, pointing to each word in their books.
3. Students are now ready to say the patterns on their own. Students form pairs and take turns saying the patterns in numbers 1–6.

C. Look at page X. Point to the picture and practice with a partner.

For statement patterns: Students remain in pairs. Focus their attention on the Word Time large scene. They then take turns pointing to and making sentences using the new patterns. Examples are provided in each lesson plan.

For question and answer patterns: Students remain in pairs. Focus their attention on the Word Time large scene. They then take turns pointing to and asking and answering questions about the characters that appear in numbers 1–6 in B, using the new patterns and vocabulary items. Examples are provided in each lesson plan.

D. Listen and sing along or chant.

1. The lyrics for each song/chant are provided at the back of the Student Book. Students turn to that unit's song or chant. Focus their attention on the pictures. Using the pictures as cues, students try to guess some of the lyrics. Read the lyrics line by line and have students repeat. Play the recording. Students listen and follow along in their books to familiarize themselves with the song before singing it.

Alternatively, write the song lyrics on the board. Attach the corresponding Picture Cards above the words to assist reading. Play the recording and point to each word. Students listen. Next, read the lyrics, pointing to each word, and have students repeat. Play the recording. Students listen and follow along in their books.

2. Play the recording again. Students listen and sing along or chant, using their books for reference. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to become sufficiently familiar with the song or chant.

3. Play the karaoke version. Students sing or chant in groups with appropriate actions. Detailed activities are provided in each lesson plan.

Games and Activities

In order to internalize the new patterns, students practice them through various games and activities. Three or more games and activities are provided in each lesson plan.

Extra Practice

Explain and assign the Practice Time Worksheet. There is one Worksheet per Practice Time page. Worksheets can be done at home or in class. They can also be given to stronger students while you attend to students who need help. For Worksheets and detailed instructions, see Teacher's Book pages 168–197.

Finish the Lesson

1. Finish the lesson with a quick, simple game or activity to further practice the patterns. An activity is provided in each lesson plan.
2. Explain and assign the Practice Time Workbook page to be done in class or for homework. It is very important that students understand what they are to do in each activity so they can concentrate on the target patterns. Detailed instructions on how to do the activities are provided at the back of the Teacher's Book.

Phonics Time Sample Page and Lesson Plan

Phonics Time

A. Listen and repeat.

Mm milk mop mother

Nn net night nurse

B. Does it begin with m or n? Listen and match.

1. 2. **m**

3. 4. **n**

5. 6.

C. Does it begin with m or n? Listen and circle.

1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6.

12 Unit 3

One or two phonics sounds are presented per unit. The recording provides a model of correct pronunciation.

For each sound, at least three example words are provided. The recording also models the correct pronunciation of these words.

Practice of the new sounds is provided through a variety of exercises that emphasize listening and writing.

Warm-Up and Review

1. Play a game or do an activity which reviews the grammar patterns learned in the previous lesson. An activity is provided in each lesson plan.
2. Check the Practice Time Workbook page that students did in class or for homework. Answer keys and detailed instructions on how to check the activities are provided at the back of the Teacher's Book.
3. As phonics needs constant reinforcement, play a game or do an activity which reviews previously learned sounds. Detailed activities are provided in each lesson plan.

Introduce the Sounds

1. Introduce each target phonics sound and word in a methodical, step-by-step way so that students both hear the target sounds and understand the meaning of each target word. To do this, hold up each Phonics Time Picture Card and say both the target sound and the whole word. Students repeat. Attach the cards to the board.

2. Write each target word on the board in the following way: Write the target letter. Say its sound while pointing to the letter. Students repeat. Write the rest of the word on the board and say the target sound and then the rest of the word, pointing to the two parts of the word and then the whole word. Students repeat.

Practice the Sounds

A. Listen and repeat.

Focus students' attention on the target letters, pictures, and words at the top of the page. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to the pictures and words in their books.

B./C./D. (Additional activities).

Each Phonics Time page has at least two additional listening exercises to reinforce the sounds. Detailed instructions and, where appropriate, tapescripts and answer keys, are provided for each exercise.

Games and Activities

In order to internalize the new sounds, students practice them through various games and activities. Three or more games and activities are provided in each lesson plan. The first of these activities practices only the target sounds so that students can focus only on these new sounds. The remaining games or activities generally include previously learned sounds as well.

Extra Practice

Explain and assign the Phonics Time Worksheet. There is one Worksheet per Phonics Time page. Worksheets can be done at home or in class. They can also be given to stronger students while you attend to students who need help. For Worksheets and detailed instructions, see Teacher's Book pages 168–197.



Finish the Lesson

1. Finish the lesson with a quick, simple game or activity to further practice the sounds. An activity is provided in each lesson plan.
2. Explain and assign the Phonics Time Workbook page to be done in class or for homework. It is very important that students understand what they are to do in each activity so they can concentrate on the target sounds. Detailed instructions on how to do the activities are provided at the back of the Teacher's Book.

Assessment

Give the unit Test in order to check students' comprehension of the new language items. There is one Test per unit to check students' progress. An extensive midterm and final are also provided. For Tests and detailed instructions, see Teacher's Book pages 202–233.



Sounds Taught in Student Book 1

Consonants

Letter	Sound	Example Word
b	/b/	ball
d	/d/	desk
f	/f/	feet
g	/g/	garden
h	/h/	hand
k	/k/	kangaroo
m	/m/	milk
n	/n/	net
p	/p/	pencil
s	/s/	sea
t	/t/	table
v	/v/	van
w	/w/	water
z	/z/	zebra

Vowels

Letter	Sound	Example Word
a	/æ/	ant
e	/ɛ/	bed
i	/ɪ/	dig
o	/ā/	hot
u	/ʌ/	bus

Review: Story Time Sample Page and Lesson Plan

Review 1
Story Time

Digger's World

A. Listen and repeat.

1. Good morning! I'm Max.
Hi! I'm Digger.

2. How are you, Max?
Fine, thanks.

3. What's that?
It's a pen.

4. What's this?
It's a bird.

5. Ah-choo!
Bless you!
Thank you.

6. Sh! Be quiet!
Sorry.
To be continued...

B. Look at A. Listen and point.
C. Role-play these scenes.

- Story Time reviews Conversation Time, Word Time, and Practice Time language from the previous three units.
- *Digger's World* is a cartoon-like story that recycles language in a natural, conversational situation. Each one is a complete story, and all four make up one long story.

Warm-Up

1. **Conversation, Vocabulary, and Grammar Review.** Students play a game or do an activity which reviews the conversations, vocabulary items, and grammar patterns from the previous three units. An activity is provided in each lesson plan.
2. Check the Phonics Time Workbook page that students did in class or for homework. Answer keys and detailed instructions on how to check the activities are provided at the back of the Teacher's Book.

Work with the Pictures

Students open their Student Books to *Digger's World*. Focus their attention on the pictures and have them find and name any items or characters they see in the six

scenes. These can be single words or phrases. Then talk about what is happening in each scene in order to review the language and bring the pictures to life. Suggested sentences are provided in each lesson plan.

Work with the Text

Focus students' attention on the speech bubbles. Students try to guess or read the text in the speech bubbles. Prompt when necessary.

Practice the Story

A. Listen and repeat.

Play the first version of the story. This version is spoken at slightly slower than natural speed and has no sound effects so that students can focus on the pronunciation and language. Students follow along in their books, pointing to each speech bubble on the page.

B. Look at A. Listen and point.

Play the second version of the story. This version is dramatized, spoken at natural speed, and has sound effects so students can hear the language as in real life. Students listen and point to the scenes as they hear them on the recording.

C. Role-play these scenes.

Students should now be sufficiently familiar with the story to say it on their own, using their Student Books as necessary. Divide the class into groups, and have students in each group role-play the scenes.

Games and Activities

Students review the conversations, vocabulary, and grammar patterns further through games and activities. Two to three games and activities are provided in each lesson plan.

Finish the Lesson


1. Finish the lesson in a fun way with students playing a quick, simple game or activity to further review the conversations, vocabulary, and grammar patterns. An activity is provided in each lesson plan.
2. Explain and assign the first page of Workbook Review to be done in class or for homework. Detailed instructions on how to do the activities are provided at the back of the Teacher's Book.

Review: Activity Time Sample Page and Lesson Plan

Activity Time

A. Listen. Find and number the pictures in the puzzle.


dog tree cloud bird pig cow horse chicken sheep cat



B. Listen and circle the correct word.

1. pizza ball 2. kite gorilla 3. milk nose
4. key girl 5. mop net 6. pig boy

C. Listen and find the picture. Write the number.



14 Review 1

Activity Time reviews Conversation Time, Word Time, Practice Time, and/or Phonics Time language from the previous three units. Students review the language through a variety of exercises, which emphasize listening, speaking, and writing.

Warm-Up

1. **Conversation, Vocabulary, Grammar, and/or Phonics Review.** Students play a game or do an activity which reviews the conversations, vocabulary, grammar patterns, and/or phonics from the previous three units. An activity is provided in each lesson plan.
2. **Check the Story Time Workbook** page that students did in class or for homework. Answer keys and detailed instructions on how to check the activities are provided at the back of the Teacher's Book.

Review

Each Activity Time page provides two to three exercises for students to review the conversations, vocabulary, grammar patterns, and/or phonics. Detailed instructions and, where appropriate, tapescripts and answer keys, are provided for each exercise.

Games and Activities

Students review the language in an enjoyable way through games and activities. At least two games and activities are provided in each lesson plan.

Finish the Lesson

1. Explain and assign the checklist, to be done in class or for homework. Students have now studied and reviewed three units' worth of language. They are ready to check what they know. The Checklists, found at the back of the Student Books, provide a permanent record for students, teachers, and parents of what students have understood and retained. There is one Checklist for every three units. Working individually or in pairs, students check off what they know in each Checklist.
2. Explain and assign the second page of Workbook Review to be done in class or for homework. Detailed instructions on how to introduce the activities are provided at the back of the Teacher's Book.

Classroom Management

Motivating Students

Motivation plays a vital role in language acquisition. When overall motivation is high, students behave well and participate fully in the activities.

Tips to maintain high student motivation:

- Be enthusiastic and motivated as a teacher. Enthusiasm is contagious! A positive classroom atmosphere stimulates creativity and student participation.
- Provide activities in which all students participate. This gives students the opportunity to get to know and learn from their classmates.
- Acknowledge all students, especially those that are shy and reticent to speak, in order to make them feel important and successful. Acknowledge participation, good behavior, and helpfulness as well as language proficiency. Give award certificates to students to acknowledge their successes. Photocopiable award certificates are provided on pages 198–201. Words of praise and acknowledgment:

Good job!

Very good!

Good try!

That was so much better than the last time!

Good for you!

You're showing so much improvement!

Try again.

Thank you so much.

Thanks for helping me.

What a good helper you are!

I've really noticed how hard you're trying.

Thank you for working so hard.

You're being a really good listener. Thank you!

- Provide classroom opportunities for students to communicate in English. The more students speak English, the more confident and motivated they will become as language learners.
- Take care not to make students speak in front of the class if they are not ready to do so, as this can negatively affect their motivation and self-confidence. In any one class there will be students who are still absorbing the language and thus not ready to speak, and those who are ready to challenge themselves by using the new language.

Discipline

A well-managed classroom can maintain motivation and keep discipline problems to a minimum.

Tips to establish and maintain classroom discipline:

- Establish a clear set of rules at the beginning of each class session, and consistently maintain it. Write down the rules and display them where students can see them. For example: *Listen while others are talking.* Acknowledge students when these rules are followed.

- Remind students often of what is expected of them. Basic classroom expectations include participation, acceptable behavior, trying to use the new language, and quality work. If the best is expected of students, they will most likely rise to the occasion!

In addition, consider the reasons behind inappropriate behavior and attempt to address these issues. Possible reasons for behavior problems:

- The lesson content is not sufficiently interesting or challenging. If lessons become too repetitive, mechanical, or easy, students lose interest.
- Lesson preparation is not adequate, resulting in class disruptions that distract students. Prepare lessons well and in advance so that there are no surprises and the lesson can proceed smoothly with no major disruptions.
- The language level of the class is not in line with students' abilities. Make a note of students' abilities by observing them and then adjusting the lesson to the appropriate level. Teacher's Logs (see pages 22–23) assist in keeping a record of students' abilities and involvement.
- The teacher-student relationship is not good. Identify and rectify any areas of present or potential conflict by speaking to the student in question or his/her parents.
- Some students may be more aggressive than others or may be attention seekers. Try to understand why a student is aggressive or attention-seeking and address the issue with the student and/or his/her parents.
- External factors such as the weather, family problems, or after-school activities affect students' motivation and behaviors. Be aware of these factors and address them as necessary.
- Some students may have learning disabilities or special needs and therefore face greater educational challenges. Consult their parents or a professional if necessary.

Homework

Homework provides a valuable opportunity for students to practice and reinforce the language introduced in class. Homework also gives parents an opportunity to participate in their child's learning.

Tips to motivate students to do their homework:

- Make sure that the amount of homework is at a manageable level, and discuss the purpose and importance of the homework with students.
- Explain the homework activity carefully, completing one or two examples with students in class.
- Reward students for completing homework, even if it is not all correct. These rewards can be stickers, simple drawings, or comments.

Multiple Intelligences

Students have different learning styles. It is important to take these different learning styles or multiple intelligences into account when planning lessons so that all students have an opportunity to learn in their style. This will lead to greater motivation, and ultimately greater learning. Suggested methods of addressing the eight main learning styles or areas of intelligence:

- **Spatial/Visual:** Use visual aids such as maps, big flashcards, and realia. Art projects are also useful.
- **Kinesthetic:** Use movement with songs, chants, or games that include, for example, running or slapping cards. Gestures, role plays, and dramas can also be employed.
- **Musical:** Use body percussion (stamping, clapping, patting, snapping) to enhance songs and chants.
- **Linguistic:** Use oral drilling or activities that require speaking. Students can share ideas, solve problems, role play, and do stage performances.
- **Logical-Mathematical:** Do puzzles, sequencing activities, or classification activities that involve logical deduction. For example: *A is taller than B but shorter than C. Who is the shortest?*
- **Interpersonal:** Involve students in activities or games in which they work together in pairs or groups.
- **Intrapersonal:** Involve students in individual activities that require personal input.
- **Natural World:** Show how the structure/organization of language relates to things in nature. For example: Draw a tree and write the root form of the verb on the trunk. Then write the various verb tenses on the tree's branches.

Teacher Tools

Lesson Plans

English Time Teacher's Books provide comprehensive, step-by-step lesson plans for teaching each Student Book page. However, it is crucial that teachers create personalized lesson plans which take into account their students' learning styles, levels, and needs, as well as the exact goal of the lesson and the time available for the lesson. Lesson Plans provided in the Teacher's Book can be modified to create custom lesson plans.

Visual Aids

Visual aids such as pictures, picture cards, posters, signs, and realia are valuable teaching aids that support students' understanding of new language without requiring translation. Students can be involved in making visual aids by, for example, drawing and coloring flashcards of target language.

Bulletin Boards

Bulletin boards can be used in the classroom, creating a positive atmosphere that motivates students to every class. They can be made to reflect students' interests and individuality, thus helping students to feel

ownership and pride in their classroom. Tips for using bulletin boards:

- Designate a space on the bulletin board as a culture corner, and display pictures of other countries or cultures. On a map of the world students can use pins to mark places in the world where English is spoken.
- Display student pictures on the bulletin board or walls. Be sure that every student has an opportunity to display his/her work.
- Display any materials that can be reviewed from previous lessons. For example: color charts, vocabulary words, letters whose sounds students have learned.
- Designate a space on the bulletin board as a photo corner. Display photos of students working on projects or activities in the classroom, pictures of students on special trips, or students at home.

Picture and Word Cards

Cards are valuable resources to use throughout lessons, both for introducing and practicing new language. Realia, pictures from magazines, or simple drawings on the board can also be used.

Games and Activities

Games and activities are a vital component of any curriculum for language learners. Games provide a strong motivation for students to experience the language in a natural, meaningful, and enjoyable way. Pages 140–147 feature games that can be used in any class.

Tips to ensure successful games and activities in class:

- Clearly understand the instructions before explaining them to students. Then bring students to the front of the classroom and have them model each step of the game as the teacher explains it. Students can learn how to play a game explained entirely in English if the steps are modeled in a logical and sequential manner.
- Control and focus the game so that students use the target language in a meaningful way and have fun.

Forming Groups and Pairs

Utilize quick and easy methods of forming groups so that there is minimal class disruption. Consider students' abilities and personalities when forming groups.

Tips to form groups:

- Utilize groups that naturally exist within the classroom. For example: one row of students can form a group or students can form groups with students sitting nearby.
- Have students count off around the class, then have students with the same number form one group.
- Have students form groups with others wearing the same color shirt, or with the same initials or birthdays.

Storybooks

Storybooks present natural language with visuals to clarify meaning. For this reason it is beneficial to build a classroom library of storybooks that students can look at before or after class. Read storybooks which contain

language students know for five minutes at the end of each class.

Tips for using storybooks in the classroom:

- Choose volunteers to play the roles of characters in the story and dramatize their characters' lines.
- Choose a volunteer to read the story aloud while his/her classmates act it out in groups.
- Have students perform the story with paper puppets they make.
- Have students draw specific scenes from the story on large pieces of paper. Hang these scenes in sequential order on the walls. Students then narrate or provide dialogue for their scene in the story.
- Once students can perform the story comfortably, videotape it and play the tape for the class and/or parents.

Songs and Chants

Singing and chanting in class can play a vital role in children's language development. A song or chant is provided in each *English Time* Student Book unit. The Teacher's Book offers detailed activities to enhance each song and chant.

Tips to make songs other than those in the Student Book an integral part of the classroom:

- Choose a new song every month for students to sing as they clean up after activities.
- Play English children's songs while students are working, drawing, or coloring.

Practical Teaching Tips

Several practical teaching tips:

- Establish a signal to be used to get students' attention. For example: clap your hands twice, flicker the lights, or ring a bell.
- Plan to change activities approximately every five to seven minutes, as young students have short attention spans. It is thus important to plan more than enough activities so that it is possible to quickly change to another activity without disrupting the class. It is also recommended to change activities before students lose interest or become bored. This way students will look forward to doing the activity again in future lessons.
- Give students advance notice before changing activities. Doing so allows students to finish what they are doing and mentally prepare for the next activity.
- Develop a class routine and follow it in each lesson. Students will develop a sense of security, which will lead to greater participation.
- Ask students for feedback on how they experience the class. Acknowledge their feedback and make any appropriate changes to meet their needs.

English as the Language of Instruction

Language input is one of the most important aspects of language learning. This is especially true in places where English is neither widely heard, spoken, nor seen outside the classroom. For this reason, conduct as much of each lesson as possible in English.

Tips to maximize English usage in the classroom:

- Give all instructions in English. Use gestures, body language, or visual aids to convey the meaning.
- Use previously learned language on a regular basis in all classes so that it becomes a natural part of students' English vocabulary.
- Look for any occasion to provide opportunities for students to experience the use of English in a communicative, meaningful, and interesting way. For example: invite a native English speaker to class to speak to students.

Assessment

Continual student evaluation and assessment is crucial in order to determine in which areas students require further explanation and/or practice. Assessment methods include traditional tests and Teacher's Logs. In the latter, the teacher's observations and assessments of students are recorded during or after each class.

Correcting Students

Correcting mistakes is an important role of any teacher. The manner of correction will depend on whether the activity is accuracy-based (the focus is on speaking perfectly) or fluency-based (the focus is on speaking as much as possible). Pay attention to students' reactions to correction. Some students accept being corrected without losing confidence or motivation. Others, however, become self-conscious and reticent for fear of making mistakes. Try to avoid over-correction so that students can learn from their mistakes without losing motivation or confidence in their speaking ability.

Methods of correction during accuracy-focused activities:

- Point out the error, provide the correct form, and have the student repeat the correct form. For example: A student says *Yesterday I go to school*. Say *Go* while shaking your head. Then say *Yesterday I went to school*, emphasizing *went*. The student repeats.
- Repeat the student's sentence, stressing the error with rising intonation. Then immediately repeat the sentence, pausing before the error, and have the student give the correct form. For example: A student says *Yesterday I go to school*. Say *Yesterday I go* (rising intonation) *to school*. *Yesterday I _____*. The student completes the sentence with *went to school*.

Methods of correction during fluency-focused activities:

- Rephrase students' mistakes in correct English. Do not interrupt them in order to correct their mistakes. It is not necessary for students to repeat the corrected sentence. For example: A student says *Yesterday I go to school*. Say *Oh, yesterday you went to school, slightly emphasizing went*.

- At times refrain from correcting the students during games or storytime. This enhances motivation and lends a sense of fun and excitement to the class. During group work, walk around the classroom, listen to students and note any common mistakes. Once the activity is done, correct these mistakes with the class as a whole.

Teaching Large Classes

Large classes present special challenges for monitoring student participation and learning.

Tips to effectively teach large classes:

- Walk around the classroom and listen while students work in pairs or in groups. Note any areas in which students are having difficulty and address these with the entire class at the end of the activity.
- If a lesson includes a game that requires movement in or around the classroom, divide the class into two groups. One group can play the game while the other group does a quiet activity at their desks. Groups can then change roles.
- Seek the help of another teacher. Both teachers can model games or activities and share the task of monitoring and helping students.
- Make sure all students, especially those at the back of the classroom, can see the teaching materials clearly. Use large visual aids or walk around the classroom with the material so that all students are able to see it up close.

Introducing Culture in the Classroom

As students learn English and acquire an openness toward it as a foreign language, nurture a similar open attitude toward foreign cultures. Initiate this by introducing the flags and locations of different countries,

and discussing the daily life of people from other countries. Then introduce samples of folk art and music, children's games, ways of greeting, coins, and stamps. Use photographs, realia, books and magazines, or video to introduce these elements of culture. Embassies or Consulates are often more than willing to provide free information about their countries.

Involving Parents

Parents are a vital source of information about students. Parental feedback can reveal aspects of the students' language development that are evident at home but not in class. They can also provide valuable information on students' special needs or problems. Inform parents of what their children are learning and the progress they are making. Parents' interest in their children's learning and support can lead to a higher level of student motivation.

Tips and suggestions to involve parents:

- Send home a monthly newsletter detailing the language the class is studying. Include some work students have done if possible.
- Host a parent class where parents and their children can participate together in class activities. This is a good chance to explain to parents what their children are learning and how they are learning it. Present English songs, original stories, or choral readings, and display students' work and pictures.
- Send a letter home to parents at the beginning of the course to introduce yourself as well as the material their child will be studying.

Sample Teacher's Log

(Teacher's Book pages 32-33)

Class

Weds

Date Oct 4

Time 5:00-5:50pm

Lesson Plan	Worm-Up and Review	Introduce the Language	Practice the Language (Student Book page 3)	Games and Activities	Finish the Lesson
	1. Guess What's Missing (5 min.) 2. Check Workbook (2 min.)	1. I'm Annie, I'm a girl. 2. You're Ted, You're a boy. 3. Fluency practice. (students introduce themselves and others) (10 min.)	1. Open Student Books 2. Play recording and do exercises 3. Sing song (10 min.)	1. Sit In a Circle (students introduce themselves and others around a circle) (5 min.) 2. Make the Sentences (7 min.) 3. Interview (if time)	1. Toss the Ball (4 min.) 2. Assign homework • Workbook p. 3 • Worksheet 1 (4 min.)
Materials Needed	1 set Unit 1 Word Picture Cards	girl and boy picture cards	cassette & player	Unit 1 Word Time Word Cards and Grammar Cards, 1 set per student A ball	
Lesson Taught	✓ done	✓ done	✓ done except for song (play at beginning of next class)	✓ done Sit In a Circle and 3-4 min. of Make the Sentences Do Interview activity another time for review	✓ done
General Notes Class response Individual response Areas that need more practice	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Everybody needs more practice with <u>I'm</u> and <u>You're</u>. Kim: Having trouble paying attention again. Call parents Time games more carefully next time Students really liked <u>interacting</u> during Sit In a Circle activity (make sure to plan interactive activities in future lessons). 				

Teacher's Log

(Teacher's Book pages _____)

Class _____

Date _____

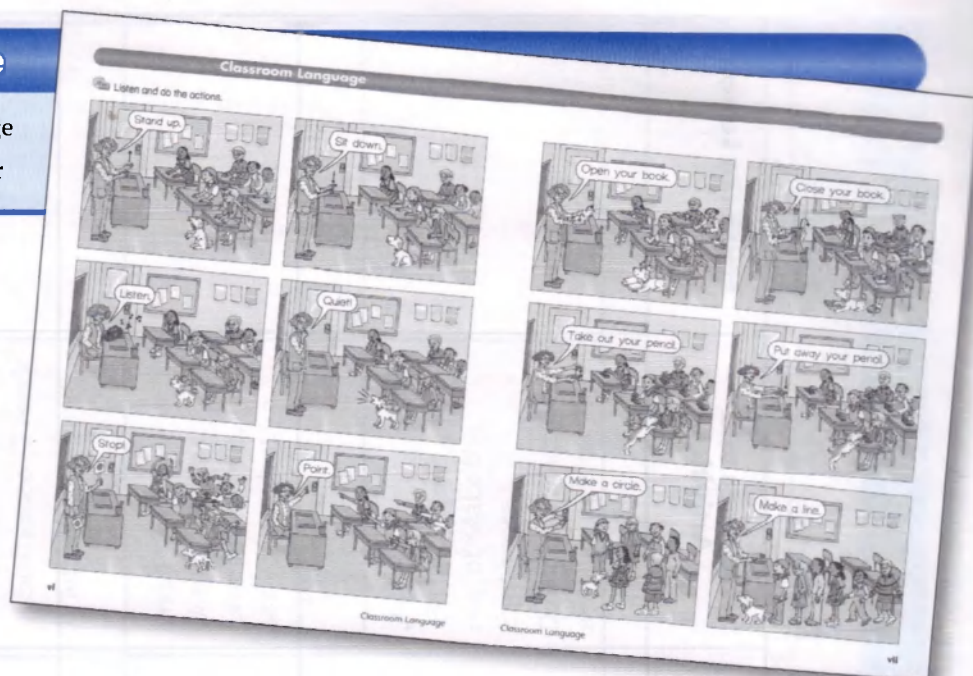
Time _____

	Warm-Up and Review	Introduce the Language	Practice the Language (Student Book page _____)	Games and Activities	Finish the Lesson
Lesson Plan					
Materials Needed					
Lesson Taught					
General Notes Class response Individual response Areas that need more practice					

Classroom Language

Focus: Frequently used classroom language

Materials Needed: CD/cassette and player



Introduce the Language

1. Sit down on a chair. Model *stand up* by saying *Stand up* and standing up. Then model *sit down* by saying *Sit down* and sitting down. Do this three to four times. Then say *Stand up*. Students repeat and stand up. Say *Sit down*. Students repeat and sit down. Do this several times, gradually decreasing the pause between naming the two actions. Next, go to an individual student and say (Mari), *stand up*. If (Mari) stands up, say *Sit down*. If (Mari) does not stand up, gesture to (Mari) to stand up, then say *Sit down*. Repeat this procedure with three to four different students.
2. Follow the same procedure as in Step 1 for the remaining classroom language items, using the following actions:
Listen: Cup your hand behind one ear.
Quiet: Hold your index finger to your lips.
Stop: Walk around the classroom, say *Stop!* and freeze.
Point: Point to any item in the classroom.
Open your book: Hold up a book and open it.
Close your book: Close the book.
Take out your pencil: Take a pencil out of your pencil case or pocket.
Put away your pencil: Put the pencil back into your pencil case or pocket.
Make a circle: Bring four to five students to the front of the classroom. Say *Make a circle* while helping these students to make a circle.
Make a line: Say *Make a line* and help the students to form a straight line.

3. Name any four of the actions. Students do each action as it is said. Do the same with the remaining actions.

Teacher Tip: Use this classroom language as often as possible so that it becomes a natural part of each lesson. The recording can be played at the beginning of lessons until students are completely familiar with the classroom language.

Practice the Language

Students open their Student Books to page vi.

Listen and do the actions.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and point to the actions in their books.

Stand up. Stand up.
Sit down. Sit down.
Listen. Listen.
Quiet! Quiet!
Stop! Stop!
Point. Point.
Open your book. Open your book.
Close your book. Close your book.
Take out your pencil. Take out your pencil.
Put away your pencil. Put away your pencil.
Make a circle. Make a circle.
Make a line. Make a line.

2. Play the recording again. Students listen and do the actions. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

Games and Activities

1. **Groups Say and Do.** Divide the class into Groups A and B. Each group chooses a leader. Group A's leader holds up his/her Student Book and points to the picture of one of the actions on pages vi or vii. Any student in Group A names that action, and students in Group B do it. Group A continues in the same way until all the actions have been named. Groups change roles and do the activity again.
2. **Do What I Say.** Volunteers take turns coming to the front of the classroom and naming the actions. Seated students do the actions.

Note: In the above activities, it is not important for students to name the actions perfectly or fluently. This is an opportunity for students to experience others reacting to the language they have produced. If students have difficulty naming the action correctly, name the action and have them repeat.

Finish the Lesson

Simon Says. Say various commands from the classroom language, some of which are preceded by *Simon says*. Students do the action only if the language is preceded by *Simon says*. For example: Say *Simon says take out your pencil*. Students take out their pencils. Say *Put away your pencil*. Students do not do the action. If a student does an action that was not preceded by *Simon says*, or does an action incorrectly, he/she is "out" and must wait until the next round to play again. Continue until only one student is still "in" the game. Then play again, having a volunteer take on the teacher's role and say the classroom language items.

LARGE CLASSES: Play the game as above, but for a predetermined amount of time (for example: seven minutes). All students still standing at the end of this time win.

OPTION: Play the game as above, but choose a volunteer to help monitor the game. He/She will both help see if students are doing the actions correctly, and if they are correctly responding to *Simon says*.

The Alphabet

Focus: Uppercase and lowercase alphabet letters

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities):

CD/cassette and player; uppercase alphabet cards, 1 set per 4–5 students; lowercase alphabet cards, 1 set per 4–5 students (see Picture and Word Card Book pages 51–54)

Note: The Alphabet page focuses on letter names, not their sounds. Letter sounds are taught in Phonics Time of each unit.

Warm-Up and Review

Review: Classroom Language. Say and do each action, and have students repeat and do the action. Then play the recording of the classroom language. Students listen and do the actions.

Introduce the Alphabet

1. Hold up alphabet cards A–F one by one and name each letter. Students listen. Hold up the A–F alphabet cards again, name each letter, and have students repeat. Do the same with G–L, M–R, and S–Z. Repeat the entire procedure for the lowercase alphabet cards.
2. Write the uppercase and lowercase letters of the alphabet in alphabetical order on the board. Point to each letter in order and elicit its name. Point to the letters in random order and elicit their names.
3. Distribute all the uppercase and lowercase alphabet cards, so that each student has at least one card (students may have more than one card). Say the alphabet one letter at a time in alphabetical order. The student(s) who have the named card repeat and hold the card up. Do the activity again, but this time say the letters in random order.

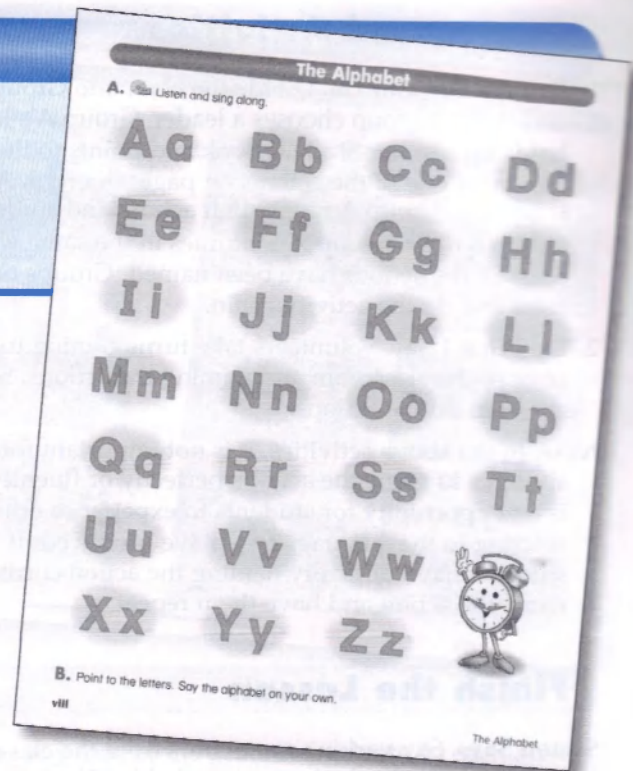
Practice the Alphabet

Students open their Student Books to page viii.

A. Listen and sing along.

1. Write the alphabet on the board in the same way it appears in the tapescript. Play the recording. Point to the letters on the board as students listen.

a b c d
e f g h
i j k l
m n o p
q r s t
u v w
x y z



a b c d e f g
h i j k l m n
o p q r s t u
v w x y z

2. Read the letters line by line. Students repeat each line. Play the recording again. Students listen and point to the letters in their books.
3. Play the recording again. Students listen and sing along, using their books for reference. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to become familiar with the song.

Teacher Tip: The recording can be played at the beginning of each lesson until students are familiar with the letter names.

B. Point to the letters. Say the alphabet on your own.

Students point to and name each letter.

Games and Activities

1. **Write in the Air.** Write the alphabet, both uppercase and lowercase, on the board. Point to and name A. Write A with your finger on the board next to A. Do this slowly so that students see the stroke order. Students then write A in the air with their fingers and say A. Do the same with a. Continue in the same way with all the letters of the alphabet.

OPTION: Students copy the alphabet (both uppercase and lowercase) into their notebooks, using their Student Books for reference.

- Put Them in Order.** Distribute all the uppercase alphabet cards, so that each student has at least one card (students may have more than one card). Students then come to the front of the classroom one by one and, using their Student Books for reference if necessary, attach their alphabet cards to the board in alphabetical order starting from A. Once all the cards are on the board, point to each letter and have students say its name.
- Match Uppercase to Lowercase.** Divide the class into groups of four to five, and give each group a set of uppercase and lowercase alphabet cards. Students in each group distribute the cards evenly among themselves. A student in each group (S1) begins by laying down one of the uppercase cards he/she has, and naming the letter. The student who has the corresponding lowercase card puts it beside the uppercase card and names the letter. Groups continue in the same way until all the cards have been matched and named.
- Option: Project.** Students make an Alphabet Book by drawing and then coloring all the letters of the alphabet, each on a separate piece of paper. Each student then uses staples, yarn, or clips to make a book. As students learn new words, they write them on the page of their Alphabet Book that corresponds to the word's initial letter. After completion of *English Time* Level 1, students take these Alphabet Books home to share with their parents.

Finish the Lesson

- Can You Name the Letter?** Write the alphabet, both uppercase and lowercase letters, on the board. Point to each letter and have students name it.
- Explain and assign Workbook pages iii and iv.** (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 148.)

www.majazionline.ir



In the Neighborhood

Conversation Time

Language Focus: *Good morning./Hello! How are you?/Fine, thank you.*

Function: Greetings

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities):
CD/cassette and player; Wall Chart 1; a ball

For general information on Conversation Time, see pages 8–9.

Warm-Up and Review

1. **Review: The Alphabet.** Write the alphabet, both uppercase and lowercase, on the board. Point to each letter and elicit its name.
2. Check Workbook pages iii and iv. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 148.)

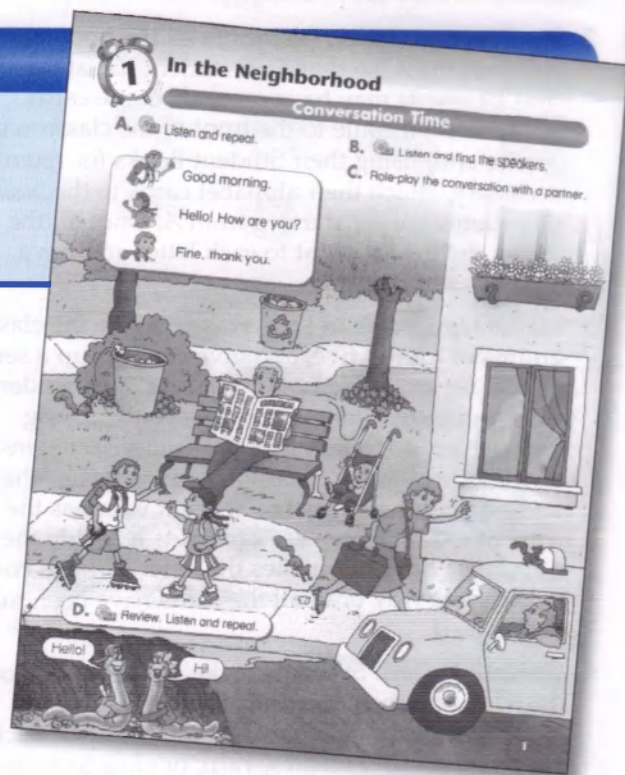
Introduce the Conversation

1. Bring two students to the front of the classroom. Stand behind each student and model his/her line(s) of the conversation with the following actions:

<i>Good morning.</i>	Smile and wave.
<i>Hello! How are you?</i>	Smile and wave. Then raise your eyebrows, look quizzically at the student, and extend your right hand (palm upward) toward the student as you speak.
<i>Fine, thank you.</i>	Smile and nod your head slightly.
2. Clarify word meaning.

morning: Draw a row of three suns on the board, one sun just rising, one high in the sky, and one setting. Point to the rising sun and say *morning*. Students repeat.

fine: Smile, look content, and say *fine*. Students repeat. Look sad, shake your head, and say *not fine*. Again smile, look content, and say *fine*. Students repeat.
3. Model the conversation again, as in Step 1.
4. Divide the class into Groups A and B. Model each line of the conversation again using facial expressions and body language. Group A repeats the first line of the conversation, Group B repeats line two, and so on. Encourage students to copy your facial expressions and body language. Groups then change roles and repeat the conversation again.
5. Groups A and B say alternate lines of the conversation. Groups then change roles and say the conversation again. Prompt when necessary.



OPTIONS:

1. Include other greeting expressions. For example: *Good afternoon/Good evening*.
2. The colloquial reply for *Good morning* is *Hello* or *Hi*. The formal reply is *Good morning*. Teach both if desired.
3. Explain that *Fine, thank you* is generally used only when students feel fine. Teach other options like *I have a cold, I'm tired, I'm sleepy, or I'm hungry* and encourage students to use these responses when appropriate.

Culture Note: Generally adults shake hands when greeting one another. When children are greeting one another, they generally just give a small wave and smile.

Talk About the Picture

1. Attach Wall Chart 1 to the board, or open a Student Book to page 1. Students then open their Student Books to page 1. Read the following "story" while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*). If students repeat, do not stop them, but they are not required to do so.

Note: It is not important that students understand each word. This is a receptive activity focusing on exposure to English.

This is a **boy**. He's saying *Good morning* to the **girl**. This is a **girl**. She's saying *Hello* to the **boy**. This is a **woman**. She's *running* to the **taxi**. Oh, look! There's a little **squirrel** on top of the **taxi**. This is a **man**. He's *sitting* on the **bench** and *reading*. This is a **baby**. He's looking at the bird.

2. Ask the following questions while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*). Answer the questions yourself if necessary, and have students repeat.

Who's saying *Good morning*? *Point*.
Who's saying *Hello*? *Point*.
Who's *reading*? *Point*.
Who's *looking* at the bird? *Point*.

Practice the Conversation

A. Listen and repeat.

Play the recording (first version of the conversation). Students listen and repeat, pointing to each speaker in the conversation box.

Boy: *Good morning.*
Girl: *Hello! How are you?*
Boy: *Fine, thank you.*

B. Listen and find the speakers.

Play the recording (second version of the conversation). Students find and point to the speakers in the large scene. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

C. Role-play the conversation with a partner.

Students choose a partner and role-play the conversation. They then change roles and role-play the conversation again.

D. Review. Listen and repeat.

Volunteers try to read or guess the worms' conversation. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each speech bubble.

A: *Hello!*
B: *Hi!*

OPTION: Students role-play the conversation.

Find Digger's Bone

Students find Digger's bone hidden in the large scene.

Answer Key: Digger's bone is one of the legs of the park bench upon which the man reading the newspaper is sitting.

OPTION: Students find Digger's bone as above. They then draw a bone on a piece of paper, color it, and cut it out to use as a bookmark.

Games and Activities

1. **Around the Circle.** Students sit in a circle. A volunteer (S1) begins by turning to the student on his/her left (S2), and saying *Good morning*. S2 replies *Hello! How are you?* and S1 says *Fine, thank you*. Then, using the target conversation, S2 turns to greet the student on his/her left. Students continue around the circle in the same way until they all have taken a turn.

LARGE CLASSES: Each row of students practices the conversation as above, with the first student in each row (S1) turning to greet the second student in each row (S2), and so on down the row.

2. **Who Was That?** (See Game 7, page 140.) Play the game using the target conversation.
3. **Toss the Ball.** (See Game 5, page 140.) Play the game using the target conversation.

Finish the Lesson

1. **Role-play the Conversation.** Bring two volunteers to the front of the classroom and have them role-play the conversation. Other volunteer pairs then take turns role-playing the conversation in front of the class.
2. **Explain and assign Workbook page 1.** (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 148.)

Word Time

Language Focus: People and animals (*Annie, Ted, Digger, girl, boy, dog*)

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities):

CD/cassette and player; Wall Chart 2; Unit 1 Word Time Picture Cards, 1 card per student and teacher (see Picture and Word Card Book page 1)

For general information on Word Time, see pages 10–11.

Warm-Up and Review

1. **Conversation Review: Greet One Another!** As students enter the classroom, greet them by saying *Good morning*. Encourage them to respond with *Hello! How are you? Say Fine, thank you*. Once students are seated for class, have this conversation with three to four different students. Then have students use this conversation to greet other students sitting nearby.
2. Check Workbook page 1. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 148.)

Introduce the Words

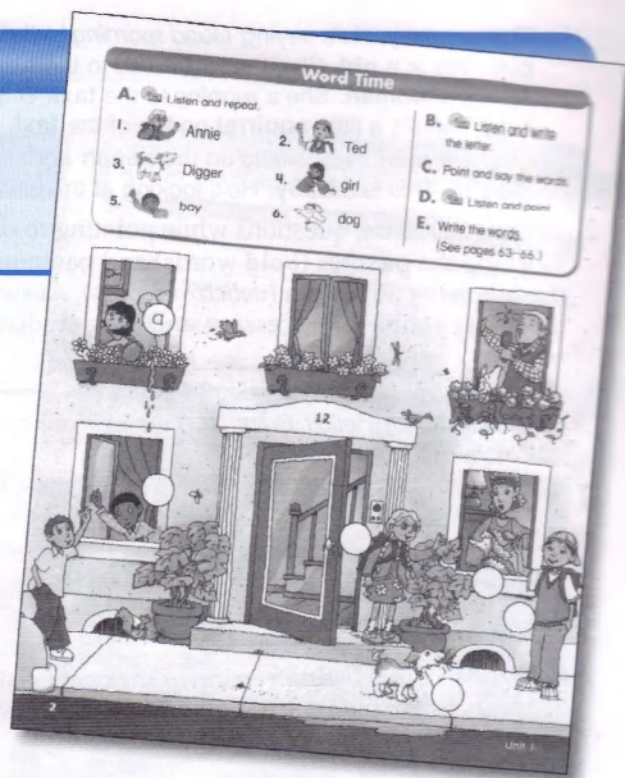
1. Hold up and name the Unit 1 Word Time Picture Cards one by one. Students listen. Hold up and name the cards again, and have students repeat. Hold up the cards in random order and have students name them.
2. Point to a girl and say *girl*. Students repeat. Do the same with two to three other girls. Point to each of these same girls again and say their first names. Students repeat. Repeat this procedure with three to four boys.

Talk About the Picture

1. Students open their Student Books to page 2. They look at the large scene and name anything they can.
2. Attach Wall Chart 2 to the board, or open a Student Book to page 2. Read the following "story" while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*). If students repeat, do not stop them, but they are not required to do so.

Note: It is not important that students understand each word. This is a receptive activity focusing on exposure to English.

This is **Annie**. She's a girl. This is **Ted**. He's a boy. Ted is saying *Hello* to Annie. This is a **dog**. Here's another dog. Oh! It's **Digger**! **Annie's grandfather** is *singing a song*. **This dog** likes the song.



3. Ask the following questions while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*).

(**Annie**) Is this Ted?

(**Ted**) Is this Annie?

(**Digger**) Is she a girl?

(**Annie**) Is he a boy?

(**Ted**) Is he a boy?

(**boy in the window**) Is he a girl?

(**poodle in the window**) Is it a dog?

Who's *singing*? *Point*.

Practice the Words

A. Listen and repeat.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each picture in the vocabulary box.

1. *Annie*
2. *Ted*
3. *Digger*
4. *girl*
5. *boy*
6. *dog*

2. Say the words in random order. Students point to the pictures in the vocabulary box.

B. Listen and write the letter.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and write the letter they hear in the white circle for each vocabulary item. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

- a. *girl, girl*
- b. *dog, dog*
- c. *Digger, Digger*
- d. *Annie, Annie*
- e. *boy, boy*
- f. *Ted, Ted*

2. Check answers by writing the letters *a–f* on the board then having volunteers come to the board and attach the corresponding picture card next to each letter. Point to each picture and have students name it.

C. Point and say the words.

Students point to and name each of the target vocabulary items in the large scene.

D. Listen and point.

Play the recording. Students listen to the sound effects and words. For the vocabulary, they point to that person or animal; for the conversations, they point to the speakers. (References are shown in parentheses.) Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

- A dog. (any dog)*
- A boy. (any boy)*
- A girl. (any girl)*
- Annie!*
- Ted!*
- Digger!*

Now listen and point to the speakers.

- A: *Good morning, Ted. (Ted and Annie)*
- B: *Hello, Annie. Hello, Digger.*
- A: *Hi, John! (boys in lower left of scene)*
- B: *Hello, Dave!*

E. Write the words. (See pages 63–66.)

Students turn to page 63 (*My Picture Dictionary*), find the picture of each target vocabulary item, and write the word next to it.

Find Digger's Bone

Students find Digger's bone hidden in the large scene.

Hint: The stem of one of the flowers in the flower box outside the top left window of the apartment building is in the shape of Digger's bone.

Directions: Students find Digger's bone as above. Then each student draws a picture of a flower garden, hiding three to four bones within the picture. When finished, students exchange pictures and try to find the bones in their classmate's drawing.

Extra Vocabulary. Students turn to page 1. Introduce the extra vocabulary items *man, woman, baby*. Students then find these people in the large scene.

Games and Activities

1. **Find Your Partner: Words.** (See Game 19, page 142.) Play the game using the Unit 1 Word Time Picture Cards. Students do not need to write the words on the board.
2. **Name the Card.** Bring six volunteers to the front of the classroom. Give each volunteer one of the Unit 1 Word Time Picture Cards. The volunteers hold the cards up so the rest of the class can see them clearly. Name one of the cards. Students repeat and point to the volunteer holding that card. Continue until all the cards have been named. Do the activity again, with students taking on the teacher's role and naming cards.
3. **Listen, Name, and Do.** Give each student a Unit 1 Word Time Picture Card. Say *Digger, stand up*. Students holding the *Digger* card stand up and say *Digger*. Continue in the same way, using different vocabulary words and classroom language, until all cards have been named several times. Then have students exchange cards and do the activity again.
4. **Option: Personalize the Picture.** Bring three volunteers to the front of the classroom. Assign each volunteer the role of either Annie, Ted, or Digger, saying *You're (Annie), You're (a girl)*. Each student poses as his/her assigned character in the large scene, in order to recreate the scene. Point to each volunteer and have him/her name the character he/she is portraying. Do the activity again with three new volunteers.
5. **Option: Project.** Students look through old magazines or newspapers and cut out pictures of boys, girls, and dogs. Label one large sheet of paper *Boys*, another one *Girls*, and another one *Dogs*. Students then glue their pictures of boys onto the *Boys* paper, their pictures of girls to the *Girls* paper, and their pictures of dogs to the *Dogs* paper. Hang these collages on the wall for future reference.

Finish the Lesson

1. **Slow Reveal.** (See Game 32, page 144.) Play the game using Unit 1 Word Time Picture Cards.
2. Explain and assign Workbook page 2. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 148.)

Practice Time

Language Focus: Subject pronouns with *be* [*I'm (Annie). I'm a (girl)./ You're (Ted). You're a (boy).*]

Function: Introducing oneself; identifying others

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities):

CD/cassette and player; a ball; Unit 1 Word Time Picture Cards, 1 set; Unit 1 Word Time Word Cards, 1 set per 4–5 students; Unit 1 Grammar Cards, 1 set per 4–5 students (see Picture and Word Card Book pages 1, 2, and 55)

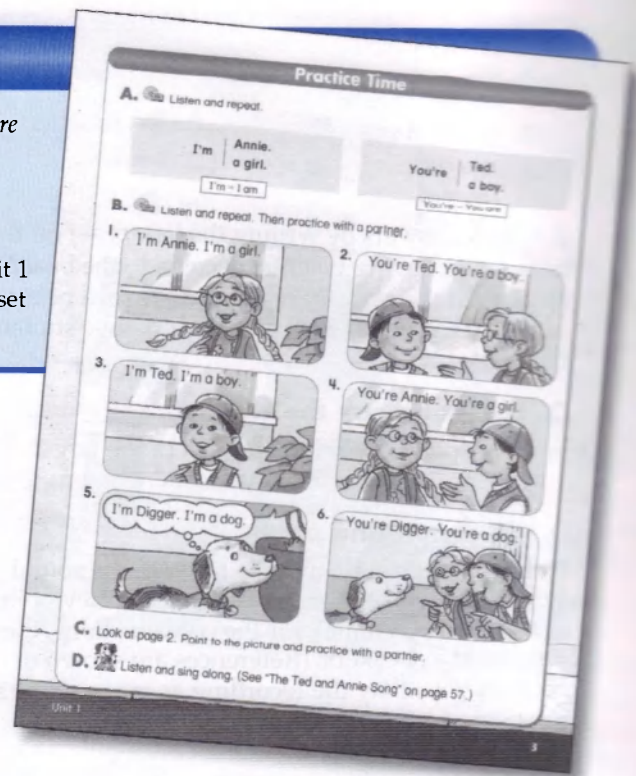
For general information on Practice Time, see pages 12–13.

Warm-Up and Review

1. **Vocabulary Review: Guess What's Missing.** (See Game 23, page 143.) Hold up each Unit 1 Word Time Picture Card and elicit its name. Then play the game using these cards.
2. Check Workbook page 2. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 148.)

Introduce the Patterns

1. **I'm (Annie). I'm a (girl).** Point to yourself and say *I'm (Ms. Smith)*, emphasizing *I'm*. Do this twice. Write *I'm (Ms. Smith)* on the board. Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Bring a girl and a boy volunteer to the front of the classroom and have each of them say *I'm (Bill)* and *I'm (Mari)*, pointing to their chests as they say their names. Write *I'm (Bill)* and *I'm (Mari)* on the board. Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Give the *boy* picture card to the boy volunteer, and the *girl* picture card to the girl volunteer. Stand behind the boy, point to the picture card, and say *I'm a boy*. The boy repeats, pointing to the card. Do the same with the girl. Write *I'm a girl* and *I'm a boy* on the board. Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Point to and read *I'm (Bill)*. *I'm a boy* on the board, then have the boy volunteer say *I'm (Bill)*. *I'm a boy*. Do the same with the girl volunteer, eliciting *I'm (Mari)*. *I'm a girl*.
2. **You're (Ted). You're a (boy).** Point to a student, look at him/her, and say *You're (Jim)*, emphasizing *You're*. Students repeat. Do the same with several other students, both boys and girls. Then write *You're Jim* on the board. Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Then point to a boy and say *You're (Mike)*. *You're a boy*. Students repeat. Write *You're a boy* on the board. Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Point to a girl and say *You're (Jenny)*. *You're a girl*. Students repeat. Then write *You're a girl* on the board. Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Students then take turns pointing to students sitting nearby and saying *You're (Kumi)*. *You're a (girl)*.



3. **Practice for Fluency.** Divide the class into pairs. Students in each pair take turns saying *I'm (Bob)*. *I'm a (boy)* about themselves, and *You're (Jill)*. *You're a (girl)* about their partners. Students then change partners and repeat the activity.

Practice the Patterns

Students open their Student Books to page 3.

A. Listen and repeat.

1. Write the text from the pattern boxes on the board. Play the recording, pointing to each word. Students listen.

I'm Annie. I'm a girl.
You're Ted. You're a boy.

2. Play the recording again. Students listen, look at the pattern boxes in their books, and repeat, pointing to each word.
3. Students try to say the patterns on their own, while looking at the pattern boxes in their books.
4. Write the explanation of the contractions on the board:

I'm = I am
You're = You are

Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Then say each pattern with the full form of the contractions. Students repeat. Students practice each pattern in the pattern box, using both the contractions and the full form of the contractions.

B. Listen and repeat. Then practice with a partner.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each picture in their books.

1. I'm Annie. I'm a girl.
2. You're Ted. You're a boy.
3. I'm Ted. I'm a boy.
4. You're Annie. You're a girl.
5. I'm Digger. I'm a dog.
6. You're Digger. You're a dog.

2. Play the recording again. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each word in their books.

3. Students practice numbers 1–6 in pairs. They then change partners and repeat the activity.

C. Look at page 2. Point to the picture and practice with a partner.

Students remain in pairs and look at page 2. They then take turns making statements about the characters in the large scene using the new patterns and vocabulary items. For example: S1 (pointing to Digger): *You're Digger. You're a dog.*

D. Listen and sing along.

1. Students turn to *The Ted and Annie Song*, page 57. Focus their attention on the pictures. Using the pictures as cues, students try to guess some of the lyrics. Read the lyrics line by line. Students repeat each line. Play the recording. Students listen and follow along in their books.

The Ted and Annie Song
(Melody: *Where is Thumbkin?*)

*Hi! I'm Annie. Hi! I'm Annie.
I'm a girl. I'm a girl.
Hi! I'm Ted. Hi! I'm Ted.
I'm a boy. I'm a boy.*

*Hi! I'm Annie. Hi! I'm Annie.
Hi! I'm Ted. Hi! I'm Ted.*

*How are you today, Ted?
Fine, thank you, Annie.
How are you?*

Fine, thank you.

2. Play the recording again. Students listen and sing along, using their books for reference. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to become familiar with the song.

3. Divide the class into Groups A and B. Play the karaoke version. Group A sings Annie's lines, pointing to themselves while singing *I'm*. Group B sings Ted's lines, pointing to themselves when singing *I'm*. Groups change roles and sing the song again.

Games and Activities

1. **Sit in a Circle.** Students sit in a circle. A volunteer (S1) begins by turning to the student on his/her left (S2), and introducing him/herself using the target pattern. S2 then repeats S1's information, and introduces him/herself to S1. For example: S1: *I'm Jenny. I'm a girl.* S2: *You're Jenny. You're a girl. I'm Brian. I'm a boy.* S2 then turns to introduce him/herself in the same way to the student on his/her left (S3). Students continue around the circle in the same way until all students have taken a turn.

LARGE CLASSES: Each row of students practices the patterns as above, with the first student in each row (S1) turning to introduce him/herself to the second student in each row (S2), and so on down the row.

OPTIONS:

1. Do the activity as above and time students to see how fast they can go around the circle in this way.
2. Do the activity as above, and add *Hello* or *Hi* to the pattern. For example: *Hello. I'm Bob. I'm a boy.*
2. **Interview.** Students walk around the classroom with a piece of paper and a pencil. They introduce themselves to their classmates using the target pattern, and their classmates respond. For example: S1: *I'm Jane. I'm a girl.* S2: *You're Jane. You're a girl. I'm Tim. I'm a boy.* S1: *You're Tim. You're a boy.* S2 then signs his/her name on S1's paper, and S1 signs S2's paper. They each then move on to other students. Students continue in the same way for four to five minutes. Students then count the names on their papers and tell the class how many people they talked to.
3. **Make the Sentences.** (See Game 43, page 145.) Do the activity using Unit 1 Word Time Word Cards and Grammar Cards.

Extra Practice

Explain and assign Worksheet 1, Name Game, page 174. (For instructions and answer key, see page 168.)

Finish the Lesson

1. **Toss the Ball.** Toss a ball to a student (S1) and elicit *I'm (John). I'm a (boy).* This student then tosses the ball to another student (S2), who says *You're (John). You're a (boy). I'm (Ken). I'm a (boy).* S2 then tosses the ball to another student, who says *You're (Ken). You're a (boy). I'm (Stacy). I'm a (girl).* Play continues around the classroom in the same way until most students have had a chance to speak.
2. Explain and assign Workbook page 3. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 148.)

Phonics Time

Sound Focus: b, p (*ball, bird, boy, pencil, pig, pizza*)

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities): CD/cassette and player; 2 pieces of paper; Unit 1 Phonics Time Picture Cards, 1 card per 2 students; *b* and *p* alphabet cards, 1 set per student (see Picture and Word Card Book pages 3 and 51–54)

For general information on Phonics Time, see pages 14–15.

Warm-Up and Review

- Pattern Review: Point and Say.** Say *I'm (Ms. Smith)*. Then point to a student (S1) and say *You're (Brad)*. *You're a (boy)*. S1 says *I'm (Brad)*. *I'm a (boy)*, points to another student (S2), and says *You're (Liz)*. *You're a (girl)*. S2 then points to another student and so on around the class. Students continue in the same way until most students have had a chance to speak.
- Check Workbook page 3. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 148.)

Introduce the Sounds

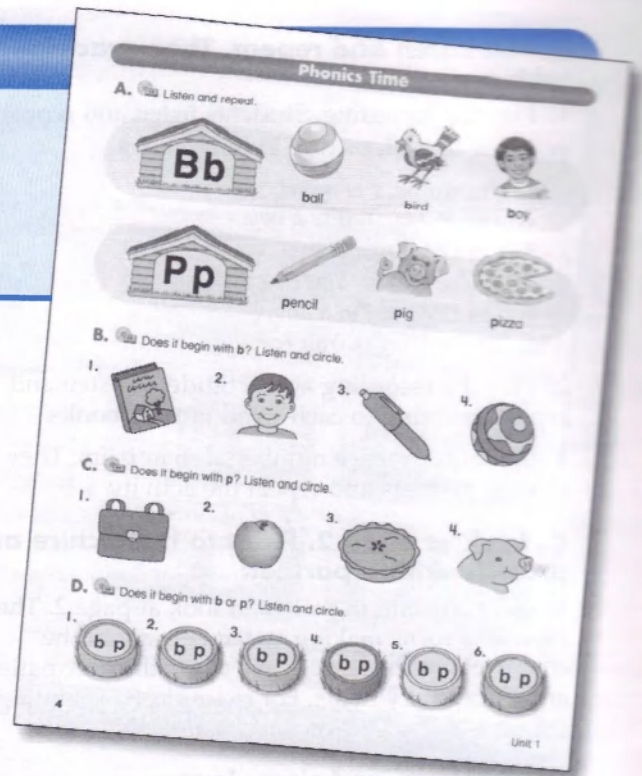
- Hold up the *ball* picture card and say /b/-/b/, *ball*, stressing the initial sound. Students repeat. Attach the *ball* card to the board. Do the same with *bird* and *boy*. Repeat the activity for the three /p/ words *pencil*, *pig*, *pizza*.
- Write *b* on the board. Say /b/ while pointing to the letter. Students repeat. Add *all* to the right of *b* and say /b/-*all*, *ball* pointing to the two parts of the word and then the whole word. Students repeat. Do the same with *boy* and *bird*. Repeat the entire procedure for the /p/ words.

Pronunciation Note: When students say /b/ and /p/, have them hold their hands in front of their mouths. They should feel a little breath on their hands for /b/, and a lot of breath for /p/. Alternatively, students hold a piece of paper in front of their mouths and say /b/ and /p/. The paper should bend more for /p/ than /b/.

Practice The Sounds

Students open their Student Books to page 4.

Students are expected to know the meaning of only the six words at the top of the page. The remaining words they hear in the lesson are for the purpose of sound recognition only. It is not necessary to teach these words as vocabulary.



A. Listen and repeat.

Focus students' attention on the *b* and *p* words at the top of the page. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to the pictures and words in their books.

b /b/
ball
bird
boy

p /p/
pencil
pig
pizza

B. Does it begin with b? Listen and circle.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and circle the illustrations of each word they hear that begin with *b*. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

- book, book*
- boy, boy*
- pen, pen*
- ball, ball*

2. Check answers by saying *Number 1. book*. Then have a volunteer repeat the word, say its initial sound, and say *Yes* if he/she circled that picture. or *No* if he/she did not. Do the same for numbers 2–4.

Answer Key: Pictures 1, 2, and 4 are circled.

Does **r** begin with **p**? Listen and circle.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and circle the illustrations of each word they hear that begins with **p**.
2. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

1. *bag, bag*
2. *peach, peach*
3. *pie, pie*
4. *pig, pig*

2. Check answers by saying *Number 1. bag*, and having a volunteer repeat the word, say its initial sound, and say *Yes* if he/she circled the picture, or *No* if he/she did not. Do the same for numbers 2–4.

Answer Key: Pictures 2, 3, and 4 are circled.

Does it begin with **b** or **p**? Listen and circle.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and circle the initial letter of each word they hear. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

1. *bike, bike*
2. *pin, pin*
3. *pot, pot*
4. *bell, bell*
5. *put, put*
6. *bean, bean*

2. Check answers by saying *Number 1. bike*, then having a volunteer repeat the word and name the letter he/she circled. Do the same for numbers 2–6.

Answer Key: 1. b 2. p 3. p 4. b 5. p 6. b

Games and Activities

1. **Raise the Card.** Give each student one *b* and one *p* alphabet card. Say either /*b*/ or /*p*/. Students raise the corresponding alphabet card. Continue for two to three minutes.
2. **Walk to *b* or *p*.** Write *b* on a piece of paper and attach it to the wall at the back of the classroom. Write *p* on another piece of paper and attach it to the board at the front of the classroom. Say a word that begins with either *b* or *p* (see Suggested Words below). If students think the word begins with *b*, they go to the back of the classroom. If they think it begins with *p*, they go to the front. Write the word on the board, say it again, and have students repeat and re-adjust their positions if need be. Do the same with ten to twelve different words.

Suggested Words: *pig, beg, pill, pest, baby, boy, pizza, ball, bird, peg, pencil, bun*

LARGE CLASSES: Instead of walking to the letters, students point to them from their seats.

3. **Find Your Partner: Sounds.** (See Game 52, page 146.) Play the game using Unit 1 Phonics Time Picture Cards and *b* and *p* alphabet cards.

Extra Practice

Explain and assign Worksheet 2, Phonics Fun *b* and *p*, page 175. (For instructions and answer key, see page 168.)

Finish the Lesson

1. **Name the Initial Sound.** Say a word that begins with either *b* or *p* (see Suggested Words below). Students say the initial sound. For example: Say *paw*. Students say /*p*/. Do the same with eight to ten different words.

Suggested Words: *paw, bed, bat, pin, bend, pad, book, peck, point, bid*

2. Explain and assign Workbook page 4. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book pages 148–149.)

Assessment

Explain and assign the Unit 1 Test, page 212. (For instructions and answer key, see page 202.)



In the Meadow

Conversation Time

Language Focus: *Ah-choo! / Bless you! / Thanks.*

Function: Polite exchanges for a sneeze

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities): CD/cassette and player; Wall Chart 3; a timer; Unit 1 Phonics Time Picture Cards, 1 set (see Picture and Word Card Book page 3)

For general information on Conversation Time, see pages 8–9.

Warm-Up and Review

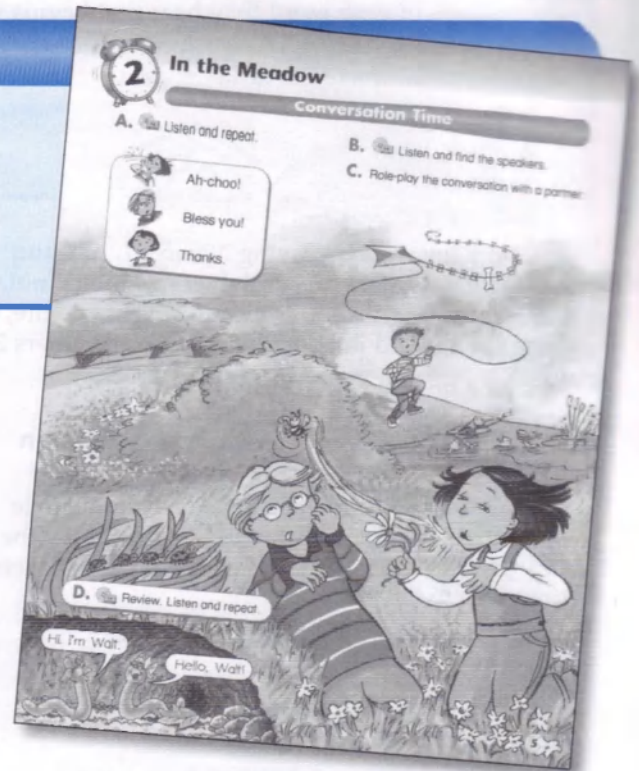
- Phonics Review: What Sound Does It Begin With?** Write *b* and *p* on the board, and elicit the sound of each letter. Hold the *ball* picture card under each letter and ask *Does ball begin with /b/ or /p/?* Elicit /b/, and place the *ball* picture card on the chalktray below *b*. Do the same with the remaining Unit 1 Phonics Time Picture Cards. Once all the cards are on the chalktray, point to each card, name it, and again elicit its initial sound.
- Check Workbook page 4. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book pages 148–149.)

Introduce the Conversation

- Bring two students to the front of the classroom. Stand behind each student and model his/her line(s) of the conversation with the following actions:
Ah-choo! Sneeze in an exaggerated way.
Bless you! Smile sympathetically.
Thanks. Look relieved and smile a little.
- Divide the class into Groups A and B. Model each line of the conversation again using facial expressions and body language. Group A repeats the first line of the conversation, Group B repeats line two, and so on. Encourage students to copy your facial expressions and body language. Groups then change roles and repeat the conversation again.
- Groups A and B say alternate lines of the conversation. Groups then change roles and say the conversation again. Prompt when necessary.

Talk About the Picture

- Attach Wall Chart 3 to the board, or open a Student Book to page 5. Students then open their Student Books to page 5. Read the following "story" while pointing to



or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*).

This is **Ivy**. She's a girl. This is **Joe**. He's a boy. **Ivy** says *Ah-choo!* Joe says *Bless you*. **This boy** is *flying a kite*. There are a lot of **animals** and **plants** in the meadow. Look at the **frogs**, the **ladybugs**, and the **bee**. Here's a **tree**, and here are some **flowers**, too.

- Ask the following questions while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*).
(Ivy) Is she a boy?
 Who says *Ah-choo*? *Point*.
 Who says *Bless you*? *Point*.
 Who says *Thanks*? *Point*.
(Joe) Is he a boy?
 Is **Joe** *flying a kite*?
 Can you *point* to the girl?

Practice the Conversation

- Listen and repeat.**

Play the recording (first version of the conversation). Students listen and repeat, pointing to each speaker in the conversation box.

Ivy: *Ah-choo!*
Joe: *Bless you!*
Ivy: *Thanks.*

I. Listen and find the speakers.

Play the recording (second version of the conversation). Students find and point to the speakers in the large scene. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

C. Role-play the conversation with a partner.

Students choose a partner and role-play the conversation. They then change roles and role-play the conversation again.

D. Review. Listen and repeat.

Volunteers try to read or guess the worms' conversation. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each speech bubble.

A: *Hi. I'm Walt.*
B: *Hello, Walt!*

OPTION: Students role-play the conversation.

Find Digger's Bone

Students find Digger's bone hidden in the large scene.

Answer Key: Digger's bone is one of the bows on the kite tail.

OPTION: Students find Digger's bone as above, then use paper, scissors, string, and glue to make a kite. They should hide a bone somewhere on the kite. Students then take turns standing up and showing their kites to the rest of the class. Seated students try to find the hidden bone on each kite.

Games and Activities

- Back to Back.** Divide the class into pairs. Students sit with their backs to their partners, and role-play the conversation without looking at each other. Partners then change roles and repeat the activity. Once pairs have practiced both roles two to three times, pretend to sneeze and elicit the rest of the conversation from the class.
- Pass the Timer.** Students stand in a circle. Sneeze and hand a student a timer set for one minute. That student says *Bless you!* and passes the timer to another student. That student says *Thanks*, and passes the timer to the next student, who sneezes. Students continue in the same way, passing the timer as quickly as possible so they are not holding it when it rings. Make sure students are saying the conversation lines correctly even though they are trying to speak quickly.

LARGE CLASSES: Use one timer for each row. Students pass the timer along the row as they say the conversation.

3. Combine the Conversations. Combine the Lines 1 and 2 conversations on the board in the following way:

A: *Hello! How are you?*
B: *Fine, thank you.*
A: *Ah-choo!*
B: *Bless you!*
A: *Thanks.*

Point to and read each line. Students repeat. Bring two volunteers to the front of the classroom to role-play the conversation. Then divide the class into pairs and have pairs role-play the conversation in the same way. Students in each pair then change roles and role-play the conversation again.

Finish the Lesson

- Guess Who Sneezed.** Bring a volunteer to the front of the classroom and have him/her sit with his/her back to the rest of the class. Any other student says *I'm a (boy)*, then sneezes. The volunteer tries to guess the name of the "sneezer" and says *Bless you, (Mary)!* If the volunteer has guessed correctly, the "sneezer" responds by saying *Thanks*. Another volunteer then comes to the front of the classroom. If the volunteer does not guess correctly, the "sneezer" sneezes again. If the volunteer guesses incorrectly three times, another volunteer comes to the front of the classroom. Continue until three to four volunteers have come to the front of the classroom to guess.
- Explain and assign Workbook page 5. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 149.)

Word Time

Language Focus: Nature (*tree, butterfly, flower, cloud, bird, lake*)

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities):

CD/cassette and player; Wall Chart 4; Unit 2 Word Time Picture Cards, 1 card per student (see Picture and Word Card Book page 5)

For general information on Word Time, see pages 10–11.

Warm-Up and Review

- Conversation Review: Role-Play the Conversation.** Role-play the Unit 2 target conversation with a volunteer. Then have students turn to a classmate sitting nearby. These pairs role-play the conversation together. They then change roles and role-play the conversation again.
- Check Workbook page 5. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 149.)

Introduce the Words

Draw a simple outdoor scene on the board which includes a tree, a flower, a cloud, a lake, a bird, and a butterfly. Point to each item and name it. Point to and name each item again, and have students repeat. Then point to the items in random order and have students name them.

Talk About the Picture

- Students open their Student Books to page 6. They look at the large scene and name anything they can.
- Attach Wall Chart 4 to the board, or open a Student Book to page 6. Read the following "story" while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*).

Look, this is **Digger**, the dog. This is **Annie**. She's a girl. A **butterfly** is on her nose. This is **Ted**. He's a boy. A **bird** is on his finger. That's a **cloud**. It's *high* in the sky. And here are some **ducks**, *swimming* on the **lake**.

- Ask the following questions while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*). Answer the questions yourself if necessary, and have students repeat.

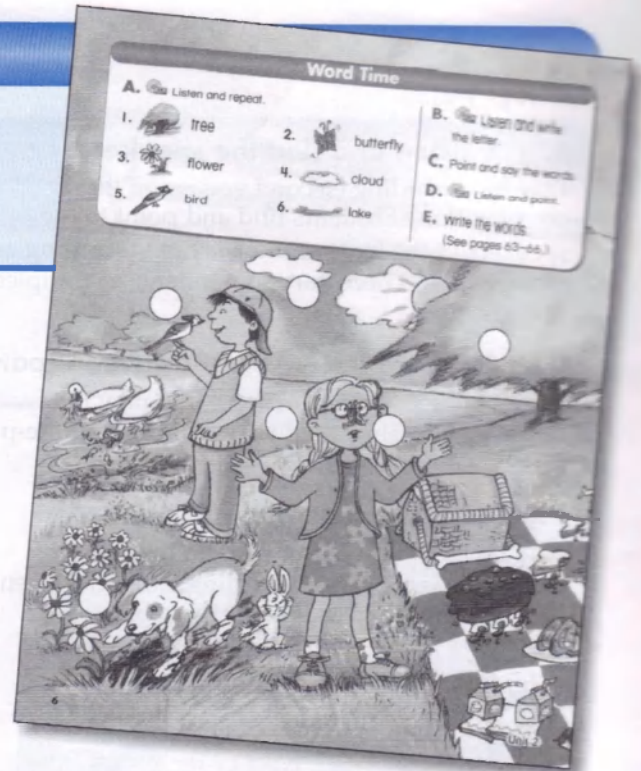
Can you *point* to Digger?

Is **Digger** a dog?

Can you *point* to Annie?

Is **Annie** a girl?

Can you *point* to Ted?



Is **Ted** a dog?
Can you *point* to the butterfly?
Can you *point* to a tree?

Practice the Words

A. Listen and repeat.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each picture in the vocabulary box.

- tree*
- butterfly*
- flower*
- cloud*
- bird*
- lake*

2. Say the words in random order. Students point to the pictures in the vocabulary box.

B. Listen and write the letter.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and write the letters they hear in the white circle for each vocabulary item. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

- bird, bird*
- butterfly, butterfly*
- tree, tree*
- lake, lake*
- flower, flower*
- cloud, cloud*

2. **Check answers** by writing the letters *a-f* on the board then having volunteers come to the board and match the corresponding picture card next to each letter. Point to each picture card and have students name it.

C. Point and say the words.

Students point to and name each of the target vocabulary items in the large scene.

D. Listen and point.

Play the recording. Students listen to the sound effects and words, and point to the corresponding nature items or speakers. (References are shown in parentheses.) Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

Oh! A butterfly.

A bird!

A tree. (any tree)

Ah, a cloud. (any cloud)

A lake.

A flower. (any flower)

Now listen and point to the speakers.

Hi, bird! (Ted)

Hello, butterfly! (Annie)

E. Write the words. (See pages 63–66.)

Students turn to page 63 (*My Picture Dictionary*), find the picture of each target vocabulary item, and write the word next to it.

Find Digger's Bone

Students find Digger's bone hidden in the large scene.

Answer Key: Digger's bone is part of the handle on the picnic basket.

OPTION: Students find Digger's bone as above, then draw their own meadow/picnic scene, hiding three bones in it. When finished, students exchange pictures and try to find the bones in their classmate's drawing.

Extra Vocabulary. Students turn to page 5. Introduce the extra vocabulary items *bush, bee, frog*. Students then find these items in the large scene.

Games and Activities

1. **Run and Find.** (See Game 31, page 144.) Play the game using Unit 2 Word Time Picture Cards.
2. **Remember and Name the Items.** Give each student a Unit 2 Word Time Picture Card. Ask a volunteer (S1) to name his/her card. S1 names it then points to another student (S2). S2 names S1's card, names his/her own card, and then points to a third student (S3).

S3 names S1 and S2's cards, then names his/her own card. Students continue in the same way until a student fails to name all the cards in the correct order. When this happens, the activity begins again from that student. Continue until all students have had a turn.

3. **Draw a Meadow.** Using both Units 1 and 2 vocabulary, students name items and people that they might find in a meadow. As they name each item or person, draw it on the board so that by the end of the activity there is a full meadow scene on the board. Students may name items more than once so that there are, for example, three trees in the meadow. Once the drawing is complete, point to each item and elicit its name.

LARGE CLASSES: Divide the class into groups of four to five. Each group does the activity as above, selecting one person to be the artist. The artist acts as the teacher, and draws the named items on a sheet of paper.

4. **Option: Personalize the Picture.** Divide the class into groups of five to six. Give each group a large piece of paper, six small pieces of paper, and crayons or markers. Members of each group work together to draw a generic meadow on the large piece of paper. Then each member of the group draws one nature item on a small piece of paper. When they are finished, the members of the group cut out their items and glue them onto the meadow scene on the large piece of paper. Group members write the names of the items on the large picture for each group. Groups take turns standing up and pointing to and naming the items in their picture for the rest of the class. Display the meadows on the classroom wall for future review.

Finish the Lesson

1. **Identify the Drawing.** Stand the Unit 2 Word Time Picture Cards on the chalktray for reference. On the board, draw a picture of one of the items, one line at a time. Students try to identify the drawing after each line has been drawn. The first student to guess correctly comes to the front of the classroom, picks up that card and names it. That student then draws the next picture on the board. Students continue in the same way until all the Unit 2 vocabulary has been drawn on the board.
2. Explain and assign Workbook page 6. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 149.)

Practice Time

Language Focus: Demonstrative pronouns [*This is a (butterfly)./ That's a (bird).*]

Function: Identifying objects

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities):

CD/cassette and player; Unit 2 Word Time Picture Cards, 1 set per 4–5 students and teacher; Unit 2 Word Time Word Cards, 1 set per student; Unit 2 Grammar Cards, 1 set per 4–5 students (see Picture and Word Card Book pages 5, 6 and 55)

For general information on Practice Time, see pages 12–13.

Warm-Up and Review

1. **Vocabulary Review: Name and Point.** Hold up each Unit 2 Word Time Picture Card and elicit its name. Students then open their Student Books to page 6 and take turns pointing to and naming these items in the large scene.
2. Check Workbook page 6. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 149.)

Introduce the Patterns

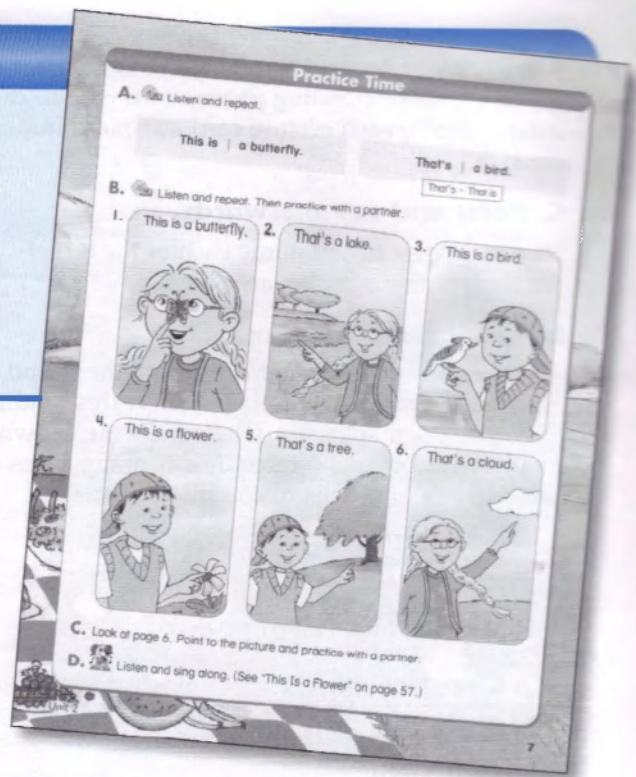
1. **This is a (tree).** Give each student a set of Unit 2 Word Time Picture Cards, and have them place the cards face up in front of them. Stand a set of these same picture cards on the chalktray. Touch the *tree* card and say *This is a tree*, stressing *This*. Students touch their *tree* card and repeat. Then write *This is a tree* on the board. Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Do the same with *flower*, *cloud*, *lake*, *bird*, and *butterfly*.
2. **That's a (cloud).** Take five steps away from the chalktray. Point to the *cloud* card and say *That's a cloud*, stressing *That's*. Students point to the *cloud* card on the chalktray and repeat. Then write *That's a cloud* on the board. Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Do the same with *flower*, *tree*, *lake*, *bird*, and *butterfly*.
3. **Practice for Fluency.** Touch or point to each picture card and elicit (*This is*) a (*butterfly*). Students touch their cards or point to the cards on the chalktray while saying *This is/That's*. A volunteer then comes to the front of the classroom and takes on the teacher's role, touching or pointing to each card, and eliciting the target sentences.

Practice the Patterns

Students open their Student Books to page 7.

A. Listen and repeat.

1. Write the text from the pattern boxes on the board.



Play the recording, pointing to each word. Students listen.

This is a butterfly.
That's a bird.

2. Play the recording again. Students listen, look at the pattern boxes in their books, and repeat, pointing to each word.
3. Students try to say the patterns on their own while looking at the pattern boxes in their books.
4. Write the explanation of the contraction on the board:

That's = That is

Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Then say each pattern with the full form of the contraction. Students repeat. Students practice each pattern in the pattern box, using both the contraction and the full form of the contraction.

B. Listen and repeat. Then practice with a partner.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each picture in their books.
 1. *This is a butterfly.*
 2. *That's a lake.*
 3. *This is a bird.*
 4. *This is a flower.*
 5. *That's a tree.*
 6. *That's a cloud.*
2. Play the recording again. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each word in their books.

3. Students practice numbers 1–6 in pairs. They then change pairs and repeat the activity.

C. Look at page 6. Point to the picture and practice with a partner.

Students remain in pairs and look at page 6. They then take turns making statements about the nature items in the large scene using the new patterns and vocabulary items. For example: S1 (touching a bird): *This is a bird.* S2 (pointing to but not touching a cloud): *That's a cloud.*

D. Listen and sing along.

1. Students turn to the Unit 2 song *This Is a Flower*, page 57. Focus their attention on the pictures. Students try to guess some of the lyrics using the pictures as cues. Read the lyrics line by line. Students repeat each line. Play the recording. Students listen and follow along in their books.

This Is a Flower (Melody: Jimmy Crack Corn)

This is a flower.

That's a tree.

This is a flower.

That's a cloud.

This is a flower.

That's a bird.

And that's a butterfly!

This is a flower.

That's a lake.

This is a flower.

That's a cloud.

This is a flower.

That's a tree.

And that's a butterfly!

2. Play the recording again. Students listen and sing along, using their books for reference.

3. Give each student a *flower* Picture Card. Place all other Unit 2 Word Time Picture Cards on the chalktray. Play the karaoke version. Students sing the song, holding up the *flower* card for the *this* lines and pointing to the appropriate cards on the chalktray for the *that* lines.

Games and Activities

1. **Walk and Talk.** Divide the class into pairs. Attach three sets of Unit 2 Word Time Picture Cards to the walls around the classroom. Walk to and touch the *butterfly* card and elicit *This is a butterfly*. Point to the *tree* card and elicit *That's a tree*. Repeat this procedure several times. Pairs then do the same, getting up and walking around the classroom. For example: one student in the pair touches the *cloud* card, and his/her partner also touches the card and says *This is a cloud*. They then move on and do the same with another card, making sure to say both *this* and *that* sentences.

Students continue in the same way for five to seven minutes.

LARGE CLASSES: Pairs place a set of Unit 2 Word Time Picture Cards face up in front of them, point to or touch each card, and make *this* and *that* sentences as above.

2. **Whisper Down the Row.** Divide the class into groups of five to six. Each group forms a line. Give the first student in each line (S1) a different Unit 2 Word Time Picture Card. S1s turn around and whisper the name of their card to the student standing behind them (S2s), saying *This is a (flower)*. Each S2 then turns around and whispers to S3 what S1 said by pointing to S1's card and saying *That's a (flower)* and so on down each line. The last student in the line calls out *That's a (flower)*. If the card name is correct, the activity starts again from S2s. If the card name is incorrect, S1 holds up his/her card and says *This is a (flower)*, and the activity starts again from S2s. Continue until all students have had a chance to begin the activity.
3. **Make the Sentences.** (See Game 43, page 145.) Do the activity using Unit 2 Word Time Word Cards and Grammar Cards.
4. **Option: Project.** Take a walk outside or look out of the classroom window, and have students see how many of the Unit 2 vocabulary items they can find and name. Encourage students to use the target patterns to talk about the vocabulary items in full sentences.

Extra Practice

Explain and assign Worksheet 3, *This/That Bingo*, page 176. (For instructions and answer key, see page 168.)

Finish the Lesson

1. **Practice to the Rhythm.** Create a chant in the following way (* = clap hands):
[stomp] * *this* [touching something on desk]
[stomp] * *this* [touching something on desk]
[pointing to something in the distance] *that that that*

Model the chant and have students repeat. Chant with students three to four times. Volunteers then take turns establishing their own rhythm and pattern for *this* and *that*. For example: *this that that this*.

2. Explain and assign Workbook page 7. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 149.)

Phonics Time

Sound Focus: g, k (*garden, girl, gorilla, kangaroo, key, kite*)

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities):

CD/cassette and player; Bingo markers, 1 per student; 3×3 Bingo grids, 1 per student; Unit 1 Phonics Time Picture Cards, 4 cards per student; Unit 2 Phonics Time Picture Cards, 5 cards per student; b, g, k, and p alphabet cards, 1 set per student (see Picture and Word Card Book pages 3, 7, and 51–54)

For general information on Phonics Time, see pages 14–15.

Warm-Up and Review

- Pattern Review: Sing Along.** Play the recording of the Unit 2 song *This Is a Flower*. Students listen. Play the recording again and have students sing along.
- Check Workbook page 7. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 149.)
- Phonics Review: Say the Initial Sound and Card Name.** Write *b* and *p* on the board. Point to each letter and elicit its sound. Hold up the *ball* picture card. Students name the card and say the initial sound. Do the same with the remaining Unit 1 Phonics Time Picture Cards.

Introduce the Sounds

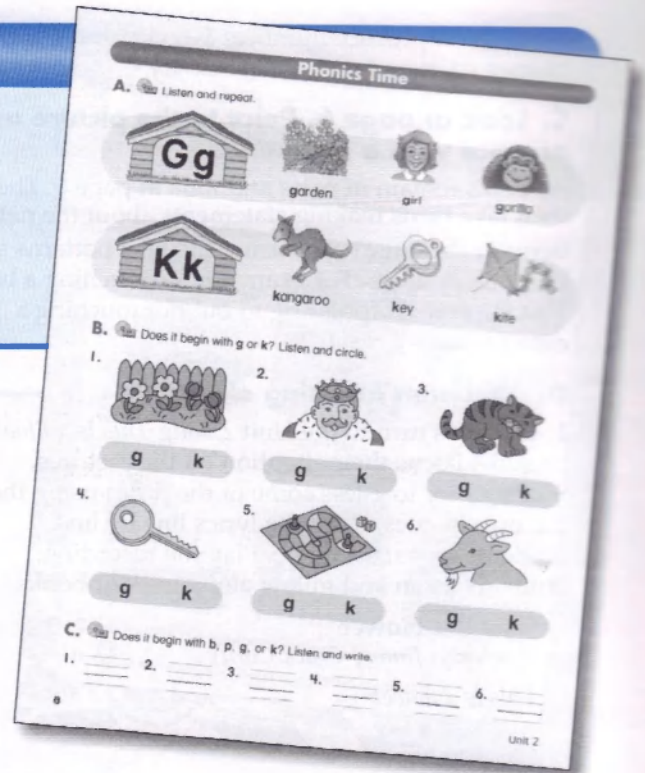
- Hold up the *garden* picture card and say /g/-/g/, *garden*, stressing the initial sound. Students repeat. Attach the card to the board. Do the same with *girl* and *gorilla*. Repeat the activity for the three /k/ words *kangaroo, key, kite*.
- Write *g* on the board. Say /g/ while pointing to the letter. Students repeat. Add *arden* to the right of *g* and say /g/-*arden*, *garden*, pointing to the two parts of the word and then the whole word. Students repeat. Do the same with *girl* and *gorilla*. Repeat the entire procedure for the /k/ words.

Pronunciation Note: When students say /g/ and /k/, have them hold their hands in front of their mouths. They should feel a little breath on their hands for /g/, and a lot of breath for /k/. Alternatively, students hold a piece of paper in front of their mouths and say /g/ and /k/. The paper should bend more for /k/ than /g/.

Practice the Sounds

Students open their Student Books to page 8.

Students are expected to know the meaning of only the six words at the top of the page. The remaining words they hear in the lesson are for the purpose of sound recognition only. It is not necessary to teach these words as vocabulary.



A. Listen and repeat.

Focus students' attention on the *g* and *k* words at the top of the page. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to the pictures and words in their books.

g /g/
garden
girl
gorilla

k /k/
kangaroo
key
kite

B. Does it begin with g or k? Listen and circle.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and circle the initial letter of each word they hear. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

- garden, garden*
- king, king*
- kitten, kitten*
- key, key*
- game, game*
- goat, goat*

2. Check answers by saying *Number 1. garden*, and having a volunteer repeat the word and name the letter he/she circled. Do the same for numbers 2–6.

Answer Key: 1. g 2. k 3. k 4. k 5. g 6. g

C. Does it begin with *b*, *p*, *g*, or *k*? Listen and write.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and write the initial letter of each word they hear. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

1. pen, pen
2. gum, gum
3. book, book
4. kiss, kiss
5. go, go
6. kick, kick

2. Check answers by writing the numbers 1–6 on the board and having a volunteer come to the board and write the letter he/she wrote for each number. Then point to each letter and elicit its sound.

Answer Key: 1. p 2. g 3. b 4. k 5. g 6. g

Games and Activities

1. **Say the Initial Sound.** Write *k* on the left side of the board, and *g* on the right side of the board. Hold up the kangaroo picture card and ask *Does kangaroo begin with /k/ or /g/?* Elicit /k/ and have students point to *k* on the board. Then place the kangaroo card on the chalktray under *k*. Do the same with the remaining Unit 2 Phonics Time Picture Cards. When all cards have been placed on the chalktray, point to each card, name it, and have students say its initial sound.
2. **Bingo: Initial Letter.** (See Game 48, page 146.) Play the game using 3×3 grids, Units 1–2 Phonics Time Picture Cards, and alphabet cards *b*, *g*, *k*, *p*.
3. **Write the Letters.** Students write the numbers 1–8 on a piece of paper. For each number, say either /b/, /p/, /g/, or /k/. Students repeat the sound and write the letter that corresponds to the sound they hear. To check answers, write the numbers 1–8 on the board then write the answer next to each number.

Extra Practice

Explain and assign Worksheet 4. Phonics Fun *g* and *k*, page 177. (For instructions and answer key, see page 168.)

Finish the Lesson

1. **Say the Initial Sound.** Give each student alphabet cards *b*, *g*, *k*, and *p*. Say *Boy*. *Boy begins with ____?* Students hold up the *b* card and say /b/. Continue in the same way with seven to nine different words that begin with *b*, *g*, *k*, or *p*.

Suggested Words: *boy*, *kiss*, *pig*, *goat*, *baby*, *girl*, *bird*, *kitten*, *gross*, *key*

2. Explain and assign Workbook page 8. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 150.)

Assessment

Explain and assign the Unit 2 Test, page 213. (For instructions and answer key, see page 202.)





3 On the Farm

Conversation Time

Language focus: *Sh! Be quiet!/Sorry./That's okay.*

Function: Giving commands; apologizing

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities):
CD/cassette and player; Wall Chart 5; a ball

For general information on Conversation Time, see pages 8–9.

Warm-Up and Review

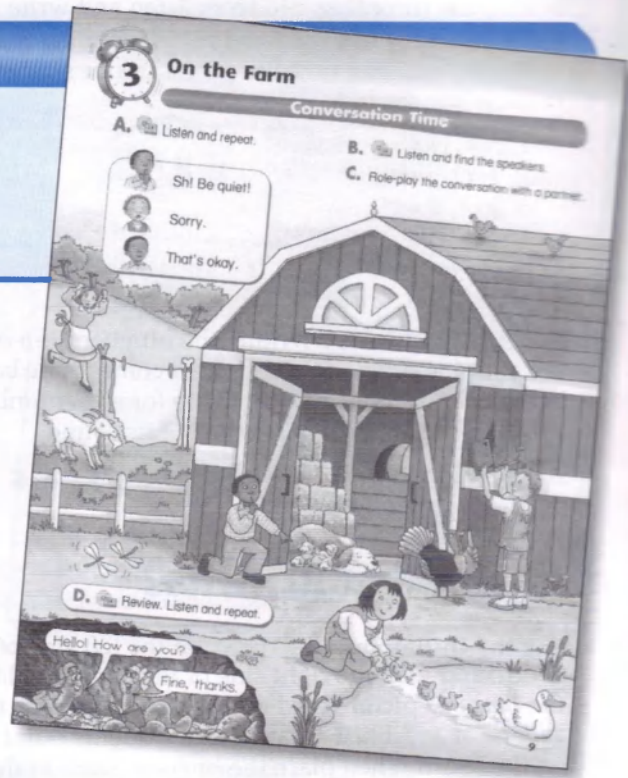
- Phonics Review: Match the Word to Its Initial Letter.** Write *g* on the board and elicit /g/. Then write *k* and elicit /k/. Say a word that begins with either *g* or *k* (see Suggested Words below). Students repeat the word and say its initial sound. Then write the word on the board under its initial letter. Do the same with eight to ten different words. When all the words have been written on the board, point to each one and elicit its initial sound.

Suggested Words: *girl, kite, Kim, gum, get, key, kiss, good, kind, goal*

- Check Workbook page 8. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 150.)

Introduce the Conversation

- Bring two students to the front of the classroom. Stand behind each student and model his/her line(s) of the conversation with the following actions:
Sh! Be quiet! Put your finger to your lips and frown.
Sorry. Look down sheepishly.
That's okay. Smile a little, shrug your shoulders, and look forgiving.
- Clarify word meaning.
Sh! Be quiet: Ask two volunteers to talk together loudly. Look at them with a slightly annoyed expression, and put your index finger to your lips. Say *Sh! Be quiet!* Students repeat.
sorry: Accidentally bump into someone, and look a bit startled. Say *Sorry.* Students repeat.
- Model the conversation again, as in Step 1.
- Divide the class into Groups A and B. Model each line of the conversation again using facial expressions and body language. Group A repeats the first line of the conversation, Group B repeats line two, and so on. Encourage students to copy your facial expressions and body language. Groups then change roles and repeat the conversation again.



- Groups A and B say alternate lines of the conversation. Groups then change roles and say the conversation again. Prompt when necessary.

Talk About the Picture

- Attach Wall Chart 5 to the board, or open a Student Book to page 9. Students then open their Student Books to page 9. Read the following "story" while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*).

The **children** are at a **farm**. This is a **tree**, and that's a **bird**. I see **two boys**, and **one girl**. And here are some **dogs**. The dogs are *sleeping*. **Bill** is *hammering* a nail. **Bob** is saying *Sh! Be quiet!* to **Bill**. Look at the **goat!** It's *eating* the **sheet!**

- Ask the following questions while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*).

(**dogs**) Dogs or birds?
Can you *point* to the bird?
Can you *point* to the *two* boys?
Can you *point* to the girl?
Can you *point* to a dog?

Practice the Conversation

A. Listen and repeat.

Play the recording (first version of the conversation). Students listen and repeat, pointing to each speaker in the conversation box.

Bob: *Sh! Be quiet!*
Bill: *Sorry.*
Bob: *That's okay.*

B. Listen and find the speakers.

Play the recording (second version of the conversation). Students find and point to the speakers in the large scene. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

C. Role-play the conversation with a partner.

Students choose a partner and role-play the conversation. They then change roles and role-play the conversation again.

D. Review. Listen and repeat.

Students take turns to read or guess the words in the conversation. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each speech bubble.

A: *Hello! How are you?*
B: *Fine, thanks.*

OPTION: Students role-play the conversation.

Find Digger's Bone

Students find Digger's bone hidden in the large scene.

Answer Key: Digger's bone is one of the poles holding up the clothes line.

OPTION: Students find Digger's bone as above, then draw two more bones in the large scene. They then exchange books with a partner, and their partner tries to find the two new bones.

Games and Activities

1. **Practice in a Circle.** Divide the class into Circles A and B, with one circle standing inside the other. Students in the two circles stand so that each student in Circle A is directly facing a student in Circle B. Students role-play the entire conversation in these pairs, with the student in the outside circle starting by saying *Sh! Be quiet!* Say *Change!* Students in both circles take two steps to their left. They then role-play the conversation with their new partners, with the student in the inside circle starting by saying *Sh! Be quiet!* Students continue the activity in the same way until each student has said each line of the conversation two to three times.

LARGE CLASSES: Students role-play the conversation with the student sitting behind them. Say *Change!* and have students switch places with any other student seated near them and role-play the conversation again. Do this three to four times.

VERY SMALL CLASSES: Students stand facing each other in two parallel lines and practice the conversation as above.

OPTION: Students stand in circles as above. Play some music, and have students in both circles walk to their left. Stop the music. Students stop and role-play the conversation with the student facing them. Once these pairs have said the entire conversation, start the music again. Students continue in the same way until each student has said each line of the conversation two to three times.

2. **Listen and Act.** (See Game 1, page 140.) Play the game using the target conversation.

3. **Combine the Conversations.** Combine the Units 1 and 3 conversations on the board in the following way:

A: *Hello! How are you?*
B: *Fine, thank you.*
A: *Sh! Be quiet!*
C and D: *Sorry.*
A: *That's okay.*

Point to and read each line. Students repeat. Bring four volunteers to the front of the classroom to role-play the conversation, with Students C and D making a noise after Student B says *Fine, thank you.* Students then form groups of four and role-play the conversation in the same way. They then change roles and role-play the conversation again. Groups continue until each student has taken on each role.

Finish the Lesson

1. **Toss the Ball.** (See Game 5, page 140.) Play the game using the target conversation.
2. Explain and assign Workbook page 9. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 150.)

Word Time

Language Focus: Farm animals (*pig, cow, horse, chicken, sheep, cat*)

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities):

CD/cassette and player; Wall Chart 6; Unit 3 Word Time Picture Cards, 1 set per 2 students; Unit 3 Word Time Word Cards, 1 set per 2 students (see Picture and Word Card Book pages 9–10)

For general information on Word Time, see pages 10–11.

Warm-Up and Review

1. **Conversation Review: Sh! Be Quiet! Be Quiet!** Write the Unit 3 target conversation on the board. Point to and read each line. Students repeat. Then have a student noisily get out books and rustle some paper. Say *Sh! Be quiet!* and have the student say *Sorry*. Say *That's okay*. Then have other seated students make noise. Elicit *Sh! Be quiet!* and have the student making noise say *Sorry*. Elicit *That's okay*.
2. Check Workbook page 9. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 150.)

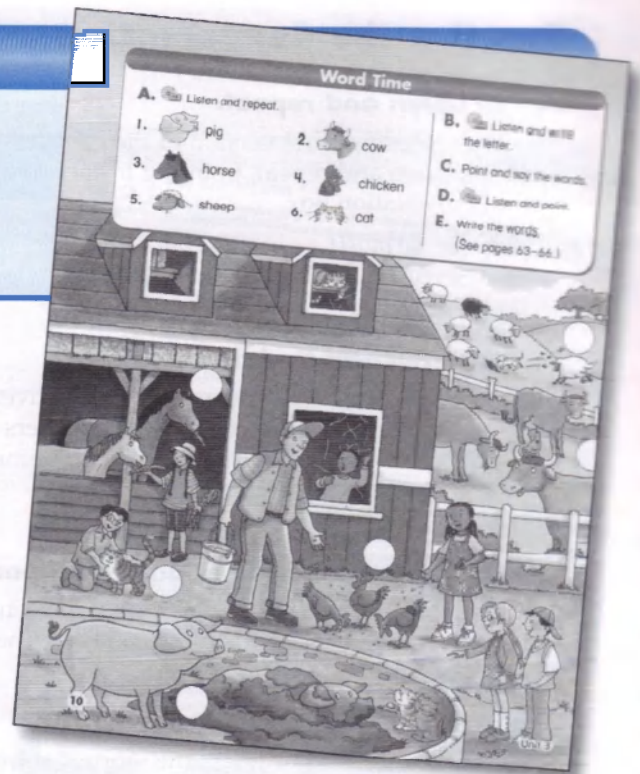
Introduce the Words

1. Hold up and name the Unit 3 Word Time Picture Cards one by one. Students listen. Hold up and name the cards again, and have students repeat. Hold up the cards in random order and have students name them.
2. Hold up each picture card again, elicit its name, elicit the animal's sound in the students' native language, then make the animal sound of the animal on the card. Students repeat the animal's name and its sound.
pig - oink
cow - moo
horse - neigh (pronounced nay)
chicken - cluck
sheep - baa
cat - meow

Talk About the Picture

1. Students open their Student Books to page 10. They look at the large scene and name anything they can.
2. Attach Wall Chart 6 to the board, or open a Student Book to page 10. Read the following "story" while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*).

There are a lot of **animals** on the **farm**. This is a **pig**, and this is a **horse**. **Emily** is *feeding* the **horse** a **carrot**. This is a **cow**. Look! There's a **bird** *sitting* on the **cow**! That's a **chicken**. The **farmer** and **this girl**, Jan, are *feeding* the **chickens**. That's a **cat**, and that's a **sheep**.



3. Ask the following questions while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*).

Are the **horses** *eating* flowers?
(**pig**) Is it a pig?
(**chickens**) Are they horses or chickens?
(**cows**) Are they horses or cows?
(**sheep**) Are they goats or sheep?
Can you *point* to Ted and Annie?
Can you *point* to the cats?

Practice the Words

A. Listen and repeat.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each picture in the vocabulary box.

1. pig
2. cow
3. horse
4. chicken
5. sheep
6. cat

2. Say the words in random order. Students point to the pictures in the vocabulary box.

B. Listen and write the letter.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and write the letters they hear in the white circle for each vocabulary item. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

- a. chicken, chicken
- b. cow, cow
- c. horse, horse
- d. pig, pig
- e. cat, cat
- f. sheep, sheep

2. Check answers by writing the letters a-f on the board, then having volunteers come to the board and attach the corresponding picture card next to each letter. Point to each picture card and have students name it.

C. Point and say the words.

Students point to and name each of the target vocabulary items in the large scene.

D. Listen and point.

Play the recording. Students listen to the sound effects and words and point to the corresponding animal or speaker. (References are shown in parentheses.) Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

- A pig. (any pig)
- A horse. (any horse)
- A cat. (any cat)
- A chicken. (any chicken)
- A sheep. (any sheep)
- A cow. (any cow)

Now listen and point to the speakers.

A: *That's a pig.* (Annie)

A: *This is a cat.* (boy petting the cat)

E. Write the words. (See pages 63-66.)

Students turn to page 63 (*My Picture Dictionary*), find the picture of each target vocabulary item, and write the word next to it.

Find Digger's Bone

Students find Digger's bone hidden in the large scene.

Answer Key: Digger's bone is one of the posts in the fence around the cows.

OPTION: Students find Digger's bone as above, then draw one of the target animals, making one of its body parts in the shape of a dog bone. For example: a cow whose horns are in the shape of dog bones, or a cat whose tail is in the shape of a dog bone. Students then take turns showing the class their pictures, saying *This is a (cow)*.

Extra Vocabulary. Students turn to page 9. Introduce the extra vocabulary items *duck*, *goat*, *turkey*. Talk about the sounds these animals make, both in English and in the students' native language. Students then find these animals in the large scene.

- duck - quack
- goat - maa
- turkey - gobble

Games and Activities

1. **Draw the Picture.** (See Game 17, page 142.) Play the game using Unit 3 target vocabulary. When students are guessing what their teammates are drawing, they must say *That's a (cow)*.
2. **Concentration: Picture to Word.** (See Game 12, page 141.) Play the game using Unit 3 Word Time Picture Cards and Word Cards. When students turn over each card, they must either touch it or point to it and say *This is/That's a (cat)*.
3. **Call and Response.** Give each student a Unit 3 Word Time Picture Card. Name one of the cards and clap twice. The students with the named card hold up the card, name it, and clap twice. For example (* = clap hands): Say *cow * **. Students holding the *cow* picture card hold up the card and say *cow * **. Continue in the same way until all cards have been named. Then bring a volunteer to the front of the classroom to take on the teacher's role and name cards.
VERY SMALL CLASSES: Give each student more than one picture card.
4. **Option: Personalize the Picture.** Each student chooses three of the target animals. They then draw, color, and cut out these three animals. Divide the class into groups of four to five, and give each group a large sheet of paper. Group members work together to create a farm on their large sheet of paper, gluing on their animals and drawing in any other necessary scenery such as trees or flowers. Groups then take turns standing up and telling the rest of the class about their farm, making sure to talk about all the animals, saying *This is/That's a (pig)*. Hang the pictures around the classroom for future reference.

Finish the Lesson

1. **What Animal Is He?** Bring a volunteer to the front of the classroom and have him/her make the sound of or pretend to be one of the farm animals. The first student to correctly identify the animal is next to come to the front of the classroom and role-play another animal. Students continue until most of them have come to the front of the classroom.
2. Explain and assign Workbook page 10. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 150.)

Practice Time

Language Focus: *Wh-* questions with *what*; demonstrative pronouns [*What's this? It's a (pig).*/*What's that? It's a (cow).*]

Function: Asking about objects; identifying objects

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities):

CD/cassette and player; Unit 3 Word Time Picture Cards, 1 set per 2 students; Unit 3 Word Time Word Cards, 1 set per 4–5 students; Unit 3 Grammar Cards, 1 set per 4–5 students (see Picture and Word Card Book pages 9, 10, and 55)

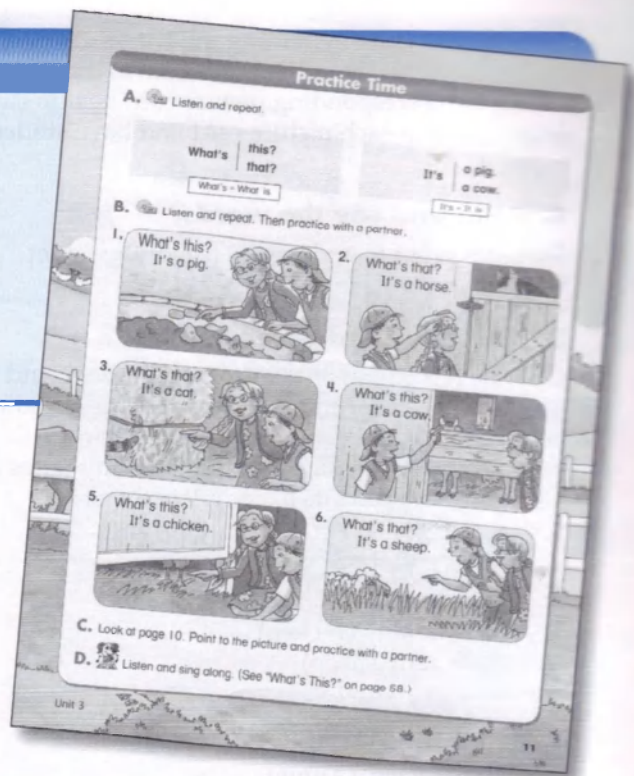
For general information on Practice Time, see pages 12–13.

Warm-Up and Review

1. **Vocabulary Review: Do It!** (See Game 15, page 141.) Hold up each Unit 3 Word Time Picture Card and elicit its name. Then play the game using the cards.
2. Check Workbook page 10. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 150.)
3. **Pattern Review: *this/that*.** Give each student a *sheep*, a *cat*, and a *cow* picture card. They place the cards face up in front of them. Stand all the Unit 3 Word Time Picture Cards on the chalktray. Touch the *sheep* card and say *This is a sheep*. Students repeat while touching their *sheep* cards. Do the same with *cat* and *cow*. Then point to the *pig* card and say *That's a pig*. Students repeat while pointing to the *pig* card on the chalktray. Do the same with *horse* and *chicken*.

Introduce the Patterns

1. **What's this? It's a (pig).** Shuffle the Unit 3 Word Time Picture Cards and place them along the chalktray facing the board. Draw a big ? on the board. Touch a card, shrug your shoulders, and look quizzically at the class. Point to the ?, touch the same card again, and ask *What's this?* Students repeat. Write *What's this?* on the board. Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Then turn the card to face the class, touch it, and say *It's a (pig)*. Students repeat. Write *It's a pig.* on the board to the right of *What's this?* Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Do the same with the remaining picture cards.
2. **What's that? It's a (cow).** Shuffle the picture cards and return them to the chalktray, again facing the board. Take five steps away from the chalktray. Point to the ?, point to one of the cards, shrug your shoulders, look quizzically at the class, and ask *What's that?* Students repeat, pointing to the same card. Write *What's that?* on the board. Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Then turn the card over, point to it, and say *It's a (cow)*. Students repeat. Write *It's a cow.* on the board to the right of *What's that?* Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Do the same with the remaining picture cards.



3. **Practice for Fluency.** Turn all the cards so they once again face the board. Point to one of the cards, shrug your shoulders, and elicit *What's that?* Turn the card over and say *It's a (sheep)*. Then touch another card and elicit *What's this?* Turn over the card and say *It's a (cat)*. Continue in the same way until all cards are turned over. Shuffle the cards and do the activity again, this time asking the questions and eliciting the answers.

Practice the Patterns

Students open their Student Books to page 11.

A. Listen and repeat.

1. Write the text from the pattern boxes on the board. Play the recording, pointing to each word. Students listen.

A: *What's this?*

A: *What's that?*

B: *It's a pig.*

B: *It's a cow.*

2. Play the recording again. Students listen, look at the pattern boxes in their books, and repeat, pointing to each word.

3. Students try to say the patterns on their own while looking at the pattern boxes in their books.

4. Write the explanation of the contractions on the board:

What's = What is It's = It is

Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Then say each pattern with the full form of the contractions. Students repeat. Students practice each pattern in the pattern box, using both the contractions and the full form of the contractions.

Listen and repeat. Then practice with a partner.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each picture in their books.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. What's this?
It's a pig. | 2. What's that?
It's a horse. |
| 3. What's that?
It's a cat. | 4. What's this?
It's a cow. |
| 5. What's this?
It's a chicken. | 6. What's that?
It's a sheep. |

2. Play the recording again. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each word in their books.

3. Students practice numbers 1–6 in pairs. (S1 in each pair asks the questions, and S2 answers.) They then change roles and repeat the activity.

C. Look at page 10. Point to the picture and practice with a partner.

Students remain in pairs and look at page 10. They then take turns asking and answering questions about animals in the large scene using the new patterns and vocabulary items. For example: S1 (pointing to but not touching a chicken): *What's that?* S2: *It's a chicken.*

D. Listen and sing along.

1. Students turn to the Unit 3 song *What's This?*, page 58. Focus their attention on the pictures. Students try to guess some of the lyrics using the pictures as cues. Read the lyrics line by line. Students repeat each line. Play the recording. Students listen and follow along in their books.

What's This?

(Melody: *Head, Shoulders, Knees, and Toes*)

- | | |
|---|---|
| What's this?
It's a pig. It's a pig. | What's this?
It's a chicken. It's a chicken. |
| What's that?
It's a cow. It's a cow. | What's that?
It's a horse. It's a horse. |
| Sh! Be quiet! | Sh! Be quiet! |
| Sorry.
That's okay. | Sorry.
That's okay. |
| What's that?
It's a cat. It's a cat. | What's that?
It's a sheep. It's a sheep. |

2. Play the recording again. Students listen and sing along, using their books for reference. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to become familiar with the song.

3. Bring six volunteers to the front of the classroom. Assign each volunteer the role of one of the farm animals. Divide the rest of the class into Groups A and B. The volunteers with the pig and chicken roles stand near Group A, and the rest of the volunteers stand at a distance from Group B. Play the karaoke version. Group A sings the *What's this?* questions, touching the appropriate animals next to them. That student acts like the animal and/or makes its sound, and Group B sings the answers. Group A does the

same with the *What's that?* questions, pointing to the appropriate animals by Group B, and Group B sings the answers. Groups then change roles and sing the song again.

Games and Activities

1. **Point and Ask.** Divide the class into pairs and give each pair a set of Unit 3 Word Time Picture Cards. Pairs place the cards facedown between them. S1 in each pair touches or points to each card and asks *What's (this)?* After each question, S2 turns the card over and says *It's a (sheep)*. Pairs continue in the same way until all the cards have been identified. Students in each pair then shuffle the cards, change roles, and do the activity again.
2. **Question and Answer.** Divide the class into pairs. Attach three sets of Unit 3 Word Time Picture Cards to the walls around the classroom, with the pictures facing the walls. Pairs walk around the classroom. S1 in each pair touches or points to a card and asks *What's (that)?* S2 peeks at the card and pantomimes that animal. S1 guesses what that animal is, saying *It's a (cat)*. S1 guesses in the same way until he/she is correct. Pairs then move on to another card and S2 asks the target question. Pairs continue until they have asked questions about eight to ten cards.
3. **Make the Sentences.** (See Game 43, page 145.) Do the activity using Unit 3 Word Time Word Cards and Grammar Cards.

Extra Practice

Explain and assign Worksheet 5, *What's This?/What's That?* page 178. (For instructions and answer key, see page 169.)

Finish the Lesson

1. **Slow Reveal.** (See Game 32, page 144.) Play the game using Unit 3 Word Time Picture Cards. As more of the picture is revealed, ask *What's this?* Students try to be the first to identify the animal and say *It's a (horse)*. After doing this with all the picture cards, bring a volunteer to the front of the classroom to reveal the picture. As he/she reveals more of each picture, point to it from a distance and ask *What's that?* Seated students try to be the first to identify the animal and say *It's a (horse)*.
2. Explain and assign Workbook page 11. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book pages 150–151.)

Phonics Time

Sound Focus: m, n (*milk, mop, mother, net, night, nurse*)

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities):

CD/cassette and player; a box; Units 1–3 Word Time Picture Cards, 1 set; Units 1–2 Phonics Time Picture Cards, 1 set; Unit 3 Phonics Time Picture Cards, 2 sets (see Picture and Word Card Book pages 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, and 11)

For general information on Phonics Time, see pages 14–15.

Warm-Up and Review

1. **Pattern Review: Sing Along.** Play the recording of the Unit 3 song *Sh! Be quiet!* Students listen. Play the recording again and have students sing along.
2. Check Workbook page 11. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book pages 150–151.)
3. **Phonics Review: b, p, g, k.** Write *b* on the board. Point to it and elicit /b/. Then, using their Student Books for reference, have students name any words they know in English that begin with *b*. Write these words on the board below *b*. Do the same with *p, g,* and *k*. Hold up the *pencil* picture card and say *It's a pencil*. Then ask *Pencil begins with ____?* Elicit /p/ and have students point to the letter *p* on the board. Attach the *pencil* card to the board below *p*. Do the same with all other Units 1–2 Phonics Time Picture Cards. Then point to each word and picture card on the board and elicit its initial sound.

Introduce the Sounds

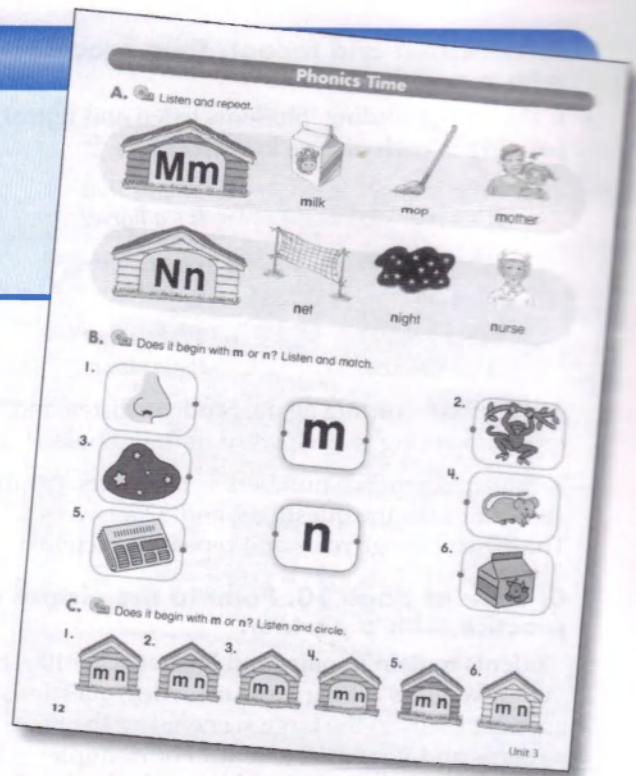
1. Hold up the *milk* picture card and say /m/-/m/, *milk*, stressing the initial sound. Students repeat. Attach the card to the board. Do the same with *mop* and *mother*. Repeat the activity for the three /n/ words *net, night, nurse*.
2. Write *m* on the board. Say /m/ while pointing to the letter. Students repeat. Add *ilk* to the right of *m* and say /m/-ilk, *milk*, pointing to the two parts of the word and then the whole word. Students repeat. Do the same with *mop* and *mother*. Repeat the entire procedure for the /n/ words.

Pronunciation Note: When students say /n/, have them push the tip of their tongues on the roof of their mouths just behind their front teeth.

Practice the Sounds

Students open their Student Books to page 12.

Students are expected to know the meaning of only the six words at the top of the page. The remaining



words they hear in the lesson are for the purpose of sound recognition only. It is not necessary to teach these words as vocabulary.

A. Listen and repeat.

Focus students' attention on the *m* and *n* words at the top of the page. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to the pictures and words in their books.

m /m/
milk
mop
mother

n /n/
net
night
nurse

B. Does it begin with m or n? Listen and match.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and match the illustrations of each word they hear to the letters corresponding to the word's initial sound. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

1. *nose, nose*
2. *monkey, monkey*
3. *night, night*
4. *mouse, mouse*
5. *newspaper, newspaper*
6. *milk, milk*

2. Check answers by saying *Number 1. nose*, and having a volunteer name the letter to which he/she connected the nose picture. Do the same for numbers 2–6.

Answer Key: 1. n 2. m 3. n 4. m 5. n 6. m

C. Does it begin with *m* or *n*? Listen and circle.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and circle the initial letter of each word they hear. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

1. *nut, nut*
2. *nest, nest*
3. *mat, mat*
4. *nap, nap*
5. *moon, moon*
6. *money, money*

2. Check answers by writing the numbers 1–6 on the board and having volunteers come to the board and write the letter they wrote for each number. Then point to each letter and elicit its sound.

Answer Key: 1. n 2. n 3. m 4. n 5. m 6. m

Games and Activities

1. **Find the Card.** Hide two sets of Unit 3 Phonics Time Picture Cards around the classroom. Divide the class into teams of four to five. Say /*m*/, *milk*. One student from each team stands up and tries to be the first to find the *milk* card, say its initial sound, then take it back to his/her team. Continue in the same way until all the cards have been found. The team with the most cards at the end wins.

VERY SMALL CLASSES: Students play individually as above. The student with the most cards at the end wins.

2. **Whisper and Write.** Divide the class into teams of seven to eight, standing in lines. Whisper a word that begins with a previously learned sound to the last student in each line (see Suggested Words below). That student whispers the word to the student in front of him/her and so on up the line. The first student (S1) in each line tries to be the first to run to the board and write the initial letter of the word he/she heard. Give a point to the team that first writes the correct letter. S1 then goes to the back of the line. Do the same with six to eight different words. The team with the most points at the end wins.

Suggested Words: *net, met, mother, ball, nurse, girl, boy, milk, key, nine*

3. **Dictation.** Students make two columns on a piece of paper and label one column *m* and the other *n*. Say *night*. Using their Student Books for reference, students write *night* in the *n* column. Do the same

with the other Unit 3 target phonics words. Say each word again and have students repeat and say its initial sound. Check answers by writing *m* and *n* on the board, then having a volunteer come to the board and write the words he/she wrote in each column.

Extra Practice

Explain and assign Worksheet 6, Phonics Fun *m* and *n*, page 179. (For instructions and answer key, see page 169.)

Finish the Lesson

1. **Stand Up. Sit Down.** Say ten to twelve words, some that begin with *m*, others that begin with *n* (see Suggested Words below). When students hear a word that begins with *m*, they stand up, repeat the word, put their hands on their heads, and sit down as quickly as they can. When they hear a word that begins with *n*, they repeat the word and remain seated.

Suggested Words: *Nan, not, mop, mall, net, melt, next, nose, mat, nip, nice, man*

2. Explain and assign Workbook page 12. (For instructions see Teacher's Book page 151.)

Assessment

Explain and assign the Unit 3 Test, page 214. (For instructions and answer key, see page 203.)



Review 1

Story Time

Review Focus: Units 1–3 conversations, vocabulary, and patterns

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities):
CD/cassette and player

For general information on Story Time, see page 16.

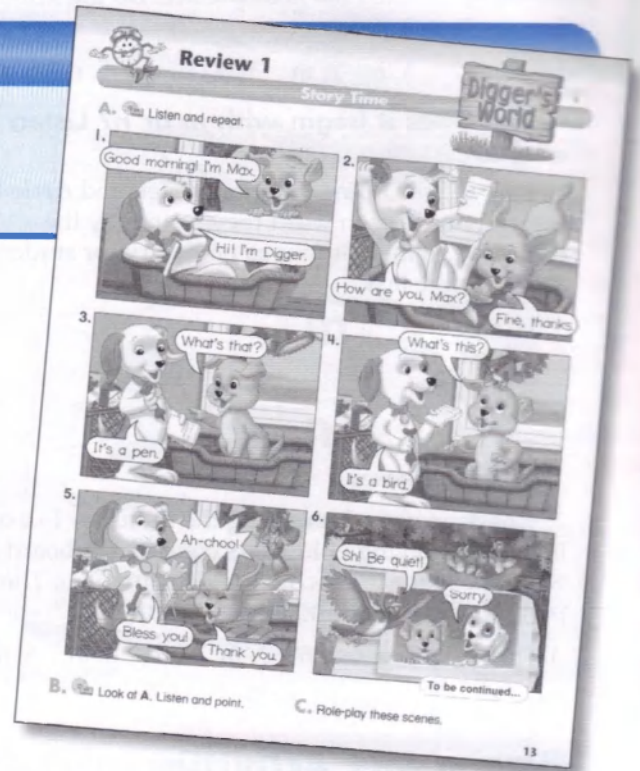
Warm-Up

1. **Review Units 1–3 Conversations, Vocabulary, and Patterns.** Students turn to each Conversation Time page (pages 1, 5, and 9), Word Time page (pages 2, 6, and 10), and Practice Time page (pages 3, 7, and 11). Elicit each conversation, vocabulary item, and pattern.
2. Check Workbook page 12. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 151.)

Work with the Pictures

Students open their Student Books to page 13.

1. Divide the class into groups of three. Groups find and name any items or characters they recognize in the six scenes.
2. Ask each group how many items they found. Encourage groups to name as many items or characters as they can.
3. When groups have finished, have each group name one item, and write these items on the board. Once all the items have been listed, point to and say each word. Students repeat, pointing to those items in their books.
4. Ask the following questions while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*).
Scene 1: Is **Max** a dog?
Scene 2: (**tree**) What's this?
Scene 3: (**bird**) Is it a butterfly?
Scene 4: (**Digger's pen**) Is it a pencil?
Scene 5: Can you *point* to who says *Ah-choo*?
Can you *point* to who says *Bless you*?
Scene 6: Can you *point* to the cloud?
Can you *point* to the tree?



Work with the Text

1. Point to Max's speech bubble in Scene 1. A volunteer guesses what Max is saying. If he/she guesses correctly, do the same with Digger's speech bubble. If he/she does not guess correctly, ask another student.
2. Do the same with all the scenes on this page. Encourage students to look back at the Units 1–3 Conversation Time, Word Time, and Practice Time pages for support if needed.

Note: It is not necessary for students to guess the exact words of the characters. Accept their guesses as long as they convey the gist of what the character is saying.

Practice the Story

Note: *Digger's World* is recorded twice. The first version is spoken at a slightly slower than normal speed, and has no sound effects. The second version is dramatized, spoken at natural speed, and has sound effects.

A. Listen and repeat.

1. Play the recording (first version of the story). Students listen and follow along in their books.

1. Max: *Good morning! I'm Max.*
Digger: *Hi! I'm Digger.*

2. Digger: *How are you, Max?*
Max: *Fine, thanks.*
3. Max: *What's that?*
Digger: *It's a pen.*
4. Max: *What's this?*
Digger: *It's a bird.*
5. Max: *Ah-choo!*
Digger: *Bless you!*
Max: *Thank you.*
6. Bird: *Sh! Be quiet!*
Max: *Sorry.*

2. Play the recording again. Pause after each line, and have students repeat. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to become familiar with the story.

B. Look at A. Listen and point.

1. Play the recording (second version of the story). Students listen and follow along in their books.
2. Divide the class into groups of three. Students in each group take on the role of one of the characters (Digger, Max, or the bird). Play the recording again, pausing after each line. Students repeat their character's lines. Students in each group then change roles and do the activity again. Continue until each student has taken on each role. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to become familiar with their character's lines.

C. Role-play these scenes.

1. Ask students which roles are needed to role-play the scenes. List the roles on the board (*Digger, Max, bird*).
2. Divide the class into Groups A, B, and C. Group A role-plays Digger's lines, Group B role-plays Max's lines, and Group C role-plays the bird's line. Groups then change roles and role-play the scenes again. Continue until each student has taken on each role.
3. Bring a volunteer from each group to the front of the classroom. Play the recording and have these volunteers act out the story along with the recording. They then act out the story on their own, without the recording.
4. Divide the class into groups of three, and have them role-play the story. They then switch roles and role-play the story again. Continue until each student has taken on each role.

Games and Activities

1. **Ah-choo! Contest.** Volunteers come to the front of the classroom and perform their best and loudest sneeze. Seated students judge who performed the loudest and best "Ah-choo!" The winner sneezes again and the rest of the class copies his/her sneeze.
2. **Puppets.** Students draw Max on one sheet of paper, Digger on another, and a bird on another. Have students cut these characters out, and then attach a stick, ruler, or pencil to the back of each cut-out to make puppets. Each student then performs the entire story for the class using these puppets. Keep these puppets so that they can be used in role-plays in later Review Units or whenever these characters appear in the Student Book.
3. **Make a New Story.** Students divide a piece of paper into six equal parts and come up with their own version of the story by drawing original scenes and new characters. If this is too challenging, students can copy the pictures and speech bubbles from page 13. Students can also do this activity in pairs.

Finish the Lesson

1. **Listen and Pantomime.** Divide the class into groups of three, and have students in each group take on the role of one of the characters in the story. Play the recording. Students listen and pantomime their role. Repeat the procedure until each student has pantomimed each role.
2. Explain and assign Workbook page 13. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 151.)

Activity Time

Review Focus: Units 1–3 conversations, vocabulary, and sounds

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities):

CD/cassette and player; Bingo markers, 12 per student; 4 × 4 grids, one per student; Units 1–3 Word Time Picture Cards, 16 cards per student; Units 1–3 Phonics Time Picture Cards, 1 set per student (see Picture and Word Card Book pages 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, and 11)

For general information on Activity Time, see page 17.

Warm-Up

1. **Review Units 1–3 Conversations, Vocabulary and Sounds.** Students turn to each Conversation Time page (pages 1, 5, and 9), Word Time page (pages 2, 6, and 10), and Phonics Time page (pages 4, 8, and 12). Elicit the conversations, vocabulary items, and sounds.
2. Check Workbook page 13. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 151.)

Review

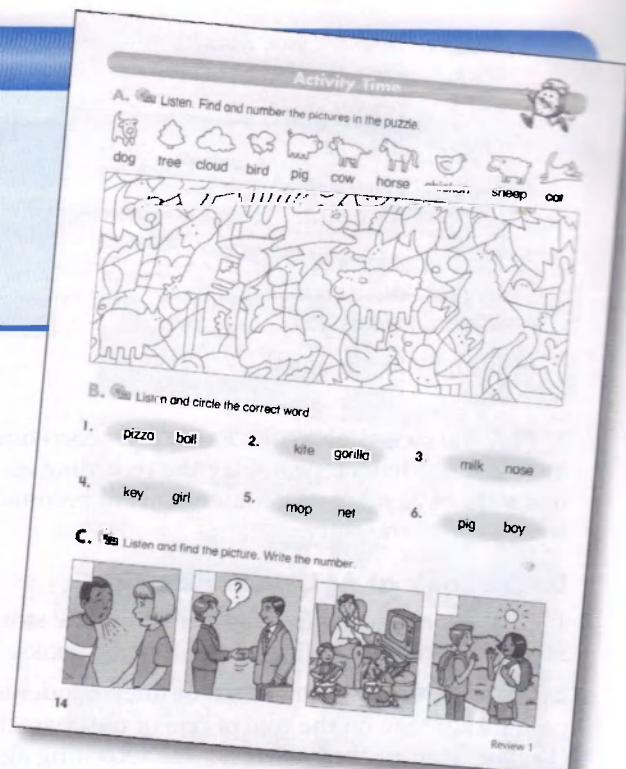
Students open their Student Books to page 14.

A. Listen. Find and number the pictures in the puzzle.

1. Point to or touch each picture above the jigsaw puzzle and ask *What's (that)?* Elicit *It's a (pig)*. Then play the recording. Students listen, find each item in the puzzle, then write the number on that item. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

1. *dog, dog*
2. *tree, tree*
3. *cloud, cloud*
4. *bird, bird*
5. *pig, pig*
6. *cow, cow*
7. *horse, horse*
8. *chicken, chicken*
9. *sheep, sheep*
10. *cat, cat*

2. Check answers by writing numbers 1–10 on the board. Volunteers come to the board and attach the corresponding Word Time Picture Card next to each number. Point to each picture and have students name it.



B. Listen and circle the correct word.

1. Write *b*, *p*, *g*, *k*, *m*, and *n* on the board. Point to each letter and elicit its sound. Then play the recording. Students listen and circle each word they hear. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

1. *ball, ball*
2. *kite, kite*
3. *milk, milk*
4. *girl, girl*
5. *net, net*
6. *pig, pig*

2. Check answers by saying *Number 1* and having a volunteer say the word he/she circled. Do the same for numbers 2–6.

C. Listen and find the picture. Write the number.

1. Divide the class into pairs, and have pairs work together, trying to determine what the speakers in each picture are saying.

2. Play the recording. Students listen and find the picture that corresponds to each conversation they hear. They then write the number in the space provided. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

1. A: *How are you?*
B: *Fine, thanks.*

2. A: *Ah-choo!*
B: *Bless you!*
A: *Thank you.*

3. A: *Sh! Be quiet!*
B: *Sorry.*
A: *That's okay.*

4. A: *Good morning!*
B: *Hello!*

3. Check answers by pointing to each picture and having a volunteer say the number he/she wrote for that picture.

Answer Key: 2, 4, 3, 1

Finish the Lesson

1. Explain and assign Checklist 1 (see Student Book page 67) for students to do at home or in class.
2. Explain and assign Workbook page 14. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 151.)
3. Do Chapter 1 of Storybook 1, *Annie and the Map*. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 166.)

Games and Activities

1. **Bingo!** (See Game 10, page 141.) Hold up each Unit 1–3 Word Time Picture Card and elicit its name. Then play the game using the picture cards and 4 × 4 grids.
2. **Classification.** Place all Units 1–3 Word Time Picture Cards along the chalktray. Then make three columns on the board, one labeled *People*, one labeled *Animals*, and the third labeled *Things*. For students' reference, attach the *boy* picture card in the *People* column, the *dog* picture card in the *Animals* column, and the *tree* picture card in the *Things* column. Volunteers then take turns coming to the board, placing one of the picture cards from the chalktray in the appropriate column, and naming the card. Once all the picture cards have been attached to the board, point to each one and elicit its name. If necessary, re-adjust cards so that they are in the correct columns.

LARGE CLASSES: Divide the class into groups of four to five, and give each group a set of Units 1–3 Word Time Picture Cards. Each group then categorizes their cards as above.

3. **What Letter Does It Begin With?** Hold up each Unit 1–3 Phonics Time Picture Card, name it, and have students repeat the word and say its initial sound. Give each student a set of Units 1–3 Phonics Time Picture Cards. Students draw six columns on a sheet of paper and label one column *b*, another *p*, another *g*, another *c*, another *m*, and the last column *n*. Name one of the cards. Students repeat the name, say its initial sound, and the card, and place it in the column that corresponds to its initial letter. For example: Say *ball*. Students say *ball*, /b/, and place their *ball* cards in the *b* column on their papers. Do the same with the remaining Units 1–3 Phonics Time Picture Cards.



4 At the Stationery Store

Conversation Time

Language Focus: *Here you are./Thanks./You're welcome.*

Function: Giving and receiving objects; expressing gratitude

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities): CD/cassette and player; Wall Chart 7; a timer; *m* and *n* alphabet cards, 1 set; Unit 3 Phonics Time Picture Cards, 1 set (see Picture and Word Card Book pages 11 and 51-54)

For general information on Conversation Time, see pages 8-9.

Warm-Up and Review

- Phonics Review: Say the Sound and Name the Card.** Hold up the *m* alphabet card and elicit /m/. Do the same with the *n* alphabet card. Attach the Unit 3 Phonics Time Picture Cards to the board. Point to each picture card and elicit its initial sound and name.
- Check Workbook page 14. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 151.)

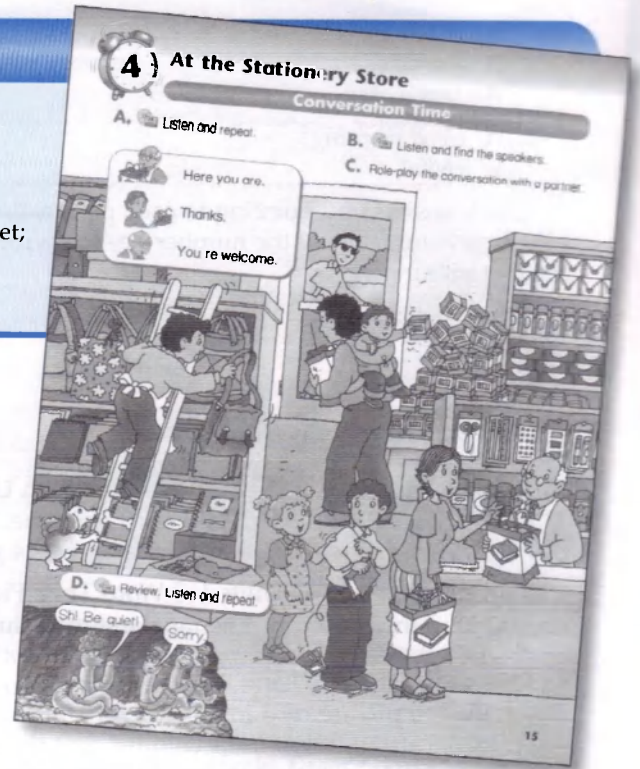
Introduce the Conversation

- Bring two students to the front of the classroom. Stand behind each student and model his/her line(s) of the conversation with the following actions:

<i>Here you are.</i>	Hand the student a pencil. Prompt him/her to take the pencil.
<i>Thanks.</i>	Smile broadly.
<i>You're welcome.</i>	Smile and nod your head slightly.
- Divide the class into Groups A and B. Model each line of the conversation again using facial expressions and body language. Group A repeats the first line of the conversation, Group B repeats line two, and so on. Encourage students to copy your facial expressions and body language. Groups then change roles and repeat the conversation again.
- Groups A and B say alternate lines of the conversation. Groups then change roles and say the conversation again. Prompt when necessary.

Talk About the Picture

- Attach Wall Chart 7 to the board, or open a Student Book to page 15. Students then open their Student Books to page 15. Read the following "story" while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*).



This is a **stationery store**. This **boy** *dropped* his **wallet**. This **girl** *sees* the **wallet**. **Annie's mother** is buying some **school supplies** for Annie. The **clerk** *hands* her the bag and says *Here you are*. Annie's mother says *Thanks*. Uh-oh! Look at the **baby**! He's *grabbing* some **crayons**. His **father** *doesn't know*.

- Ask the following questions while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**).
 - (**boy**) Is this a boy?
 - (**girl**) Is this a girl?
 - (**ladder**) Is this a tree?
 - (**clerk**) Is he a girl?

Practice the Conversation

A. Listen and repeat.

Play the recording (first version of the conversation). Students listen and repeat, pointing to each speaker in the conversation box.

Man: *Here you are.*
 Woman: *Thanks.*
 Man: *You're welcome.*

B. Listen and find the speakers.

Play the recording (second version of the conversation). Students find and point to the speakers in the large scene. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

C. Role-play the conversation with a partner.

Students choose a partner and role-play the conversation. They then change roles and role-play the conversation again.

D. Review. Listen and repeat.

Volunteers try to read or guess the worms' conversation. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each speech bubble.

A: *Sh! Be quiet!*

B: *Sorry.*

OPTION: Students role-play the conversation.

Find Digger's Bone

Students find Digger's bone hidden in the large scene.

Answer Key: Digger's bone is one of the rungs on the ladder.

OPTION: Students find Digger's bone as above, then draw a bone on a piece of paper and cut it out. They then drop their bones on the floor. Each student then picks up a classmate's bone and gives it to him/her using the target conversation.

Games and Activities

- 1. Pass the Pencil.** Give a pencil to a student and say *Here you are*. Elicit *Thanks*. Say *You're welcome*. Then prompt him/her to hand the pencil to another student and have these two students say the conversation as above. When finished, the student who received the pencil hands it to another student and repeats the activity. Students continue in the same way until most of them have had an opportunity to perform the conversation.

LARGE CLASSES: Students do the activity in rows, with each row passing a separate pencil from the front of the row to the back.

- 2. Who Was That?** (See Game 7, page 140.) Play the game using the target conversation.
- 3. Combine the Conversations.** Combine the Units 1 and 4 conversations on the board in the following way:

A: *Good morning!*
 B: *Hello. How are you?*
 A: *Fine, thank you.*
 B: *Here you are.*
 A: *Thanks.*
 B: *You're welcome.*

Point to and read each line. Students repeat. Bring two volunteers to the front of the classroom to role-play the conversation, with Student B handing Student A a book when he/she says *Here you are*. Then divide the class into pairs and have pairs role-play the conversation in the same way. Students in each pair then change roles and role-play the conversation again.

- 4. Option: Project.** Students draw two different pictures of situations in which they might use or have used this conversation. The speakers should have speech bubbles. Students then write the conversation in these speech bubbles. Divide the class into pairs, and have students in each pair look at each other's pictures, and role-play the conversation.

Finish the Lesson

- 1. Pass the Timer.** Students stand in a circle. Hand the student on your left a timer set for one minute and say *Here you are*. That student says *Thanks* and passes the timer to the student on his/her left, who says *You're welcome*, and hands the timer to the next student. Students continue the conversation, passing the timer as quickly as possible so they are not holding it when it rings. Make sure students are saying the conversation lines correctly even though they are passing the timer quickly. Reset the timer and do the activity again two to three times.

LARGE CLASSES: Do the activity as above, using one timer for each row. Students pass the timer along the row as they say the conversation.

- 2. Explain and assign Workbook page 15.** (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 151.)

Word Time

Language Focus: School supplies (*pen, book, eraser, pencil, ruler, pencil case*)

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities): CD/cassette and player; Wall Chart 8; pen, book, eraser, pencil, ruler, pencil case, 1 of each item per student; a bag; a timer; Unit 4 Word Time Picture Cards, 1 card per student (see Picture and Word Card Book page 13)

For general information on Word Time, see pages 10–11.

Warm-Up and Review

1. **Conversation Review: Hand It Over.** Hand a student a pen and say *Here you are*. Elicit *Thanks*, and reply *You're welcome*. Do the same with two to three other students. Then have each student practice the conversation in the same way with a classmate sitting nearby.
2. Check Workbook page 15. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 151.)

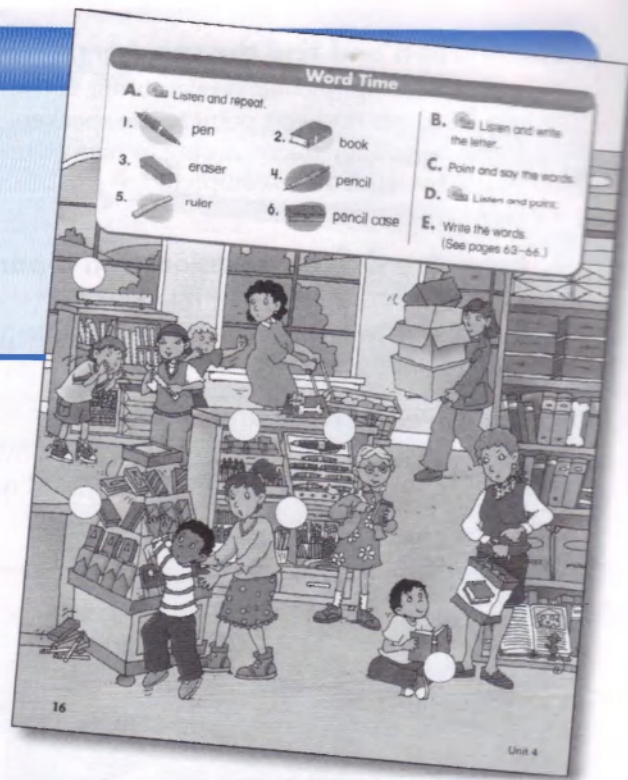
Introduce the Words

1. Place a pen, a book, an eraser, a pencil, a ruler, and a pencil case on the chalktray. Pick these items up one by one and name them. Students listen. Hold up and name each item again, and have students repeat. Then hold up the items in random order and have students name them.
2. Hold the book behind your back, with just a small portion of it showing. Point to it and say *What's this?* Elicit *It's a book*. Review the pattern if necessary. Take the book out from behind your back, hold it up, and say *Yes, it's a book*. Do the same with the remaining target vocabulary items.

Talk About the Picture

1. Students open their Student Books to page 16. They look at the large scene and name anything they can.
2. Attach Wall Chart 8 to the board, or open a Student Book to page 16. Read the following "story" while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*).

Look at all the **school supplies!** This is a **book**. That's an **eraser**. This is a **pen**, and that's a **pencil**. This boy is *sneezing*. Ah-choo! Bless you! **This woman** has a lot of **boxes**, and she *can't see* where she's going. Watch out! Over here, a **boy** and a **mouse** are *reading books*.



3. Ask the following questions while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**).

(**pencil**) What's this?
(**eraser**) What's that?
(**pencil case**) What's that?
(**ruler**) What's this?
(**mouse**) Is it a dog?
(**sneezing boy**) Is he a boy?
(**book**) What's this?
(**girl**) Is she a boy?

Practice the Words

A. Listen and repeat.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each picture in the vocabulary box.

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. <i>pen</i> | 2. <i>book</i> |
| 3. <i>eraser</i> | 4. <i>pencil</i> |
| 5. <i>ruler</i> | 6. <i>pencil case</i> |

2. Say the words in random order. Students point to the pictures in the vocabulary box.

B. Listen and write the letter.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and write the letters they hear in the white circle for each vocabulary item. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| a. <i>ruler, ruler</i> | b. <i>pencil, pencil</i> |
| c. <i>eraser, eraser</i> | d. <i>book, book</i> |
| e. <i>pencil case, pencil case</i> | f. <i>pen, pen</i> |

2. Check answers by writing the letters *a–f* on the board then having volunteers come to the board and attach the corresponding picture card next to each letter. Point to each picture card and have students name it.

C. Point and say the words.

Students point to and name each of the target vocabulary items in the large scene.

D. Listen and point.

Play the recording. Students listen to the sound effects and words. For vocabulary, they point to the corresponding school supplies; for the conversations, they point to the speakers. (References are shown in parentheses.) Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

A pencil case. (any pencil case)

An eraser. (any eraser)

A book. (any book)

A pen. (any pen)

A ruler. (any ruler)

A pencil. (any pencil)

Now listen and point to the speakers.

A: *Ah-choo!* (Ted and boy in background)

B: *Bless you!*

A: *Thank you.*

A: *This is a pen.* (Annie)

E. Write the words. (See pages 63–66.)

Students turn to page 63 (*My Picture Dictionary*), find the picture of each target vocabulary item, and write the word next to it.

Find Digger's Bone

Students find Digger's bone hidden in the large scene.

Answer Key: Digger's bone is in the bookcase on the right. There is also a bone pen on a poster in the middle of the scene.

OPTION: Students find Digger's bone as above, then on a piece of paper draw and color a ruler in the shape of a bone. Then, using the Unit 4 target conversation to do so, they exchange bones with a classmate.

Extra Vocabulary. Students turn to page 15. Introduce the extra vocabulary items *book bag*, *notebook*, *crayon*. Students find these items in the large scene.

Games and Activities

1. **What's in the Bag?** (See Game 38, page 144.) Use Option 2, and play the game using a pen, book, eraser, pencil, ruler, and pencil case.

2. **Hold It Up.** Hold a pencil in your hand with only a small portion of it showing, and say *What's this?* Elicit *It's a pencil.* Do the same with the remaining items. Say *a book* without holding up a book. Students hold up their books and say *This is a book.* Do the same with the remaining Unit 4 target vocabulary and items. Volunteers then take turns taking on the teacher's role and naming items for their classmates to hold up.

OPTION: Do the activity as above, but use a set of Unit 4 Word Time Picture Cards instead of realia.

3. **Fruit Basket Upset.** Students sit in a circle on chairs. Assign each student a Unit 4 school supply by giving them each a Unit 4 Word Time Picture Card. A volunteer stands in the center of the circle. The volunteer calls out the name of one of the target school supplies, and all students who have been assigned that item hold up their cards, name the item, then stand and race to sit in a different chair. The volunteer in the middle also tries to sit in a chair. The student left standing goes to the center of the circle and calls out the name of another school supply. The center student can also call out *Fruit Basket Upset*. When he/she does this, all students stand and try to sit in a different chair. Students continue until all vocabulary items have been practiced at least once.

VERY SMALL CLASSES: Choose only three to four school supplies to use during the game.

4. **Option: Personalize the Picture.** Divide the class into groups of four to five, and give each group two sets of Unit 4 Word Time Picture Cards. Each group then sets up a stationery shop, arranging their cards behind a "counter," and appointing a volunteer to be their shop's clerk. Students go up to another group's counter and choose items they would like to buy, telling the clerk *A (pencil), please.* The clerk hands the customer his/her items, and the two students carry out the Unit 4 target conversation. Students continue until each has "bought" two items.

VERY SMALL CLASSES: The entire class plays together as above, with only one set of picture cards.

Finish the Lesson

1. **Pass It Quickly!** Set a timer to one minute. Students pass one target realia item at a time around the class. When they receive the item from another student, they name it then pass it on as quickly as possible. When the timer rings, the student holding the item chooses the next item to be passed, and begins the activity again. Do this with each target vocabulary item.

2. Explain and assign Workbook page 16. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 152.)

Practice Time

Language Focus: Yes/No questions [*Is it (a) (pen)/(an) (eraser)? Yes, it is./No, it isn't. It's (a) (pencil).*]

Function: Asking about and identifying objects

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities): CD/cassette and player; pen, book, eraser, pencil, ruler, pencil case, 1 of each item; 2 blindfolds; Unit 4 Word Time Picture Cards, 1 set per 3–4 students; Unit 4 Word Time Word Cards, 1 set per 4–5 students; Unit 4 Grammar Cards, 1 set per 4–5 students (see Picture and Word Card Book pages 13, 14, 55, and 56)

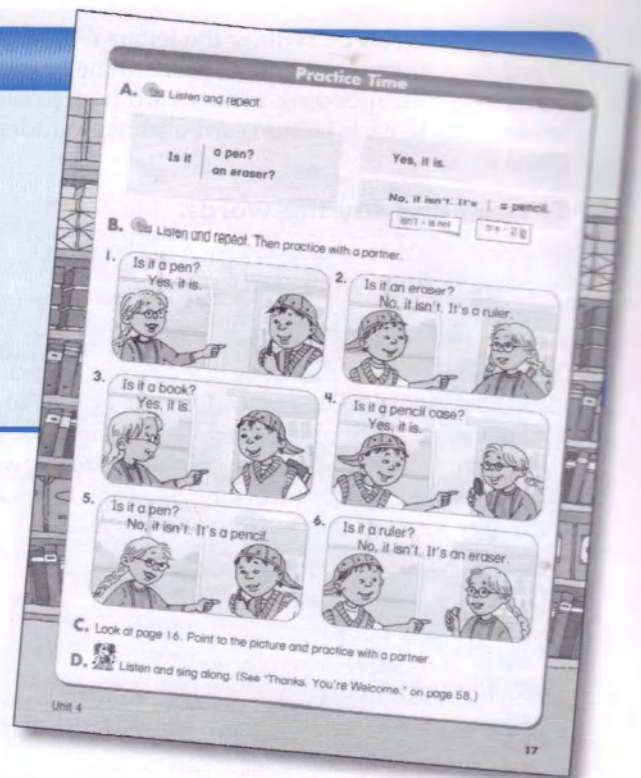
For general information on Practice Time, see pages 12–13.

Warm-Up and Review

- Vocabulary Review: Slow Reveal.** (See Game 32, page 144.) Hold up each Unit 4 Word Time Picture Card and elicit its name. Then play the game using the picture cards.
- Check Workbook page 16. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 152.)

Introduce the Patterns

- Is it (a) (pen)? Yes, it is.** Place the Unit 4 Word Time Picture Cards along the chalktray, facing the board. Draw a big ? on the board. Point to the ? and the *pen* card, shrug your shoulders, look quizzically at the class, and ask *Is it a pen?* Students repeat. Write *Is it a pen?* on the board. Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Then turn the card to face the class, ask *Is it a pen?* again, elicit a positive response, then nod your head and say *Yes, it is.* Students repeat. Write *Yes, it is.* on the board to the right of *Is it a pen?* Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Do the same with *book, eraser, pencil, ruler, and pencil case.* Point out that when a word begins with *a, e, i, o,* or *u,* *an* rather than *a* is used before it.
- Is it (a) (pen)? No, it isn't. It's (a) (book).** Shuffle the picture cards and return them to the chalktray, again facing the board. Point to the ? and the *book* card, shrug your shoulders, look quizzically at the class, and ask *Is it a pen?* Students repeat. Turn the card to face the class, ask *Is it a pen?* again, elicit a negative response, then shake your head and say *No, it isn't. It's a book.* Students repeat. Write *No, it isn't. It's a book.* on the board to the right of *Is it a pen?* Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Do the same with *pen, eraser, pencil, ruler, and pencil case.*
- Practice for Fluency.** Hold up the *pencil* picture card and ask *Is it a pen?* Elicit *No, it isn't. It's a pencil.* Hold up the remaining picture cards and ask the target question, eliciting both positive and negative answers. Then have a volunteer take on the teacher's role and ask the target questions.



Culture Note: English speakers nod their heads up and down to indicate *Yes*, and shake their heads side to side to indicate *No*.

Practice the Patterns

Students open their Student Books to page 17.

A. Listen and repeat.

1. Write the text from the pattern boxes on the board. Play the recording, pointing to each word. Students listen.

A: *Is it a pen?*
B: *Yes, it is.*

A: *Is it a pen?*
B: *No, it isn't. It's a pencil.*

A: *Is it an eraser?*
B: *Yes, it is.*

A: *Is it an eraser?*
B: *No, it isn't. It's a pencil.*

2. Play the recording again. Students listen, look at the pattern boxes in their books, and repeat, pointing to each word.

3. Students try to say the patterns on their own, while looking at the pattern boxes in their books.

4. Write the explanation of the contractions on the board:

isn't = is not

It's = It is

Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Then say each pattern with the full form of the contractions. Students repeat. Students practice each pattern in the pattern box, using both the contractions and the full form of the contractions.

B. Listen and repeat. Then practice with a partner.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each picture in their books.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Is it a pen?
Yes, it is. | 2. Is it an eraser?
No, it isn't. It's a ruler. |
| 3. Is it a book?
Yes, it is. | 4. Is it a pencil case?
Yes, it is. |
| 5. Is it a pen?
No, it isn't. It's a pencil. | 6. Is it a ruler?
No, it isn't. It's an eraser. |

2. Play the recording again. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each word in their books.

3. Students practice numbers 1–6 in pairs. (S1 in each pair asks the questions, and S2 answers.) They then change roles and repeat the activity.

C. Look at page 16. Point to the picture and practice with a partner.

Students remain in pairs and look at page 16. They then take turns asking and answering questions about the school items in the large scene using the new patterns and vocabulary items. For example: S1 (pointing to a book): *Is it a book?* S2: *Yes, it is.*

D. Listen and sing along.

1. Students turn to the Unit 4 song *Thanks. You're Welcome*, page 58. Focus their attention on the pictures. Students try to guess some of the lyrics using the pictures as cues. Read the lyrics line by line. Students repeat each line. Play the recording. Students listen and follow along in their books.

Thanks. You're Welcome.

(Melody: *Battle Hymn of the Republic*)

- | | |
|---|--|
| <i>Is it a pencil case?</i>
<i>No, it isn't.</i> | <i>Is it a pencil?</i>
<i>No, it isn't.</i> |
| <i>Is it a ruler?</i>
<i>No, it isn't.</i> | <i>Is it a book?</i>
<i>No, it isn't.</i> |
| <i>Is it an eraser?</i>
<i>Yes, it is.</i> | <i>Is it a pen?</i>
<i>Yes, it is.</i> |
| <i>Here you are.</i>
<i>Thanks.</i> | <i>Here you are.</i>
<i>Thanks.</i> |
| <i>You're welcome.</i> | <i>You're welcome.</i> |

2. Play the recording again. Students listen and sing along, using their books for reference. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to become familiar with the song.

3. Bring six volunteers to the front of the classroom. Have them form Groups A and B. Give Group A a set of Unit 4 Word Time Picture Cards, and Group B a ruler and a pen. Play the karaoke version. Group A sings the questions and holds up the corresponding picture cards. Group B sings the answers. Group A hands Group B the eraser and pen when singing *Here you are*. Groups change roles and sing the song again.

Games and Activities

1. **Blindfold.** Divide the class into Teams A and B. A volunteer from each team comes to the front of the classroom. Blindfold these volunteers and give them each a different school supply that they can name in English. The volunteers feel their item and try to determine what it is, asking their teammates *Is it a (book)?* Their teammates respond with the target pattern. The first volunteer to identify the item and correctly use the target pattern wins a point for his/her team. These two volunteers then return to their teams and another volunteer from each team comes to the front of the classroom. Continue until most students have had a turn at the front of the classroom. The team with the most points at the end wins.

LARGE CLASSES: Divide the class into teams of five to six, and play as above having a volunteer from each team come to the front of the classroom each time.

2. **Guess Their Cards.** Divide the class into groups of six to eight. Each group then divides into Groups A and B. Give each of these small groups a set of Unit 4 Word Time Picture Cards. Groups place their cards face down. One member of Group A picks up a card and looks at it. Members of Group B guess what is depicted on the card by asking *Is it an (eraser)?* If the guess is correct, Group A says *Yes, it is* and gives that card to Group B. If the guess is not correct, the group says *No, it isn't. It's a (book)* and places the card face down. Group B then takes a turn, picking up one of their cards for Group A to identify. The group with the most cards at the end wins.

3. **Make the Sentences.** (See Game 43, page 145.) Do the activity using Unit 4 Word Time Word Cards and Grammar Cards.

Extra Practice

Explain and assign Worksheet 7, *Make a Guess*, page 180. (For instructions and answer key, see page 169.)



Finish the Lesson

1. **Draw One Line at a Time.** On the board, draw a picture of one of the Unit 4 school supplies, one line at a time. Students try to identify the drawing after each line has been drawn, asking *Is it a (pen)?* Reply either *Yes, it is* or *No, it isn't*. If students do not guess correctly after three tries, say *No, it isn't. It's a (pencil)*. Do the same with the remaining Unit 4 school supplies.
2. Explain and assign Workbook page 17. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 152.)

Phonics Time

Sound Focus: d, t (*desk, dog, duck, table, teacher, tiger*)

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities):

CD/cassette and player; 10–12 Units 1–4 Word Time Picture Cards, 1 set per student; a, b, c, d, e, e, g, h, i, k, o, r, s, t, and u alphabet cards, 1 set per student (see Picture and Word Card Book pages 1, 5, 9, 13, 15, and 51–54)

For general information on Phonics Time, see pages 14–15.

Warm-Up and Review

- Pattern Review: Is it a Pencil Case?** Choose 10–12 Units 1–4 Word Time Picture Cards. Hold up each card and elicit its name. Then write the Unit 4 target patterns on the board. Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Then shuffle the cards. Quickly show one of the cards to the class. Students guess which card they just saw, asking *Is it a (tree)?* Respond with the target pattern. Do the same with the remaining cards.
- Check Workbook page 17. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 152.)
- Phonics Review: What's in the Air?** (See Game 61, page 147.) Play the game using all previously learned sounds and Units 1–3 Phonics Time Picture Cards.

Introduce the Sounds

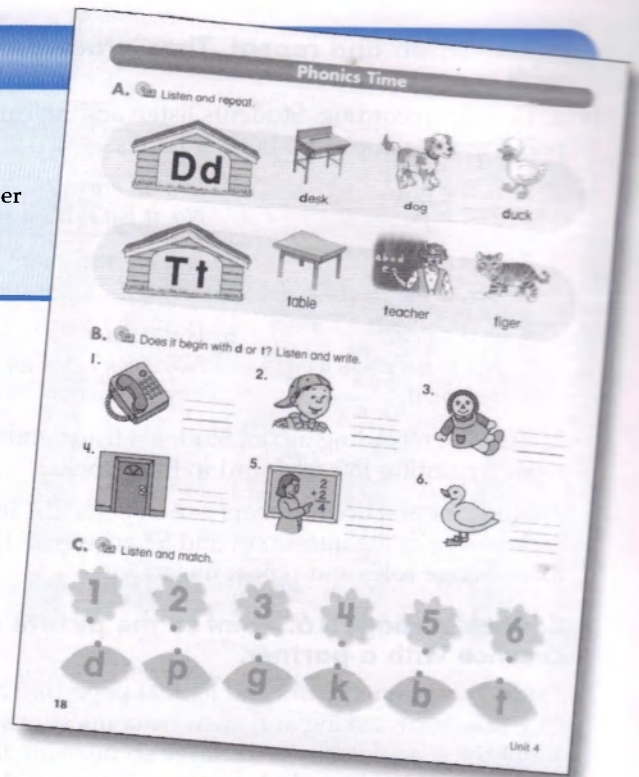
- Hold up the *dog* picture card and say /d/-/d/, *dog*, stressing the initial sound. Students repeat. Attach the card to the board. Do the same with *desk* and *duck*. Repeat the activity for the three /t/ words *tiger*, *teacher*, *table*.
- Write *d* on the board. Say /d/ while pointing to the letter. Students repeat. Add *og* to the right of *d* and say /d/-og, *dog* while pointing to the two parts of the word and then the whole word. Students repeat. Do the same with *desk* and *duck*. Repeat the entire activity for the /t/ words.

Pronunciation Note: When students say /d/ and /t/, have them hold their hands in front of their mouths. They should feel a little breath on their hands for /d/, and a lot of breath for /t/. Alternatively, students hold a piece of paper in front of their mouths and say /d/ and /t/. The paper should bend more for /t/ than for /d/.

Practice the Sounds

Students open their Student Books to page 18.

Students are expected to know the meaning of only the six words at the top of the page. The remaining



words they hear in the lesson are for the purpose of sound recognition only. It is not necessary to teach these words as vocabulary.

A. Listen and repeat.

Focus students' attention on the *d* and *t* words at the top of the page. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to the pictures and words in their books.

d /d/

desk

dog

duck

t /t/

table

teacher

tiger

B. Does it begin with d or t? Listen and write.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and write the initial letter of each word they hear. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

1. *telephone, telephone*

2. *Ted, Ted*

3. *doll, doll*

4. *door, door*

5. *teacher, teacher*



















6. *duck, duck*

2. Check answers by saying *Number 1. telephone*, and having a volunteer name the letter he/she wrote. Do the same for numbers 2–6.

Answer Key: 1. t 2. t 3. d 4. d 5. t 6. d

C. Listen and match.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and draw a line to the letter corresponding to the initial sound of each word they hear. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

1.    *pie*
2.    *ten*
3.    *king*
4.    *dog*
5.    *belt*
6.    *girl*

2. Check answers by saying *Number 1. pie*, and having a volunteer name the letter to which he/she connected it. Do the same for numbers 2–6.

Answer Key: 1. p 2. t 3. k 4. d 5. b 6. g


Games and Activities

1. **Quickly Pick the Card.** Divide the class into groups of four to five. Give each student a *d* and a *t* alphabet card and have them place the cards face up in the middle of their group. Say eight to ten words that begin with either *d* or *t* (see Suggested Words below). Students repeat each word, and each group tries to be the first to have all its members hold up the alphabet card that corresponds to that word's initial letter, then say the letter's sound. The first group to do so wins a point. The group at the end with the most points wins.

Suggested Words: *dog, tan, take, do, dip, dial, tool, teen, Dan, top, dent, dark*

2. **Concentration: Picture to Initial Letter.** (See Game 50, page 146.) Play the game using Unit 4 Phonics Time Picture Cards and *d* and *t* alphabet cards. When students turn up each card, they must name it if it is a picture card, and say the sound of the letter if it is an alphabet card.
3. **Make the Words.** Give each student alphabet cards *a, b, c, d, e, g, h, i, k, o, r, s, t, u*. Say *dog*. Students repeat the word, say its initial sound, then using their Student Books for reference, they spell *dog* with their alphabet cards. Check answers by writing the word on the board and having students check their answers and readjust their cards as necessary. Do the same with the remaining Unit 4 target phonics words.

Extra Practice

Explain and assign Worksheet 8, Phonics Fun  page 181. (For instructions and answer key, see page 169.)


Finish the Lesson

1. **Match the Letter to the Word.** Give each student either a *d* or a *t* alphabet card. Say a word that begins with either *d* or *t* (see Suggested Words below). Students with the alphabet card that corresponds to the initial sound of the word they hear hold up their cards and say that letter's sound. Do this with six different words. Each student then exchanges his/her card with a student holding a different letter. Do the activity in the same way with another six words.

Suggested Words: *tip, ton, den, date, tell, dull, dust, telephone, dirty, talk, tear, day*

2. Explain and assign Workbook page 18. (For instructions see Teacher's Book page 152.)

Assessment

Explain and assign the Unit 4 Test, page 215. (For instructions and answer key, see page 203.) 



5 At School

Conversation Time

Language Focus: *What's your first name?/Emily./What's your last name?/Young.*

Function: Asking someone's name

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities): CD/cassette and player; Wall Chart 9; a ball; small cards or pieces of paper, each with a made-up name written on it, 1 per student

For general information on Conversation Time, see pages 8–9.

Warm-Up and Review

- Phonics Review: Say the Word with a Different Initial Sound.** Write *d* and *t* on the board. Point to each letter and elicit its sound. Then say three words, two with the same initial sound, and one with a different initial sound (see Suggested Words below). Students name the word with the different initial sound. Do this with five to six different groups of words.

Suggested Words: *dog, drum, tea; dam, tan, ten; Digger, Ted, dot; desk, duck, tiger; tin, teacher, door; tall, down, town*

- Check Workbook page 18. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 152.)

Introduce the Conversation

- Bring two students to the front of the classroom. Stand behind each student and model his/her line(s) of the conversation with the following actions:

What's your first name? Look quizzically at the student with your head tilted slightly to one side.

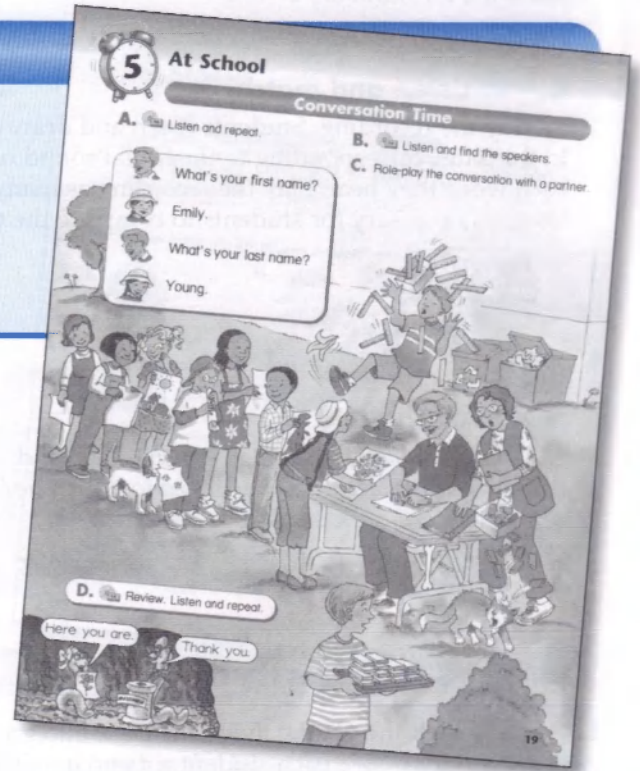
Emily. Smile and bring your open palm lightly to your chest, then remove it.

What's your last name? Look quizzically at the student with your head tilted slightly to one side.

Young. Smile and bring your open palm lightly to your chest, then remove it.

- Clarify word meaning.

first/last name: Write a student's full name on the board. Point to his/her first name and say *first name*. Students repeat. Point to his/her last name and say *last name*. Students repeat.



- Model the conversation again, as in Step 1.
- Divide the class into Groups A and B. Model each line of the conversation again using facial expressions and body language. Group A repeats the first line of the conversation, Group B repeats line two, and so on. Encourage students to copy your facial expressions and body language. Groups then change roles and repeat the conversation again.
- Groups A and B say alternate lines of the conversation. Groups then change roles and say the conversation again. Prompt when necessary.

Note: In English, the first name refers to the given name, and the last name is the family name or surname.

Talk About the Picture

- Attach Wall Chart 9 to the board or open a Student Book to page 19. Students then open their Student Books to page 19. Read the following "story" while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*).

The **children** *drew* many **pictures**. I see *four* **boys** and *four* **girls**. The **teacher** is asking **Emily** *What's your first name?* Then he asks *What's your last name?* The teacher is *writing* Emily's name down with a **pencil**.

2. Ask the following questions while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**).

(**girl**) Is this a boy or a girl?
(**boy**) Is this a girl or a boy?
(**pencil**) What's this?
(**ruler**) What's that?
(**eraser**) Is it an eraser?
(**cat**) What's this?

Practice the Conversation

A. Listen and repeat.

Play the recording (first version of the conversation). Students listen and repeat, pointing to each speaker in the conversation box.

Teacher: *What's your first name?*
Emily: *Emily.*
Teacher: *What's your last name?*
Emily: *Young.*

B. Listen and find the speakers.

Play the recording (second version of the conversation). Students find and point to the speakers in the large scene. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

C. Role-play the conversation with a partner.

Students choose a partner and role-play the conversation. They then change roles and role-play the conversation again.

D. Review. Listen and repeat.

Volunteers try to read or guess the worms' conversation. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each speech bubble.

A: *Here you are.*
B: *Thank you.*

OPTION: Students role-play the conversation.

Find Digger's Bone

Students find Digger's bone hidden in the large scene.

Answer Key: Digger's bone is part of the table leg.

OPTION: Students find Digger's bone as above, then draw, color, and cut out a dog bone to use as a microphone. Then, using the target conversation, students use their microphones to ask their classmates their first and last names.

Games and Activities

1. **Toss the Ball.** (See Game 5, page 140.) Play the game using the target conversation.
2. **Walk and Ask Their Names.** Prepare small cards or pieces of paper with made up names written on them, one name on each card/paper. Give each student a card and tell them that these are their new names. Bring two volunteers to the front of the classroom and have them role-play the conversation using the names on their cards. Do the same with two to three more pairs of volunteers. Students then walk around the classroom and, using the target conversation, ask three classmates their new names, and then return to their seats.

OPTION: Do the activity as above, but use students' real names instead of made-up names.

3. **Combine the Conversations.** Combine the Units 1, 4, and 5 conversations on the board in the following way:

A: *Good morning!*
B: *Hello! How are you?*
A: *Fine, thank you.*
B: *What's your first name?*
A: *Sam.*
B: *What's your last name?*
A: *Jones.*
B: *Here you are.*
A: *Thanks.*
B: *You're welcome.*

Point to and read each line. Students repeat. Bring two volunteers to the front of the classroom to role-play the conversation, pretending they are in the same situation as Emily and her teacher in the large scene. Student B writes down Student A's information, then hands him/her the paper upon which he/she wrote the information. Then divide the class into pairs and have pairs role-play the conversation in the same way. Students in each pair then change roles and role-play the conversation again.

Finish the Lesson

1. **Teacher Asks, Students Answer.** Ask any student *What's your first name?* The student answers. Ask a different student *What's your last name?* The student answers. Do this several times with a different student each time. Volunteers then take turns taking on the teacher's role and asking the questions.
2. Explain and assign Workbook page 19. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book pages 152–153.)

Word Time

Language Focus: Numbers 1–12 (*one, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, nine, ten, eleven, twelve*)

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities):

CD/cassette and player; Wall Chart 10; 2 dice per 4–5 students; 4 × 4 Bingo grids, 1 per student; *pencil, pen, book, tree, cloud, bird, flower, dog, cat, cow, and pig* picture cards, 1 set per 4–5 students; Unit 5 Word Time Picture Cards, 1 set per 4–5 students (see Picture and Word Card Book pages 1, 5, 9, 13, 17, and 19)

For general information on Word Time, see pages 10–11.

Warm-Up and Review

1. **Conversation Review: Ask Their Names.** Write a student's full name on the board. Point to his/her first name and say *first name*. Students repeat. Point to his/her last name and say *last name*. Students repeat. Ask several students their first and last names. Students then take turns asking several classmates their first and last names.
2. Check Workbook page 19. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book pages 152–153.)

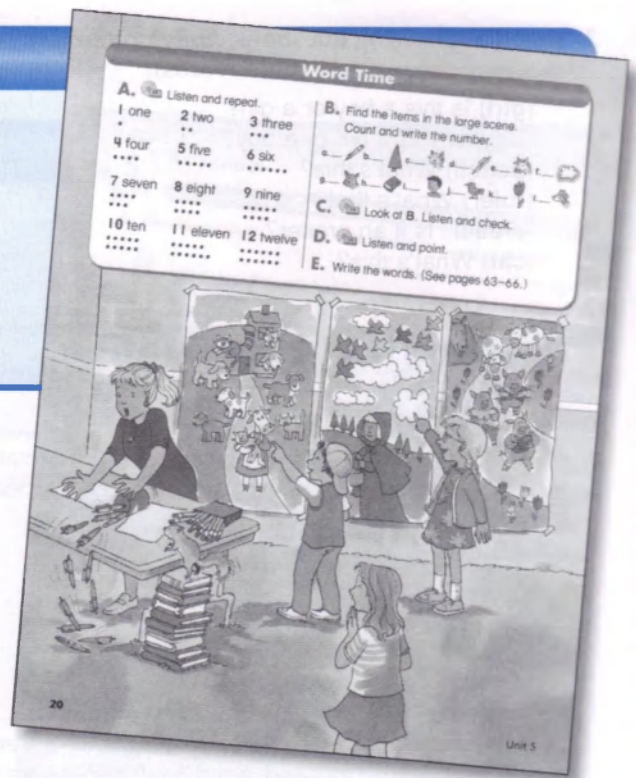
Introduce the Words

1. Hold up one finger and say *one*. Students repeat. Attach the *one* picture card to the board, point to it, and say *one*. Students repeat. Write *one* next to the *one* picture card. Point to it and say *one*. Students repeat. Do the same with numbers 2 through 12. Then point to each number on the board in order and elicit its name. Do this several times, gradually increasing the pace. Remove the cards from the board. Hold them up one by one first in numerical order, then in random order. Elicit each number.
2. Write a big 1 and 2 on the board. Hold up the *pencil* picture card. Point to the 1 and the *pencil*, and say *one pencil*. Students repeat. Point to the 2 and hold up two *pencil* picture cards. Say *two pencils*, emphasizing the final *s*. Students repeat. Do the same with the *tree, cat, pen, cow, cloud, pig, book, bird, flower, and dog* picture cards.

Note: Final /s/ and /z/ pronunciation will be covered in Practice Time. For this lesson, it is only important for students to realize that the plural form is almost always different from the singular form and usually takes an *s*.

Talk About the Picture

1. Students open their Student Books to page 20. They look at the large scene and name anything they can.



2. Attach Wall Chart 10 to the board, or open a Student Book to page 20. Read the following "story" while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*).

Ted and Annie are *looking* at the **pictures** their friends *drew*. In this picture there are 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 **dogs**. In the picture **Annie** is *looking* at there are 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 **trees** and 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8 **birds**. I see *two girls* and *one boy*. Oops! The **woman** *knocked over* the **pens**! There are 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12 pens.

3. Ask the following questions while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**).

(**pen**) Is it a ruler?
(**pencil**) What's this?
(**book**) Is it a book?
(**Ted**) What's his first name?
(**Annie**) What's her first name?
(**flower**) What's this?
(**pen**) What's this?

Practice the Words

A. Listen and repeat.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each picture in the vocabulary box.

one two three four five six
seven eight nine ten eleven twelve

2. Say the words in random order. Students point to the pictures in the vocabulary box.

B. Find the items in the large scene. Count and write the number.

Students find the listed items in the large scene, count how many of each item they see, and write that number in the space provided in exercise C.

C. Look at B. Listen and check.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and check their answers. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| a. Pencils. Eleven pencils. | b. Trees. Six trees. |
| c. Cats. Four cats. | d. Pens. Twelve pens. |
| e. Cows. Three cows. | f. Clouds. Seven clouds. |
| g. Pigs. Three pigs. | h. Books. Ten books. |
| i. Boys. One boy. | j. Birds. Eight birds. |
| k. Flowers. Nine flowers. | l. Dogs. Five dogs. |

2. Check answers by saying *a. pencils* and having a volunteer write the number he/she wrote on the board. Do the same for *b–l*.

D. Listen and point.

Play the recording. Students listen to the sound effects and words. For the vocabulary, they point to those items; for the conversations, they point to the speakers. (References are shown in parentheses.) Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

Twelve pens.
Four cats.
Eight birds.
Five dogs.
Three pigs.
Six trees.

Now listen and point to the speakers.

A: *Is it a cow?* (Ted and Annie)

B: *Yes, it is.*

A: *What's this?* (Ted and Annie)

B: *It's a cloud.*

E. Write the words. (See pages 63–66.)

Students turn to page 63 (*My Picture Dictionary*), find the picture of each target vocabulary item, and write the word next to it.

Find Digger's Bone

Students find Digger's bone hidden in the large scene.

Answer Key: Digger's bone is one of the book bindings in the pile of books by the table.

OPTION: Students find Digger's bone as above. They then draw between one and twelve bones on a piece of paper. Students take turns standing up, showing those bones to the class and saying how many they have drawn.

Extra Vocabulary. Students turn to page 19. Introduce the extra vocabulary items *13, 14, 15* (*thirteen, fourteen, fifteen*). Students find these numbers in the large scene.

Games and Activities

1. **Bingo!** (See Game 10, page 141.) Play the game using 4×4 grids and the numbers 1–12.
2. **Roll the Dice, Use the Plural.** Divide the class into groups of four to five. Give each group a set of Unit 5 Word Time Picture Cards and the *pencil, tree, cat, pen, cow, cloud, pig, book, bird, flower, and dog* picture cards. Students place the picture cards faceup in the middle of the group. Give each group two dice. One member in each group throws one or both of the dice, and points to one of the picture cards. The other members of the group try to be the first to correctly say the number on the die and the plural form of the picture card (except if *one* is thrown, then students say *one (tree)*), then turn the card facedown. For example: A student throws three and points to the *cloud* picture card. Students say *three clouds*. The first student to do so correctly wins a point. Another student in the group then takes a turn throwing the dice. Play continues in the same way until one group has turned all their cards facedown. Groups then shuffle their cards and play again. The student in each group with the most points at the end wins.
3. **Quick! Draw the Picture.** Say *six* and have students write *6* on a piece of paper. Do the same with the remaining numbers 1–12. Then say *six girls* and have students race to see who can be the first to draw six girls on their papers. The first student to do so wins a point. Do the same with *three boys, one dog, seven books, ten trees, and four sheep*. The student with the most points at the end wins.
4. **Option: Personalize the Picture.** Divide the class into groups of four to five, and have each group take out all the school supplies they have with them (for example: pens, books, pencil cases). Groups then count how many of each item they have and report their findings to the class, holding up each group of items and saying, for example, *ten pencils*.

Finish the Lesson

1. **Count Forward and Backward.** Students count from 1 to 12 around the class. Once 12 is reached, students count backwards from 12. If a student makes a mistake, he/she begins again from one (if counting forwards) or from 12 (if counting backwards).
2. Explain and assign Workbook page 20. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 153.)

Practice Time

Language Focus: *Wh-* questions with *how many*; cardinal numbers [*How many (cows)? (One) (cow)/(Two) (cows).*]

Function: Asking about numbers; counting 1–12

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities):

CD/cassette and player; pencils, pens, books, erasers, rulers, pencil cases (1–12 of each); a bag; 5 *How many...* questions, 1 list of questions per 3–4 students; 4 *tree* picture cards; 7 *cow* picture cards; 12 *chicken* picture cards; 1 *pig* picture card; 9 *horse* picture cards; Unit 5 Word Time Picture Cards, 1 set; Unit 5 Word Time Word Cards, 1 set per 3–4 students; Unit 5 Grammar Cards, 1 set per 4–5 students (see Picture and Word Card Book pages 17, 18, 19, 20, 56, and 57)

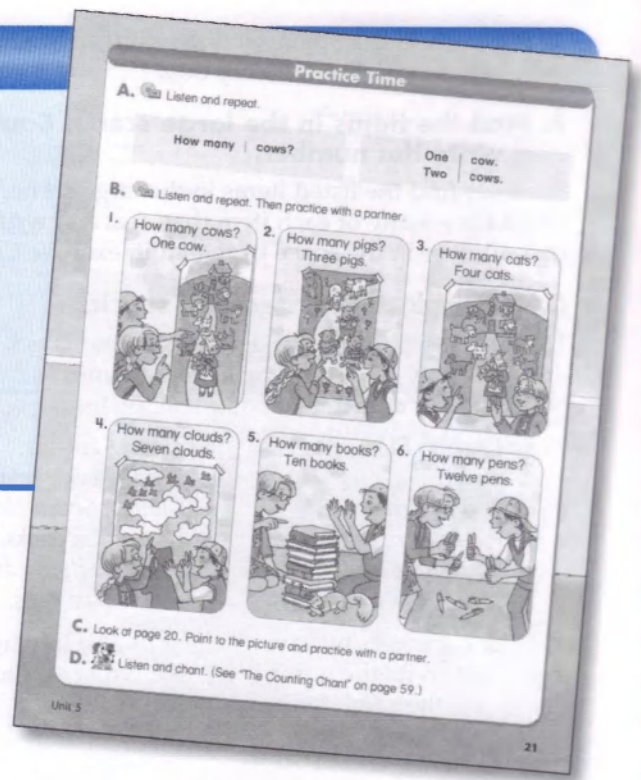
For general information on Practice Time, see pages 12–13.

Warm-Up and Review

1. **Vocabulary Review: Guess What's Missing.** (See Game 23, page 143.) Hold up the Unit 5 Word Time Picture Cards one by one and elicit their names. Then play the game using the cards.
2. Check Workbook page 20. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 153.)

Introduce the Patterns

1. **How many (pens)? One (pen).** Write a large ? on the board. Hold a pen behind your back. Point to the ?, look quizzically at the class, and while making a counting motion with your fingers, ask *How many pens?* Students repeat. Write *How many pens?* on the board. Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Then show students the pen and say *One pen*. Students repeat. Write *One pen* on the board to the right of *How many pens?* Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Do the same with a pencil, book, eraser, ruler, and pencil case.
2. **How many (pens)? Three (pens).** Ask a student to hold from three to five pens behind his/her back. Point to the ?, look quizzically at the student holding the pens, and ask *How many pens?* Students repeat. The student then holds up the pens so everyone can see them. Count the pens and say *(Four) pens*. Students repeat. Write *Four pens* on the board to the right of *How many pens?* Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Then do the same with different volunteers and pencils, books, erasers, rulers, and pencil cases.
3. **Practice for Fluency.** Hold three books behind your back. Ask *How many books?* Show students the books and elicit *Three books*. Do the same with other school supplies that students can name in English, having volunteers come to the front of the classroom to take on the teacher's role.



Note: The final *s* in words with a final voiceless consonant is pronounced /s/. For example: *cats*. The final *s* in words with a final voiced consonant or vowel is pronounced /z/. For example: *trees, birds*.

Practice the Patterns

Students open their Student Books to page 21.

A. Listen and repeat.

1. Write the text from the pattern boxes on the board. Play the recording, pointing to each word. Students listen.

A: *How many cows?* A: *How many cows?*
B: *One cow.* B: *Two cows.*

2. Play the recording again. Students listen, look at the pattern boxes in their books, and repeat, pointing to each word.

3. Students try to say the patterns on their own, while looking at the pattern boxes in their books.

B. Listen and repeat. Then practice with a partner.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each picture in their books.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>How many cows?</i>
<i>One cow.</i> | 2. <i>How many pigs?</i>
<i>Three pigs.</i> |
| 3. <i>How many cats?</i>
<i>Four cats.</i> | 4. <i>How many clouds?</i>
<i>Seven clouds.</i> |
| 5. <i>How many books?</i>
<i>Ten books.</i> | 6. <i>How many pens?</i>
<i>Twelve pens.</i> |

2. Play the recording again. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each word in their books.
3. Students practice numbers 1–6 in pairs. (S1 in each pair asks the questions, and S2 answers.) They then change roles and repeat the activity.

C. Look at page 20. Point to the picture and practice with a partner.

Students remain in pairs and look at page 20. They then take turns asking and answering questions about the items in the large scene using the new patterns and vocabulary items. For example: S1: *How many cats?* S2 (counting the cats in the large scene): *Four cats.*

D. Listen and chant.

1. Students turn to *The Counting Chant*, page 59. Focus their attention on the pictures. Students try to guess some of the lyrics using the pictures as cues. Read the lyrics line by line. Students repeat each line. Play the recording. Students listen and follow along in their books.

The Counting Chant

<i>Pencils, pens, books.</i>	<i>Cats, dogs, cows.</i>
<i>Pencils, pens, books.</i>	<i>Cats, dogs, cows.</i>
<i>How many pencils?</i>	<i>How many cats?</i>
<i>11 pencils!</i>	<i>4 cats!</i>
<i>How many pens?</i>	<i>How many dogs?</i>
<i>12 pens!</i>	<i>5 dogs!</i>
<i>How many books?</i>	<i>How many cows?</i>
<i>10 books!</i>	<i>1 cow!</i>
<i>Pencils, pens, books.</i>	<i>Cats, dogs, cows.</i>

2. Play the recording again. Students listen and chant, using their books for reference. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to become familiar with the chant.
3. Divide the class into Groups A, B, and C. Play the karaoke version. Group A chants the first two and last lines of each verse, Group B chants the *How many* questions, and Group C chants the answers. While chanting, Group B pantomimes a counting gesture with their fingers for *How many*, and Group C holds up the number of fingers that correspond to that number.

Games and Activities

1. **How Many in the Bag?** Prepare one to twelve sets of school supply items students can name in English. Put one of the sets of items in a bag (for example: three pencils) and ask *How many (pencils)?* Bring a volunteer to the front of the classroom. The volunteer feels the bag and tries to determine the number of (pencils) in the bag. He/She then says (*Three*) (*pencils*). If his/her answer is not correct, the student takes the items from the bag, counts them, and says (*Three*) (*pencils*). If his/her answer is correct, take the (three) (pencils) out and say *Yes, (three) (pencils)*. Give the bag to that volunteer

and have him/her select the next item(s) to put into the bag. That volunteer then asks *How many (book)s?* and another volunteer comes to the front of the classroom to feel the bag and determine the answer. Continue with different items and volunteers for five to seven minutes.

2. **Find the Cards.** Hide sets of four *tree* picture cards, seven *cow* picture cards, twelve *chicken* picture cards, one *pig* picture card, and nine *horse* picture cards, each set in a different location around the classroom. Divide the class into groups of three to four and give each group a list of questions about the hidden cards. The list should read:

1. How many trees? _____
2. How many cows? _____
3. How many chickens? _____
4. How many pigs? _____
5. How many horses? _____

Groups then walk around the classroom and try to find the sets of hidden cards. When they find the cards, one student in each group asks *How many (pigs)?* The other group members count the cards and say (*One*) (*pig*), and the student who asked the question writes this response on the group's list. Groups leave the cards where they found them, and move to another set of cards. Groups continue until they have answered all the questions on their list. Once all groups have completed their lists, ask *How many (trees)?* and have volunteers respond using the target pattern.

3. **Make the Sentences.** (See Game 43, page 145.) Do the activity using Unit 5 Word Time Word Cards and Grammar Cards.
4. **Option: Project.** Give each student a list of six to seven items they can name in English. Students take their lists home and count how many of each listed item they see in and around their homes. They then record these numbers and bring the list back to class. Ask each student *How many (trees)?* They respond using the target pattern according to the number of that item on their list. After asking five to six questions, bring a volunteer to the front of the classroom to take on the teacher's role and ask the questions.

Extra Practice

Explain and assign Worksheet 9, *On My Farm*, page 182. (For instructions and answer key, see page 170.)



Finish the Lesson

1. **Look Around and Count.** Say *boys*. Elicit the target question, *How many boys?* Students then look around the classroom, count the number of boys, and say (*Six*) *boys*. Do the same with girls, erasers, pens, rulers, and pencils.
2. Explain and assign Workbook page 21. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 153.)

Phonics Time

Sound Focus: h, w (*hand, horse, house, water, window, woman*)

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities): CD/cassette and player; 1 die per 3–4 students; a ball; 1 book, 7 pencils; 5 *horse* Picture Cards, 4 *cat* Picture Cards, *b, d, g, h, k, m, n, p, t,* and *w* alphabet cards, 2 sets per 3–4 students; Unit 5 Phonics Time Picture Cards, 1 set (see Picture and Word Card Book pages 9, 21 and 51–54)

For general information on Phonics Time, see pages 14–15.

Warm-Up and Review

- Pattern Review: How Many Trees?** Write *How many trees?* on the board. Point to and elicit each word. Draw three trees on the board. Ask *How many trees?* Elicit *Three trees.* Write *Three trees.* on the board. Then hold up five *horse* picture cards, one book, seven pencils, and four *cat* picture cards, eliciting the target question and answer for each set of items.
- Check Workbook page 21. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 153.)
- Phonics Review: Write the Lowercase Letter.** Write *B, D, G, K, M, N, P, T* in a vertical column on the board. Point to the letters in random order and elicit their sounds. Then have volunteers come to the board and write the corresponding lowercase letter next to each uppercase letter.

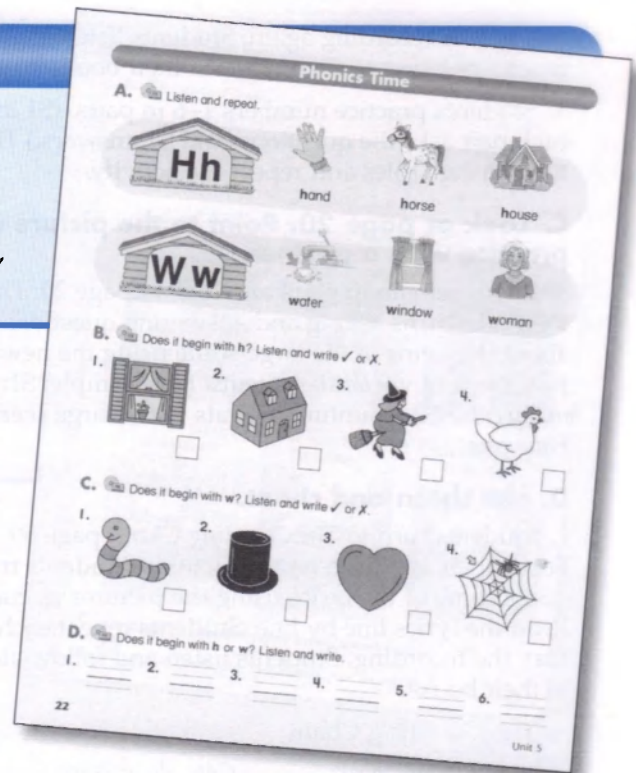
Introduce the Sounds

- Hold up the *hand* picture card and say /h-/h/, *hand*, stressing the initial sound. Students repeat. Attach the card to the board. Do the same with *horse* and *house*. Repeat the activity for the three /w/ words *water, window, woman*.
- Write *h* on the board. Say /h/ while pointing to the letter. Add *and* to the right of *h* and say /h-and/, *hand* while pointing to the two parts of the word and then the whole word. Do the same with *horse* and *house*. Repeat the entire activity for the /w/ words.

Practice the Sounds

Students open their Student Books to page 22.

Students are expected to know the meaning of only the six words at the top of the page. The remaining words they hear in the lesson are for the purpose of sound recognition only. It is not necessary to teach these words as vocabulary.



A. Listen and repeat.

Focus students' attention on the *h* and *w* words at the top of the page. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to the pictures and words in their books.

*h /h/
hand
horse
house*

*w /w/
water
window
woman*

B. Does it begin with h? Listen and write ✓ or X.

1. Play the recording. Students listen to each word and write ✓ if it begins with *h*, and X if it does not. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

- window, window*
- house, house*
- witch, witch*
- hen, hen*

2. Check answers by saying *Number 1. window* and having volunteers say the word's initial sound, then make an X with their arms if they wrote X, or a check with their fingers if they wrote ✓. Do the same for numbers 2–4.

Answer Key: 1. X 2. ✓ 3. X 4. ✓

C. 🎧 Does it begin with w? Listen and write ✓ or X.

1. Play the recording. Students listen to each word and write ✓ if it begins with *w*, and X if it does not. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

1. *worm, worm*
2. *hat, hat*
3. *heart, heart*
4. *web, web*

2. Check answers by saying *Number 1. worm* and having volunteers say the word's initial sound, then make an X with their arms if they wrote X, or a check with their fingers if they wrote ✓. Do the same for numbers 2–4.

Answer Key: 1. ✓ 2. X 3. X 4. ✓

D. 🎧 Does it begin with h or w? Listen and write.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and write the initial letter of each word they hear. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

1. *hit, hit*
2. *wig, wig*
3. *happy, happy*
4. *wet, wet*
5. *home, home*
6. *watch, watch*

2. Check answers by saying *Number 1. hit*, and having a volunteer say the letter he/she wrote. Do the same for numbers 2–6.

Answer Key: 1. h 2. w 3. h 4. w 5. h 6. w

Games and Activities

1. **Write the Letter.** Divide the class into Teams A and B, and have each team form a line at the back of the classroom. Show the first student in each line the same Unit 5 Phonics Time Picture Card. These two students race to be the first to run to the board and write the initial letter of the depicted word. The first student to correctly write the letter, say its sound, and name the card, wins a point for his/her team. These two students then go to the back of their lines and two new students take a turn. Continue until all students have had a turn at the board. The team with the most points at the end wins.

LARGE CLASSES: Divide the class into teams of six to eight. Play as above, with a student from each team going to the board each time.

VERY SMALL CLASSES: Play as above, having all students race to the board for each picture card. The student with the most points at the end wins.

2. **Move Around the Circle.** Divide the class into groups of three to four. Give each group two sets of *b, d, g, h, k, m, n, p, t,* and *w* alphabet cards and one die. Each student chooses an item to be a marker, such as a coin, a pen top, or an eraser. Each group places the alphabet cards faceup in a circle in front of them. Groups set a starting point in the circle and place their markers on that card. A student in each group throws the die and moves his/her marker clockwise along the alphabet cards according to the number shown on the die. He/She then looks at the alphabet card he/she has landed on and names the letter and its sound. He/She then says any word which starts with that letter. If the student can do this, he/she remains on that card. If the student cannot name the letter, its sound, or a word, he/she returns the marker to where it was at the beginning of that turn. Another student then takes a turn. The first student in each group to go around the circle twice wins.

3. **Dictation.** Students make two columns on a piece of paper and label one column *h* and the other column *w*. Say *horse*. Using their Student Books for reference, students write *horse* in the *h* column. Do the same with the other Unit 5 target phonics words. Say each word again and have students repeat and say its initial sound. Then check answers by writing each word on the board.

Extra Practice

Explain and assign Worksheet 10, Phonics Fun *h* and *w*, page 183. (For instructions and answer key, see page 170.)

Finish the Lesson

1. **Toss the Ball.** Write *b, d, g, h, k, m, n, p, t,* and *w* on the board. Point to each letter and elicit its sound. Toss a ball to a student (S1). He/She says the sound of any letter on the board and tosses the ball to another student (S2). S2 says a word that begins with S1's letter, and tosses the ball to another student, who says the sound of any letter on the board and tosses the ball to another student. Continue around the class in the same way until all students have taken a turn.
2. Explain and assign Workbook page 22. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 153.)

Assessment

Explain and assign the Unit 5 Test, page 216. (For instructions and answer key, see page 204.)



In Gym Class

Conversation Time

Language Focus: *Ouch! / Are you okay? / I think so.*

Function: Expressing pain; expressing concern

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities):
CD/cassette and player; Wall Chart 11; a ball; Unit 5 Phonics Time Picture Cards, 1 set (see Picture and Word Card Book page 21)

For general information on Conversation Time, see pages 8–9.

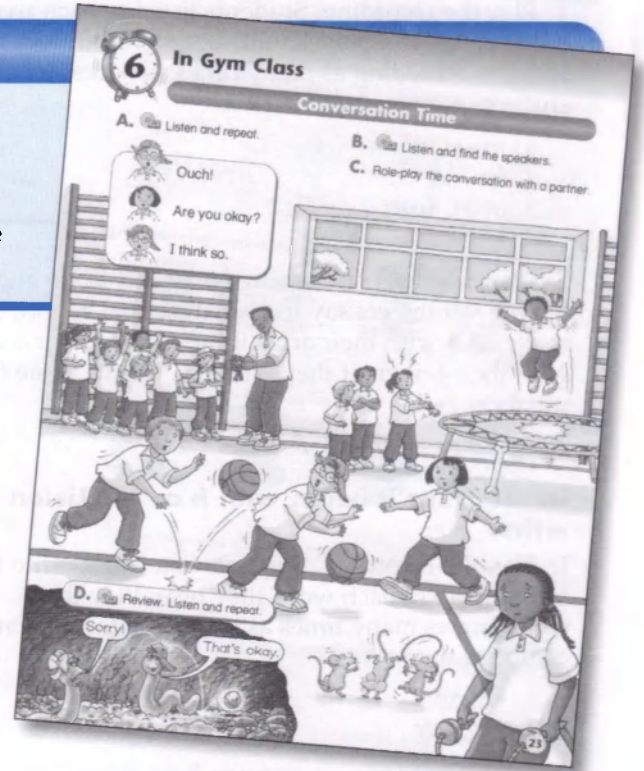
Warm-Up and Review

- Phonics Review: Match Word to Sound.** Write *w* on the left side of the board and elicit /w/. Attach the *water*, *window*, and *woman* picture cards to the board below *w*. Do the same with *h* and the *hand*, *horse*, and *house* picture cards on the right side of the board. Divide the class in half. Students on the left side of the classroom say /w/-/w/ and individual students on the right side of the classroom respond with a word starting with *w*. This can be any word beginning with *w*, not only those on the board. Students on the right side of the classroom then say /h/-/h/ and individual students from the left respond with a word starting with *h*. Students on the left side of the classroom then say /w/-/w/, and so on for two to three minutes.
- Check Workbook page 22. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 153.)

Introduce the Conversation

- Bring two students to the front of the classroom. Stand behind each student and model his/her line(s) of the conversation with the following actions:

<i>Ouch!</i>	Bang your hand on a desk and then hold the hurt part of your hand with a pained expression.
<i>Are you okay?</i>	Lean forward a little with a look of sympathetic concern on your face.
<i>I think so.</i>	Nod with a slightly pained expression and speak in a weak tone.
- Divide the class into Groups A and B. Model each line of the conversation again using facial expressions and body language. Group A repeats the first line of the conversation, Group B repeats line two, and so on. Encourage students to copy your facial expressions and body language. Groups then change roles and repeat the conversation again.



- Groups A and B say alternate lines of the conversation. Groups then change roles and say the conversation again. Prompt when necessary.

Talk About the Picture

- Attach Wall Chart 11 to the board, or open a Student Book to page 23. Students then open their Student Books to page 23. Read the following "story" while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*).

This is a **school gym**. *Ouch!* A **ball hit Joe!** **Ivy** asks *Are you okay?* Look! **This mouse is jumping rope.** **Jan was jumping rope.** She's *tired.* **Bob is jumping on the trampoline.** These children are *angry*, because they want to *jump*, too. Outside the **window**, I see **trees** and **snow**.
- Ask the following questions while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**).

How many girls?
How many boys?
Can you find **Joe** on any other pages? (Joe is on pages 4 and 23.)
(ball) Is it a book?
(mouse) Is it a cat? How many **mice**?
(tree) What's this?

Practice the Conversation

A. Listen and repeat.

Play the recording (first version of the conversation). Students listen and repeat, pointing to each speaker in the conversation box.

Joe: *Ouch!*

Ivy: *Are you okay?*

Joe: *I think so.*

B. Listen and find the speakers.

Play the recording (second version of the conversation). Students find and point to the speakers in the large scene. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

C. Role-play the conversation with a partner.

Students choose a partner and role-play the conversation. They then change roles and role-play the conversation again.

D. Review. Listen and repeat.

Volunteers try to read or guess the worms' conversation. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each speech bubble.

A: *Sorry!*

B: *That's okay.*

OPTION: Students role-play the conversation.

Find Digger's Bone

Students find Digger's bone hidden in the large scene.

Answer Key: Digger's bone is one of the legs of the trampoline.

Games and Activities

- 1. Back to Back.** Divide the class into pairs. Students sit with their backs to their partners and role-play the conversation without looking at each other. Partners then change roles and repeat the activity. Once pairs have practiced both roles two to three times, say *Ouch!* and elicit the rest of the conversation from the class.
- 2. Hold the Ouch! Spot.** Divide the class into Groups A and B. Each student in Group A says *Ouch!* while holding a part of his/her body as if in pain. No two students in the group can hold the same part of their body. All students in Group B ask *Are you okay?* in unison. Each student in Group A takes turns replying *I think so.* Groups then change roles and repeat the activity.

- 3. Combine the Conversations.** Combine the Units 4 and 6 conversations on the board in the following way:

A: *Ouch!*

B: *Are you okay?*

A: *I think so.*

B: *Here you are.*

A: *Thanks.*

B: *You're welcome.*

Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Bring two volunteers to the front of the classroom to role-play the conversation, as if one of the students has cut his/her finger and the other student is giving him/her an adhesive strip. Then divide the class into pairs and have pairs role-play the conversation in the same way. Students in each pair then change roles and role-play the conversation again.

Finish the Lesson

- 1. Toss the Ball.** (See Game 5, page 140.) Play the game using the target conversation.
- 2. Explain and assign Workbook page 23.** (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 154.)

Word Time

Language Focus: Feelings (*happy, sad, cold, hot, hungry, thirsty*)

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities):
CD/cassette and player; Wall Chart 12; Unit 6 Word Time Picture Cards,
1 card per student (see Picture and Word Card Book page 23)

For general information on Word Time,
see pages 10–11.

Warm-Up and Review

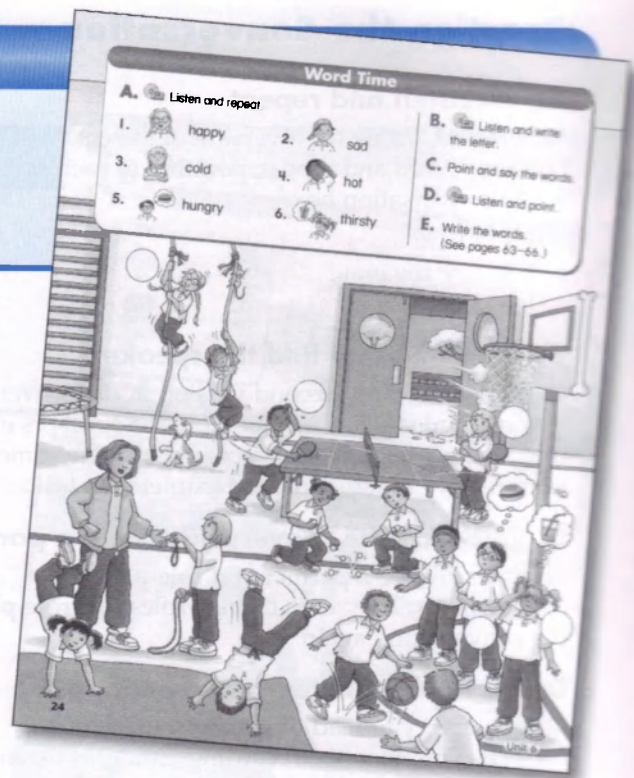
1. **Conversation Review: Ouch!** Students open their Student Books to page 23 and look at the large scene and conversation callouts. Elicit the conversation. Pretend to hurt your foot and say *Ouch!* Elicit *Are you okay?* Reply *I think so.* Bring volunteers to the front of the classroom to role-play the conversation.
2. Check Workbook page 23. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 154.)

Introduce the Words

1. Smile broadly, and say *happy*. Students repeat, smiling broadly. Use appropriate body language (see below) to introduce the remaining target vocabulary.
sad: Pretend to cry and wipe tears from your eyes.
cold: Wrap your arms around your body and shiver.
hot: Fan yourself with your hands and pretend to wipe sweat from your forehead.
hungry: Rub your stomach.
thirsty: Stick out your tongue a little and pat your throat.
2. Hold up the Unit 6 Word Time Picture Cards in random order. Students name them and pantomime the feelings.

Talk About the Picture

1. Students open their Student Books to page 24. They look at the large scene and name anything they can.
 2. Attach Wall Chart 12 to the board, or open a Student Book to page 24. Read the following "story" while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*).
- Look at **Annie** and **Ted**! They're *climbing the ropes*. **Annie** is *happy*, but **Ted** is *sad*. **Digger** is *looking at Annie*. **This girl** is *cold*. **Brrr!** **This boy** is *hot*. **Whew!** **Mike** is *hungry*, and **Kim** is *thirsty*. Kim wants to *drink* some juice.



3. Ask the following questions while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*).
- How many dogs?
How many boys are on the **mat**?
(**Kim**) Is she *thirsty*? Can you find Kim on any other pages? (Kim is on pages 4 and 23.)
(**Annie**) What's her first name? Is she *sad*?
(**Ted**) What's his first name? Is he *sad*?
(**boy playing ping-pong**) Is he *cold*?
(**girl playing ping-pong**) Is she *cold*?

Practice the Words

A. Listen and repeat.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each picture in the vocabulary box.

- | | |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 1. <i>happy</i> | 2. <i>sad</i> |
| 3. <i>cold</i> | 4. <i>hot</i> |
| 5. <i>hungry</i> | 6. <i>thirsty</i> |

2. Say the words in random order. Students point to the pictures in the vocabulary box.

B. Listen and write the letter.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and write the letters they hear in the white circle for each vocabulary item. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

- | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| a. <i>hot, hot</i> | b. <i>thirsty, thirsty</i> |
| c. <i>hungry, hungry</i> | d. <i>happy, happy</i> |
| e. <i>sad, sad</i> | f. <i>cold, cold</i> |

2. Check answers by writing the letters *a–f* on the board then having volunteers come to the board and attach the corresponding picture card next to each letter. Point to each picture card and have students name it.

C. Point and say the words.

Students point to and name each of the target vocabulary items in the large scene.

D. Listen and point.

Play the recording. Students listen to the sound effects and words. For the vocabulary, they point to the characters depicting those feelings; for the conversations, they point to the speakers. (References are shown in parentheses.) Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

I'm hungry.

I'm cold.

I'm happy.

I'm sad.

Phew! I'm hot.

I'm thirsty.

Now listen and point to the speakers.

A: *Here you are.* (teacher and student on basketball court)

B: *Thanks.*

A: *You're welcome.*

A: *How many balls?* (boy and girl picking up Ping-Pong balls on court)

B: *1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10. Ten balls.*

E. Write the words. (See pages 63–66.)

Students turn to page 63 (*My Picture Dictionary*), find the picture of each target vocabulary item, and write the word next to it.

Find Digger's Bone

Students find Digger's bone hidden in the large scene.

Answer Key: The side of the basketball backboard is in the shape of Digger's bone.

OPTION: Students find Digger's bone as above, then draw, color, and cut out a dog bone. They tape their dog bones to a pencil and stand two feet back from a wastebasket. Students take turns saying how they feel using *I'm (happy)*, then trying to toss their dog bones into the wastebasket. Students who get their bones into the wastebasket win a point.

Extra Vocabulary. Students turn to page 23. Introduce the extra vocabulary items *angry*, *tired*, *proud*. Students identify these feelings in the large scene.

Games and Activities

1. **Around the World.** (See Game 8, page 140.) Play the game using Unit 6 Word Time Picture Cards.
2. **Name the Card and Pantomime.** Divide the class into Groups A and B. Show Group A the *happy* picture card. Students in Group A name the card in unison. Students in Group B then pantomime *happy*. Show Group B a different card and have Group A pantomime. Continue until each group has both named and pantomimed all of the Unit 6 Word Time Picture Cards.
3. **Pantomime the Feeling.** Give each student a Unit 6 Word Time Picture Card. A volunteer pantomimes the feeling on his/her card. Another volunteer names that student and the feeling. For example: *Meg, happy*. If the volunteer is correct, another volunteer takes a turn. If the volunteer is not correct, he/she tries again. Volunteers take turns pantomiming the feeling on their cards until each student has taken a turn.

LARGE CLASSES: Divide the class into groups of six to seven students, and have each group do the activity as above.
4. **Option: Personalize the Picture.** Students look through old magazines or newspapers and cut out all the pictures they find of people expressing the target feelings. Students then glue all their pictures on a large sheet of paper and label each picture with the corresponding adjective. They then show their collages to the class, pointing to each picture naming each feeling. Hang the collages on the walls for future reference.
5. **Option: Project.** Students make a calendar and, each day for a week, record their feelings on the calendar.

Finish the Lesson

1. **Feelings Chant.** Attach the Unit 6 Word Time Picture Cards to the board for reference. Create a feelings chant in the following way (* = clap hands):

*I'm cold * **
*I'm cold * **
*cold **
*cold **
*cold * **

Model the chant and have students repeat. Chant with students, pointing to cards on the board to indicate the next feeling to be chanted.
2. Explain and assign Workbook page 24. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 154.)

Practice Time

Language Focus: Yes/No questions with adjectives [(Are you (happy)? Yes, I am. / No, I'm not. I'm (sad).]

Function: Asking about and expressing feelings

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities): CD/cassette and player; Unit 6 Word Time Picture Cards, 1 card per student; Unit 6 Word Time Word Cards, 1 set per 4–5 students; Unit 6 Grammar Cards, 1 set per 4–5 students (see Picture and Word Card Book pages 23, 24, and 57)

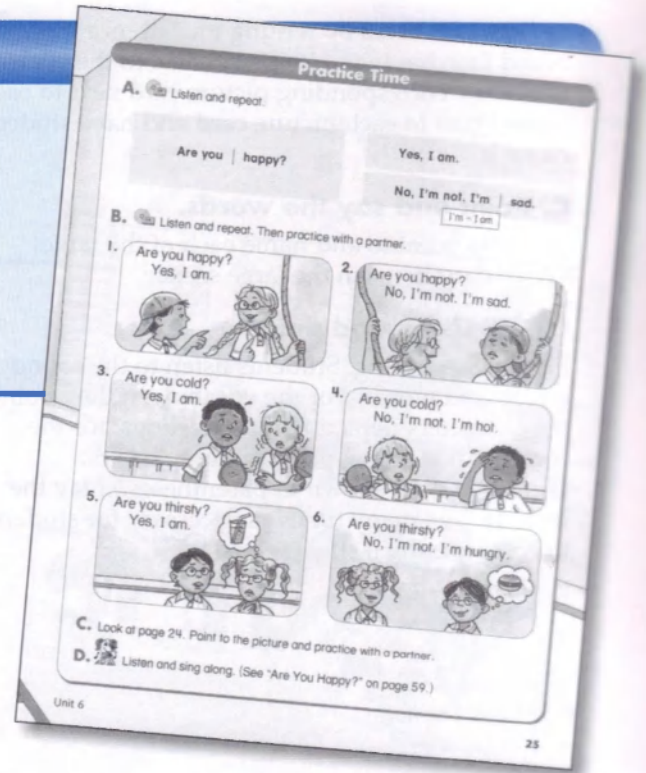
For general information on Practice Time, see pages 12–13.

Warm-Up and Review

- Vocabulary Review: Pantomime the Feelings.** Pantomime each of the Unit 6 Word Time feelings and have students name them. Then have six to seven volunteers take turns pantomiming a feeling and eliciting its name.
- Check Workbook page 24. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 154.)

Introduce the Patterns

- Are you (hot)? Yes, I am.** Write a big ? on the board. Bring a volunteer to the front of the classroom and have him/her pantomime *hot*. Look at the volunteer with a quizzical expression on your face, point to the ?, shrug your shoulders, and ask *Are you hot?*, pointing to and looking at the volunteer while saying *you*. Seated students repeat. Write *Are you hot?* on the board. Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Ask the volunteer the question again and elicit a positive response, such as *Yes* or a nod of his/her head. Say *Yes, I am*, while nodding your head. The volunteer repeats. Write *Yes, I am* on the board to the right of *Are you hot?* Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Then have all students pantomime *hot*. Ask three to four seated students one by one *Are you hot?* Elicit *Yes, I am*. Do the same with *happy, sad, cold, hungry, and thirsty*.
- Are you (hot)? No, I'm not. I'm (cold).** Bring a different volunteer to the front of the classroom and have him/her pantomime *cold*. Look at the volunteer with a quizzical expression on your face, point to the ?, shrug your shoulders, and ask *Are you hot?*, pointing to and looking at the volunteer while saying *you*. Seated students repeat. Ask the volunteer the question again and elicit a negative response, such as *No* or a shake of his/her head. Say *No, I'm not. I'm cold* while shaking your head. The volunteer repeats. Write *No, I'm not. I'm cold* on the board to the right of *Are you hot?* Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Then have all students pantomime *cold*. Ask three or four seated students one by one *Are you hot?* Elicit *No,*



I'm not. I'm cold. Do the same with *happy, sad, hot, hungry, and thirsty*.

- Practice for Fluency.** Pantomime *hungry*. Elicit the target question and respond accordingly. The student who asked the question then pantomimes a feeling and another student asks him/her *Are you (sad)?* Continue in the same way with different students asking and answering the target question until most students have had a turn. Make sure students are eliciting both positive and negative answers.

Practice the Patterns

Students open their Student Books to page 25.

A. Listen and repeat.

1. Write the text from the pattern boxes on the board. Play the recording, pointing to each word. Students listen.

A: *Are you happy?*

A: *Are you happy?*

B: *Yes, I am.*

B: *No, I'm not. I'm sad.*

2. Play the recording again. Students listen, look at the pattern boxes in their books, and repeat, pointing to each word.

3. Students try to say the patterns on their own while looking at the pattern boxes in their books.

4. Write the explanation of the contraction on the board:

I'm - I am

Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Then say each pattern with the full form of the contraction. Students repeat. Students practice each pattern in the pattern box, using both the contraction and the full form of the contraction.

B.  Listen and repeat. Then practice with a partner.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each picture in their books.


- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>Are you happy?</i>
<i>Yes, I am.</i> | 2. <i>Are you happy?</i>
<i>No, I'm not. I'm sad.</i> |
| 3. <i>Are you cold?</i>
<i>Yes, I am.</i> | 4. <i>Are you cold?</i>
<i>No, I'm not. I'm hot.</i> |
| 5. <i>Are you thirsty?</i>
<i>Yes, I am.</i> | 6. <i>Are you thirsty?</i>
<i>No, I'm not. I'm hungry.</i> |

2. Play the recording again. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each word in their books.

3. Students practice numbers 1–6 in pairs. (S1 in each pair asks the questions, and S2 answers.) They then change roles and repeat the activity.

C. Look at page 24. Point to the picture and practice with a partner.

Students remain in pairs and look at page 24. They then take turns asking and answering questions using the new patterns and vocabulary items while pretending to be the characters in the large scene. For example: S1 (pointing to the thirsty girl): *Are you thirsty?* S2 (pretending to be the girl): *Yes, I am.*

D.  Listen and sing along.

1. Students turn to the Unit 6 song *Are You Happy?* page 59. Focus their attention on the pictures. Students try to guess some of the lyrics using the pictures as cues. Read the lyrics line by line. Students repeat each line. Play the recording. Students listen and follow along in their books.

Are You Happy?

(Melody: *Clementine*)

- | | |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>Are you happy?</i> | <i>Are you hungry?</i> |
| <i>Are you happy?</i> | <i>Are you hungry?</i> |
| <i>Are you happy?</i> | <i>Are you hungry?</i> |
| <i>No, I'm not. I'm sad.</i> | <i>No, I'm not. I'm thirsty.</i> |
| <i>Are you cold?</i> | <i>Are you sad?</i> |
| <i>Are you cold?</i> | <i>Are you sad?</i> |
| <i>Are you cold?</i> | <i>Are you sad?</i> |
| <i>No, I'm not. I'm hot.</i> | <i>No, I'm not. I'm happy.</i> |

2. Play the recording again. Students listen and sing along, using their books for reference. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to become familiar with the song.

3. Divide the class into Groups A and B. Play the karaoke version. Group A sings the questions, and Group B the answers. Students use facial expressions and gestures to express the feelings they sing. Groups then change roles and sing the song again.

Games and Activities

1. **Question and Answer.** Bring six volunteers to the front of the classroom. Give each volunteer a different Unit 6 Word Time Picture Card. The volunteers then turn to face the board. A seated student asks (*Joni*), *are you (thirsty)?* (*Joni*) turns around, shows his/her card, and replies either *Yes, I am* and remains facing the class, or *No, I'm not. I'm (cold)* and turns to face the board again. Seated students take turns asking the volunteers target questions until all six volunteers are facing the class. Another six volunteers then come to the front of the classroom and do the activity again.

VERY SMALL CLASSES: Give each student a Unit 6 Word Time Picture Card. Students look at their cards, then turn them facedown. One student begins by asking any other student (*Joni*), *are you (thirsty)?* (*Joni*) shows the class (her) picture card and replies either *Yes, I am* and keeps (her) card faceup, or *No, I'm not. I'm (cold)*, and turns (her) card back over. Continue as above until all cards are turned faceup.

2. **Find Your Partner: Words.** (See Game 19, page 142.) Play the game using Unit 6 Word Time Picture Cards and the target patterns. In order to find a partner, students must ask *Are you (hot)?* When they find a student who answers *Yes, I am*, they are partners.

3. **Make the Sentences.** (See Game 43, page 145.) Do the activity using Unit 6 Word Time Word Cards and Grammar Cards.

Extra Practice

Explain and assign Worksheet 11, *Feelings*, page 184. (For instructions and answer key, see page 170.)



Finish the Lesson

1. **Guess the Feeling.** A volunteer goes behind a door so that only a small portion of his/her body is visible to the class. He/She then pantomimes one of the target feelings, and seated students try to guess the feeling, asking *Are you (hot)?* If the guess is correct, the volunteer steps from behind the door, still pantomiming the feeling, and says *Yes, I am*. If the guess is not correct, the volunteer steps from behind the door, continues pantomiming, and says *No, I'm not. I'm (happy)*. Do the same with different volunteers pantomiming different feelings until most students have had a turn pantomiming.

2. Explain and assign Workbook page 25. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 154.)

Phonics Time

Sound Focus: *f, v* (*feet, fish, fork, van, vase, violin*)

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities):

CD/cassette and player; 4 × 4 Bingo grids, 1 per student; Units 1–5 Phonics Time Picture Cards, 16 cards per student; Unit 6 Phonics Time Picture Cards, 1 set; *b, d, f, g, h, k, m, n, p, t, v, w* alphabet cards, 1 set per student (see Picture and Word Card Book pages 3, 7, 11, 15, 21, 25, and 51–54)

For general information on Phonics Time, see pages 14–15.

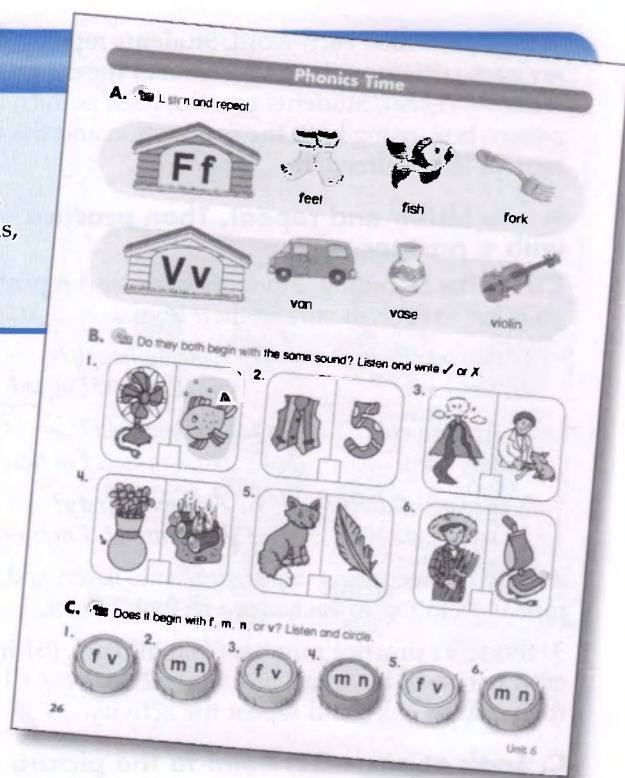
Warm-Up and Review

- Pattern Review: Sing Along.** Play the Unit 6 song *Are You Happy?* Students listen. Play the recording again, and have students sing along.
- Check Workbook page 25. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 154.)
- Phonics Review: What's the initial sound?** Write *h* and *w* on the board. Point to each letter and elicit its sound. Say a word that begins with either *h* or *w* (see Suggested Words below). Students repeat the word and say its initial sound. Write the word on the board below its initial letter. Do the same with six to eight different words. When all the words are written on the board, point to each one and elicit its initial sound.
Suggested Words: *hand, wash, horse, happy, wet, hungry, wig, how, woman, hat*

Introduce the Sounds

- Hold up the *fish* picture card and say /f/-/ff/, *fish*, stressing the initial sound. Students repeat. Attach the card to the board. Do the same with *feet* and *fork*. Repeat the activity for the three /v/ words *vase, van, violin*.
- Write *f* on the board. Say /f/ while pointing to the letter. Add *ish* to the right of *f* and say /f/-*ish*, *fish* pointing to the two parts of the word and then the whole word. Do the same with *feet* and *fork*. Repeat the entire procedure for the /v/ words.

Pronunciation Note: When students say /f/ and /v/, they place their upper teeth on their lower lips as if "biting" their lower lips. Then have them hold their hands in front of their mouths. They should feel a little breath on their hands for /v/, and a lot of breath for /f/. Alternatively, students hold a piece of paper in front of their mouths and say /f/ and /v/. The paper should bend more for /f/ than for /v/.



Practice the Sounds

Students open their Student Books to page 26.

Students are expected to know the meaning of only the six words at the top of the page. The remaining words they hear in the lesson are for the purpose of sound recognition only. It is not necessary to teach these words as vocabulary.

A. Listen and repeat.

Focus students' attention on the *f* and *v* words at the top of the page. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to the pictures and words in their books.

f /f/
feet
fish
fork

v /v/
van
vase
violin


B. Do they both begin with the same sound? Listen and write ✓ or X.

1. Play the recording. For each number, students listen to the words illustrated in each box. If both words begin with the same sound, students write ✓. If the two words begin with different sounds, students write X. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>fan, fish</i>
<i>fan, fish</i> | 2. <i>vest, five</i>
<i>vest, five</i> |
| 3. <i>volcano, vet</i>
<i>volcano, vet</i> | 4. <i>vase, fire</i>
<i>vase, fire</i> |
| 5. <i>fox, feather</i>
<i>fox, feather</i> | 6. <i>farmer, vacuum</i>
<i>farmer, vacuum</i> |

2. Check answers by saying *Number 1. fan fish*, and having volunteers say the initial sound of each word, then make an **X** with their arms if they wrote **X**, and write a **✓** in the air if they wrote **✓**. Do the same for numbers 2–6.

Answer Key: 1. ✓ 2. X 3. ✓ 4. X 5. ✓ 6. X

C.  Does it begin with f, m, n, or v? Listen and circle.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and circle the initial letter of each word they hear. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

- fat, fat*
- mouse, mouse*
- father, father*
- number, number*
- vegetable, vegetable*
- nose, nose*

2. Check answers by writing the numbers 1–6 on the board and having volunteers come to the board and write the letter they wrote next to each number.

Answer Key: 1. f 2. m 3. f 4. n 5. v 6. n

Games and Activities

- Match and Name.** Stand the Unit 6 Phonics Time Picture Cards on the chalktray facing the board. Write a number from 1–6 above each card, using a different number for each card. Give each student either an *f* or *v* alphabet card. A volunteer calls out a number and the sound of his/her letter. Turn over and name the card of the number called. The student says its initial sound. If the item on the card begins with the student's letter, give him/her a point and turn the picture card to face the board again. If his/her letter does not match the picture card, turn the picture card to face the board again. Continue the activity in the same way for five to seven minutes. The student with the most points at the end wins.

LARGE CLASSES: Divide the class into groups of seven to eight students, and have each group play as above.

- Bingo: Initial Letter.** (See Game 48, page 146.) Play the game using 4 × 4 grids, *b, d, f, g, h, k, m, n, p, t, v, w* alphabet cards, and Units 1–6 Phonics Time Picture Cards.

- Chant.** Write the numbers 1–12 in a horizontal row on the board. Attach the *boy, pig, kite, girl, mop, net, dog, tiger, window, hands, fish*, and *van* picture cards to the board in the above order, one card below each number, with the *boy* card underneath number 1. Point to the picture cards and numbers and chant the following:

*one boy, one boy /b/-/b/-/b/
two pigs, two pigs /p/-/p/-/p/
three kites, three kites /k/-/k/-/k/
four girls, four girls /g/-/g/-/g/
five mops, five mops /m/-/m/-/m/
six nets, six nets /n/-/n/-/n/
seven dogs, seven dogs /d/-/d/-/d/
eight tigers, eight tigers /t/-/t/-/t/
nine windows, nine windows /w/-/w/-/w/
ten hands, ten hands /h/-/h/-/h/
eleven fish, eleven fish /f/-/f/-/f/
twelve vans, twelve vans /v/-/v/-/v/*

Chant again and have students repeat after every three lines. Then point to each picture and have students chant on their own. Students clap each time they say a number and a sound. When students are comfortable chanting, challenge them to chant and clap faster.

Extra Practice

Explain and assign Worksheet 12, Phonics Fun *f* and *v*, page 185. (For instructions and answer key, see page 170.)

Finish the Lesson

- Write With Your Body.** (See Game 62, page 147.) Students make the letters *f* and *v* with their bodies in the following way:
f: Hold one arm straight up, bending the wrist and hand to form the top curve of the *f*. Hold the other hand perpendicular to the straight part of the arm to make the cross line.
v: Hold both lower arms straight up with elbows touching.
- Explain and assign Workbook page 26. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book pages 154–155.)

Assessment

Explain and assign the Unit 6 Test, page 217. (For instructions and answer key, see page 204.)



Review 2

Story Time

Review Focus: Units 4–6 conversations, vocabulary, and patterns

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities):
CD/cassette and player; cards with a specified number of Unit 4 school supplies written on each, 1 card per student

For general information on Story Time, see page 16.

Warm-Up

1. Review Units 4–6 Conversations, Vocabulary, and Patterns. Students turn to each Conversation Time page (pages 15, 19, and 23), Word Time page (pages 16, 20, and 24), and Practice Time page (pages 17, 21, and 25). Elicit each conversation and pattern.
2. Check Workbook page 26. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book pages 154–155.)

Work with the Pictures

Students open their Student Books to page 27.

1. Divide the class into groups of three. Groups find and name any items or characters they recognize in the six scenes.
2. Ask each group how many items they found. Encourage groups to name as many items or characters as they can.
3. When groups have finished, have each group name one item, and write these items on the board. Once all the items have been listed, point to and say each word. Students repeat, pointing to those items in their books.
4. Ask the following questions while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*).

Scene 1: Is Max *hungry*?
How many dogs?

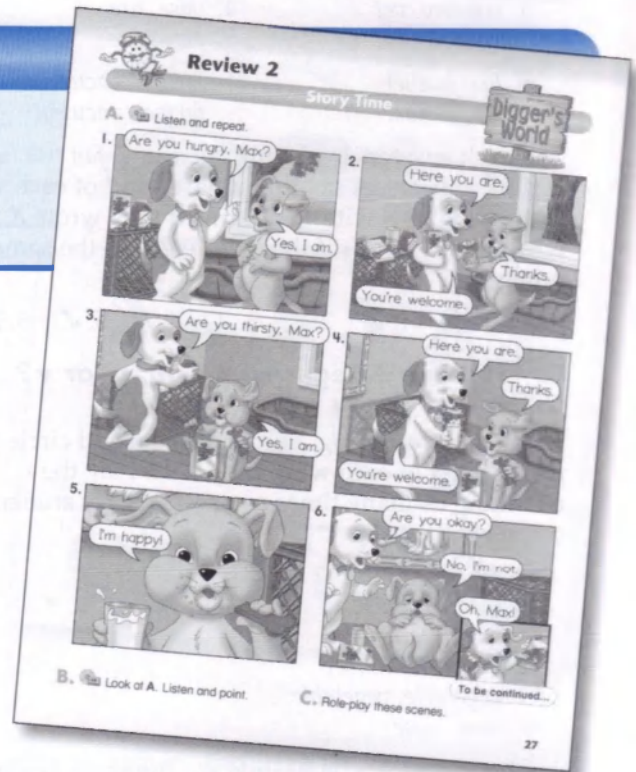
Scene 2: Is **Digger** *giving* Max a pen?
Is Max **sad**?

Scene 3: (**cookie**) Is it a book? Is Max *thirsty*?

Scene 4: Is Max *happy*?

Scene 5: Is Max *hungry*?

Scene 6: Is Max okay?
Is **Digger** *happy*?



Work with the Text

1. Point to Max's speech bubble in Scene 1. A volunteer guesses what Max is saying. If he/she guesses correctly, do the same with Digger's speech bubble. If he/she does not guess correctly, ask another student.
2. Do the same with all the scenes on this page. Encourage students to look back at the Units 4–6 Conversation Time, Word Time, and Practice Time pages for support if needed.

Note: It is not necessary for students to guess the exact words of the characters. Accept their guesses as long as they convey the gist of what the character is saying.

Practice the Story

A. Listen and repeat.

1. Play the recording (first version of the story). Students listen and follow along in their books.

1. Digger: *Are you hungry, Max?*

Max: *Yes, I am.*

2. Digger: *Here you are.*

Max: *Thanks.*

Digger: *You're welcome.*

3. Digger: *Are you thirsty, Max?*

Max: *Yes, I am.*

4. Digger: *Here you are.*

Max: *Thanks.*

Digger: *You're welcome.*

5. Max: *I'm happy!*

6. Digger: *Are you okay?*

Max: *No, I'm not.*

Digger: *Oh, Max!*

2. Play the recording again. Pause after each line and have students repeat. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to become familiar with the story.

B. Look at A. Listen and point.

1. Play the recording (second version of the story). Students listen and follow along in their books.

2. Divide the class into pairs. Students in each pair take on the role of one of the characters (Digger or Max). Play the recording again, pausing after each line. Students repeat their character's lines. Students in each pair then change roles and do the activity again. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

C. Role-play these scenes.

1. Ask students which roles are needed to role-play the scenes. List the roles on the board (*Digger, Max*).

2. Divide the class into Groups A and B. Group A role-plays Digger's lines, and Group B role-plays Max's lines. Groups then change roles and role-play the scenes again.

3. Bring a volunteer from each group to the front of the classroom. Play the recording and have these volunteers act out the story along with the recording. They then role-play the story on their own, without the recording.

4. Students choose a partner and role-play the story. They then change roles and role-play the story again.

When students have collected the items, they go to the teacher, report the number and the items. The first student to collect the required number of items wins a point. When most of the students have collected their assigned number of items, have them change cards and do the activity again.

2. **Puppets.** Each student performs the entire story for the class using the Max and Digger puppets they made in Review 1 (see page 53).

3. **Make a New Story.** Students divide a piece of paper into six equal parts and come up with their own version of the story by drawing original scenes and characters. If this is too challenging, students copy the pictures and speech bubbles from page 27. Students can also do this activity in pairs.

Finish the Lesson

1. **Listen and Pantomime.** Divide the class into groups of three, and have students in each group take on the role of one of the characters in the story. Play the recording. Students listen and pantomime their role. Repeat the procedure until each student has pantomimed each role.

2. Explain and assign Workbook page 27. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 155.)

Games and Activities

1. **Get the Items.** Prepare small cards with a variety of names and different numbers of items students usually bring to class, with an item and its number on each card. For example: *5 pens* or *4 books*. Give each student one of the cards. Each student goes around the classroom trying to be the first to collect the number of items on his/her card using the following dialogue:

S1: (*Five pens*), please.

S2 (handing over the items): *Here you are.*

S1: *Thanks.*

S2: *You're welcome.*

Activity Time

Review Focus: Units 4–6 conversations, vocabulary, patterns, and sounds

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities):
CD/cassette and player

For general information on Activity Time, see page 17.

Warm-Up

1. **Review Units 4–6 Conversations, Vocabulary, Patterns, and Sounds.** Students turn to each Conversation Time page (pages 15, 19, and 23), Word Time page (pages 16, 20, and 24), Practice Time page (pages 17, 21, and 25), and Phonics Time page (pages 18, 22, and 26). Elicit the conversations, vocabulary items, patterns, and sounds.
2. Check Workbook page 27. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 155.)

Review

Students open their Student Books to page 28.

A. Count the items. Write the number in each box. Then listen and check.

1. Students count the number of each item and write the number in the white square beside the item. When students are finished, play the recording. Students listen and check their answers, correcting them if necessary. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

A: *How many pencil cases?*

B: *Five pencil cases. Five pencil cases.*

A: *How many pencils?*

B: *Twelve pencils. Twelve pencils.*

A: *How many rulers?*

B: *Nine rulers. Nine rulers.*

A: *How many pens?*

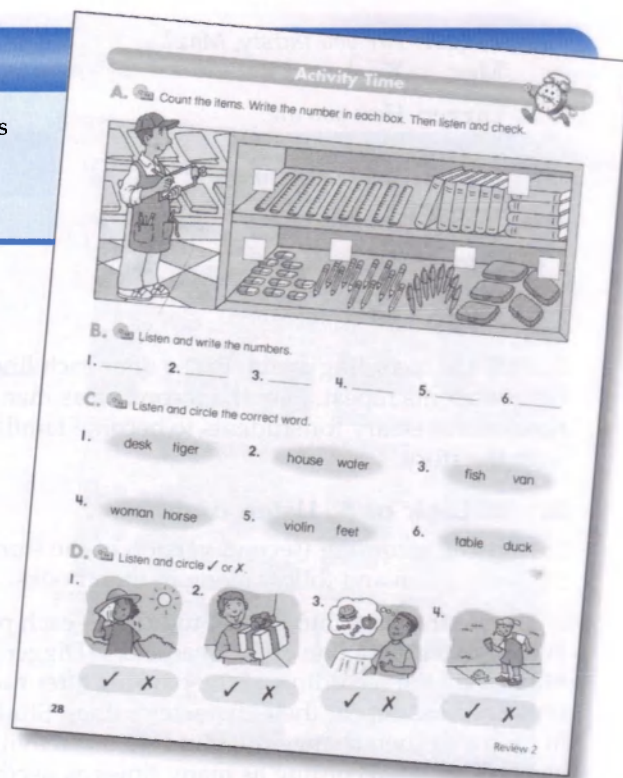
B: *Eight pens. Eight pens.*

A: *How many books?*

B: *Ten books. Ten books.*

A: *How many erasers?*

B: *Eleven erasers. Eleven erasers.*



2. Check answers by attaching the picture cards of those six items to the board, then having volunteers come to the board and write the number of each item next to the corresponding picture card.

Answer Key

pencil cases:	5
pencils:	12
rulers:	9
pens:	8
books:	10
erasers:	11

B. Listen and write the numbers.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and write the number they hear. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

1. *six, six*
2. *three, three*
3. *four, four*
4. *two, two*
5. *one, one*
6. *seven, seven*

2. Check answers by writing the numbers 1–6 on the board, then having volunteers come to the board and write their answers next to each number.

Answer Key

- 6
- 3
- 4
- 2
- 1
- 7

C. Listen and circle the correct word.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and circle each word they hear. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

- tiger, tiger
- house, house
- fish, fish
- woman, woman
- violin, violin
- duck, duck

2. Check answers by saying *Number 1* and having a volunteer say the word he/she circled. Do the same for numbers 2–6.

D. Listen and circle ✓ or X.

1. Divide the class into pairs, and have pairs work together trying to determine what the speaker(s) in each picture are saying.

2. Play the recording. Students listen and write ✓ if the sentences they hear correspond to that picture, and X if they do not. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

- I'm hot. I'm hot.*
- I'm sad. I'm sad.*
- Are you hungry? Are you hungry?*
Yes, I am. [twice]
- Are you happy? Are you happy?*
No, I'm not. I'm sad. [twice]

3. Check answers by saying *Number 1. I'm hot*, then having volunteers stand up if they wrote ✓, and stay seated if they wrote X. Do the same for numbers 2–4.

Answer Key

- ✓
- X
- ✓
- ✓

Games and Activities

- How Many Do You Have?** Divide the class into groups of three to four. Students place all the rulers, books, erasers, pencils, pens, and pencil cases they have in the middle of the group, then count those items. Draw a chart with group names and the different items on the board. Groups take turns reporting the numbers of each item their group has. Record the numbers in the chart. Point to Group A's column on the board, and ask them *How many pencils?* Elicit (*Four*) pencils. Continue in the same way with different groups and items.
- What Other Words Have These Sounds?** Students find the 12 words in Activity C. (**Listen and circle the correct word**) in the Units 4–6 Phonics Time pages (pages 18, 22, and 26). While books are open to these pages, elicit other words with the same initial sounds. For example: Say *What other /t/ words can you see?*
- What's in the Air?** (See Game 61, page 147.) Play the game using *d, f, h, t, v, and w*.

Finish the Lesson

- Explain and assign Checklist 2 (see Student Book page 68) for students to do at home or in class.
- Explain and assign Workbook page 28. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 155.)
- Do Chapter 2 of Storybook 1, *Annie and the Map*. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 166.)

Assessment

Explain and assign the Midterm Test, pages 218–221. (For instructions and answer key, see pages 205–206.)





At the Food Court

Conversation Time

Language Focus: *Are you finished?/No, not yet./Please hurry!*

Function: Giving polite commands

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities):

CD/cassette and player; Wall Chart 13; tangled string; 1 piece of paper; A–Z alphabet cards, 1 set per 4–6 students (see Picture and Word Card Book pages 52 and 53)

For general information on Conversation Time, see pages 8–9.

Warm-Up and Review

- Phonics Review: *f* and *v*.** Write *f* and *v* on the board. Point to each letter and elicit its sound. Then say three words, two with the same initial sound, and one with a different initial sound (see Suggested Words below). For example: *fit*, *fin*, *vase*. Students name the word with the different initial sound, *vase*. Do this with five to six different groups of words.

Suggested Words: *fit*, *vet*, *van*; *vase*, *flower*, *fork*; *vat*, *fat*, *vest*; *fun*, *fig*, *visa*; *flag*, *fur*, *vine*; *vet*, *fox*, *velvet*; *violin*, *fan*, *four*

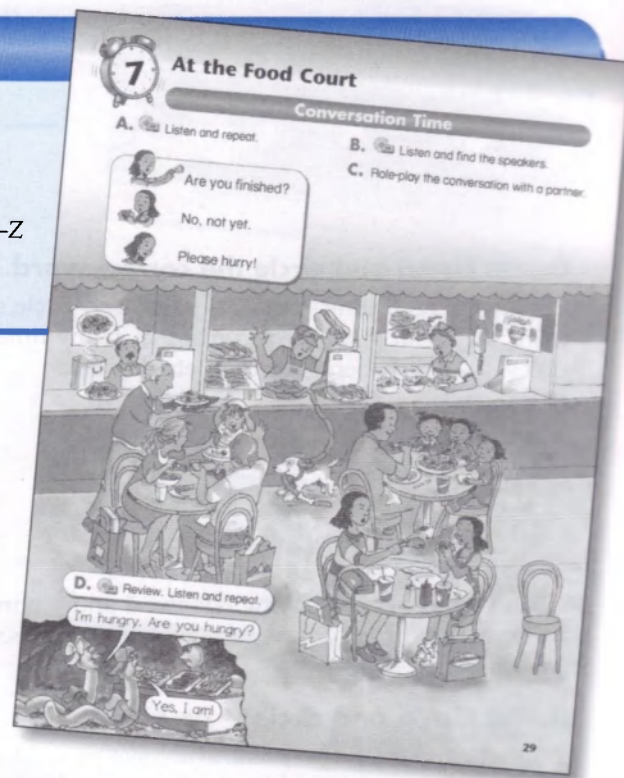
- Check Workbook page 28. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 155.)

Introduce the Conversation

- Bring two students to the front of the classroom. Give one of them a tangled piece of string and ask him/her to try to untangle it while the conversation is in progress. Stand behind each student and model his/her line(s) of the conversation with the following actions:

Are you finished? Point to the string with a quizzical expression.
No, not yet. Shake your head.
Please hurry! Tap your watch to impatiently.

- Clarify word meaning.
finished: Bring a volunteer to the front of the classroom. Have the volunteer write his/her full name on the board, and as soon as he/she has finished writing, say *finished*. Students repeat. Then ask a student to do three jumping jacks. As soon as he/she has done so, say *finished*. Students repeat.
- Model the conversation again, as in Step 1.
- Divide the class into Groups A and B. Model each line of the conversation again using facial expressions and body language. Group A repeats the first line of the conversation, Group B repeats line two, and so on.



Encourage students to copy your facial expressions and body language. Groups then change roles and repeat the conversation again.

- Groups A and B say alternate lines of the conversation. Groups then change roles and say the conversation again. Prompt when necessary.

Talk About the Picture

- Attach Wall Chart 13 to the board, or open a Student Book to page 29. Students then open their Student Books to page 29. Read the following "story" while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*).

Many people are *eating* lunch here. They are all *hungry* and *thirsty*. **These girls** are *eating spaghetti*. Yum! Look at **Digger** *running* with the **hot dogs**! Digger is *hungry*, too. Uh-oh, **Jan's mother** is *angry*. She's asking **Jan** *Are you finished?* **Jan** is saying *No, not yet*. **Her mother** wants her to *hurry*.

- Ask the following questions while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*).

How many **boys**?
How many **girls**?
Is the **baby** *happy*?

Jan's *eating a hot dog*. Is she *hungry*? Can you see **Jan** on any other pages? (Jan is on pages 10, 19, and 23.)

(triplets) How many girls?
Can you *point* to Digger?

Practice the Conversation

A. Listen and repeat.

Play the recording (first version of the conversation). Students listen and repeat, pointing to each speaker in the conversation box.

Jan's mom: *Are you finished?*

Jan: *No, not yet.*

Jan's mom: *Please hurry!*

B. Listen and find the speakers.

Play the recording (second version of the conversation). Students find and point to the speakers in the large scene. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

C. Role-play the conversation with a partner.

Students choose a partner and role-play the conversation. They then change roles and role-play the conversation again.

D. Review. Listen and repeat.

Volunteers try to read or guess the worms' conversation. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each speech bubble.

A: *I'm hungry. Are you hungry?*

B: *Yes, I am!*

OPTION: Students role-play the conversation.

Find Digger's Bone

Students find Digger's bone hidden in the large scene.

Answer Key: One of the frankfurters in the chain is in the shape of a bone.

OPTION: Students find Digger's bone as above, then draw a picture of their favorite food (that they can name in English), and hide a dog bone in it. They then tell a partner the name of their favorite food, and have their partner find the bone in the picture.

Games and Activities

1. **Draw Quickly.** A volunteer comes to the board and draws a picture of an item students can name in English. While he/she is drawing, the rest of the class asks *Are you finished?* The volunteer responds *No, not yet*, and the rest of the class says *Please hurry!* When

the drawing is finished, the volunteer points to it and asks *What's this?* Seated students try to identify the drawing, saying *It's a (tree)*. The first student to correctly identify the drawing is next to come to the board to draw. Continue in the same way until four or five students have taken a turn drawing.

LARGE CLASSES: Divide the class into groups of five to six students. Each group does the activity as above, but draws on a piece of paper rather than on the board.

2. **Order the Alphabet Cards.** Divide the class into groups of four to six. Give each group a set of A–Z alphabet cards. Write the alphabet on the board for reference. One half of each group puts the alphabet cards in order. While they are working, the other half of the group asks *Are you finished?* The students working with the cards say *No, not yet* and the other students in the group say *Please hurry!* When finished, groups check the order of their cards and rearrange any cards that are not in the correct order. Students in each group then change roles and repeat the activity.
OPTION: Do the activity as above, but use Unit 5 Word Time Picture Cards instead of alphabet cards.
3. **Write Quickly.** Bring a volunteer to the front of the classroom. Ask *What's your first name?* After the student responds, give him/her a piece of paper and say *Please write your name.* While the student is writing his/her name, ask *Are you finished?* and elicit *No, not yet.* Respond with *Please hurry!* Do the same again, but this time ask the student's last name. Divide the class into pairs and have them do the activity as above. Students in each pair then change roles and do the activity again.
4. **Option: Project.** Students draw two different pictures of situations in which they might use or have used this conversation. The speakers in the pictures should have speech bubbles. Using their Student Books for reference, students write the conversation in the speech bubbles. Divide the class into pairs, and have students in each pair look at each other's pictures, and role-play the conversation.

Finish the Lesson

1. **Follow Commands Quickly.** Say *Put away your books.* Immediately ask *Are you finished?* Elicit *No, not yet.* Respond with *Please hurry!* Do the same with any other classroom items that students need to put away, such as pencils, erasers, or pencil cases. Finally, ask *Are you all finished?* When students respond *Yes*, end the class.
2. Explain and assign Workbook page 29. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 155.)

Word Time

Language Focus: Food (*hamburgers, sushi, fried rice, dumplings, noodles, pizza*)

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities): CD/cassette and player; Wall Chart 14; tangled string; 1 eraser per 5–6 students; Unit 7 Word Time Picture Cards, 3 sets per 4–5 students (see Picture and Word Card Book page 27)

For general information on Word Time, see pages 10–11.

Warm-Up and Review

1. **Conversation Review: Untangle the String.** Write the Unit 7 target conversation on the board. Point to each line and elicit the conversation. Then give a piece of tangled string to a student, and ask him/her to untangle it. Ask *Are you finished?* Elicit *No, not yet.* Say *Please hurry!* Then give the tangled string to another volunteer and repeat the activity. Continue until three or four volunteers have held the string.
2. Check Workbook page 29. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 155.)

Introduce the Words

Hold up and name the Unit 7 Word Time Picture Cards one by one. Students listen. Hold up and name the cards again, and have students repeat. Then hold up the cards in random order and have students name them.

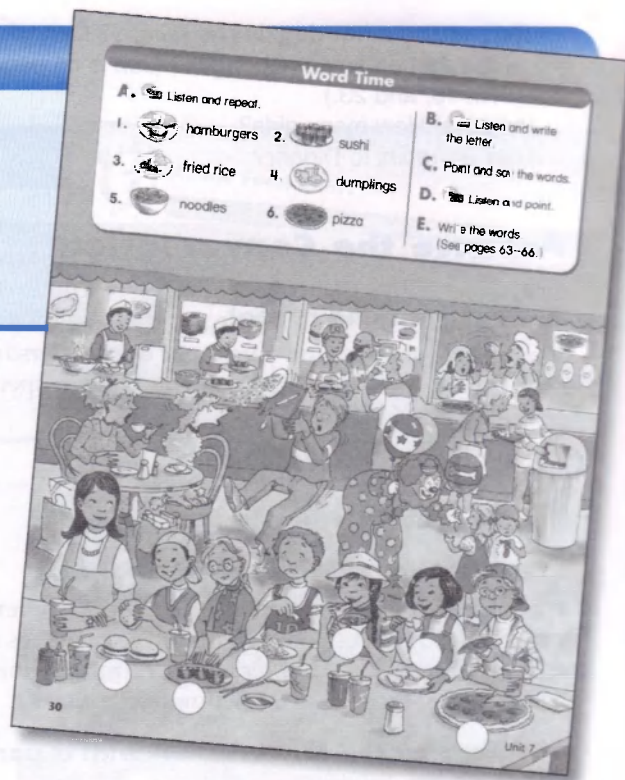
OPTION: Introduce the vocabulary as above, but instead of using picture cards, use pictures of the food items from magazines.

Note: It is not important to teach or stress the difference between count and non-count nouns at this stage.

Talk About the Picture

1. Students open their Student Books to page 30. They look at the large scene and name anything they can.
2. Attach Wall Chart 14 to the board, or open a Student Book to page 30. Read the following "story" while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*).

Wow! Look at all the **food** the **children** are *eating*. They're *hungry*! **Ted** has **hamburgers**, and **Annie** has **sushi**. These are **dumplings**. That's **fried rice**. This is **pizza**, and those are **noodles**. Oops! **That man** is *falling*! The **woman** and her **dog** are *surprised*.



3. Ask the following questions while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*).

How many boys?
How many girls?
How many **hamburgers** does **Ted** have?
How many **dumplings** does **Ivy** have?
(**sushi**) Is it pizza?
(**pizza**) What's that?
(**fried rice**) Is it a dumpling?
(**girl getting the balloon**) Is she *sad*?

Practice the Words

A. Listen and repeat.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each picture in the vocabulary box.

- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. <i>hamburgers</i> | 2. <i>sushi</i> |
| 3. <i>fried rice</i> | 4. <i>dumplings</i> |
| 5. <i>noodles</i> | 6. <i>pizza</i> |

2. Say the words in random order. Students point to the pictures in the vocabulary box.

B. Listen and write the letter.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and write the letter they hear in the white circle for each vocabulary item. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

- a. *noodles, noodles* b. *pizza, pizza*
 c. *dumplings, dumplings* d. *hamburgers, hamburgers*
 e. *fried rice, fried rice* f. *sushi, sushi*

2. Check answers by writing the letters *a–f* on the board then having volunteers come to the board and attach the corresponding picture card next to each letter. Point to each picture card and have students name it.

C. Point and say the words.

Students point to and name each of the target vocabulary items in the large scene.

D. Listen and point.

Play the recording. Students listen to the sound effects and words. For the vocabulary, they point to those food items; for the conversations, they point to the speakers. (References are shown in parentheses.) Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

Yum! Noodles. (any noodles)

Fried rice. (any fried rice)

Eew, pizza. (any pizza)

Yum! Hamburgers. (any hamburgers)

Eew, sushi. (any sushi)

Mm! Dumplings. (any dumplings)

Now listen and point to the speakers.

A: *Oh, thank you.* (old woman and boy at trash can)

B: *You're welcome.*

A: *How many hamburgers?* (men at burger stand)

B: *Three hamburgers, please.*

A: *Okay.*

E. Write the words. (See pages 63–66.)

Students turn to page 63 (*My Picture Dictionary*), find the picture of each target vocabulary item, and write the word next to it.

Find Digger's Bone

Students find Digger's bone hidden in the large scene.

Answer Key: Digger's bone is drawn on the balloon that the clown is handing to the young child.

OPTION: Students find Digger's bone as above, then pick their favorite food from the target food items. They then draw this food item, as well as bone utensils they would need to eat their favorite food. Students then tell a classmate the food they chose.

Extra Vocabulary. Students turn to page 29. Introduce the extra vocabulary items *salad, hot dogs, spaghetti*. Students then find these items in the large scene.

Games and Activities

1. **Run and Find.** (See Game 31, page 144.) Play the game using two sets of Unit 7 Word Time Picture Cards.
2. **Hit the Cards.** Divide the class into teams of five to six. Place the Unit 7 Word Time Picture Cards, one set per team, faceup on the floor at the front of the classroom. Each team lines up at a designated distance behind their set of cards. Give the first student in each line an eraser. Each of these students then throws his/her eraser. If the eraser lands on a card, the student who threw the eraser names that card, picks it up, and takes it back to his/her line. If the eraser does not land on a card, or the student cannot name the card, he/she picks up his/her eraser, gives it to the second student in line, and goes to the back of the line. S2s then take a turn. Teams continue in the same way. The first team to collect all their cards wins.
3. **Food Shop.** Divide the class into groups of four to five, and give each group three sets of Unit 7 Word Time Picture Cards. Each group then sets up a food shop, arranging their cards behind a "counter," and appointing a volunteer to be their shop's clerk. The rest of each group circulates to the different shops. Students go up to a counter and choose items they would like to buy, saying (*Hamburgers*), *please*. The clerk hands the customer his/her item, saying *Here you are*. The customer says *Thanks*, and the clerk says *You're welcome*. Once students have received their food, they go back to their group. When all group members have returned, they sit down together and tell one another what they "bought" by pointing to or touching each food item and saying *This is (a hamburger) or That's (fried rice)*.
4. **Option: Personalize the Picture.** Divide the class into groups of four to six. Groups create a menu by drawing and then gluing individual pictures onto a large paper, then writing the name of each food and its price next to its picture. When all groups have created their menus, they stand up and show them to the rest of the class, pointing to or touching each item and saying *This is (sushi) or That's (pizza)*.

Finish the Lesson

1. **Guess the Pantomime.** Bring a volunteer to the front of the classroom to pantomime eating any of the target food items. Seated students try to identify the food item. The first student to correctly identify the food item is next to pantomime. Continue until most students have pantomimed.
2. Explain and assign Workbook page 30. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 156.)

Practice Time

Language Focus: Affirmative and negative statements with *like* [(I) like (hamburgers)./(I) don't like (pizza).]

Function: Expressing likes and dislikes

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities):

CD/cassette and player; Unit 7 Word Time Picture Cards, 1 set; Unit 7 Word Time Word Cards, 1 set per 4–5 students; Unit 7 Grammar Cards, 1 set per 4–5 students (see Picture and Word Card Book pages 27, 28, and 57)

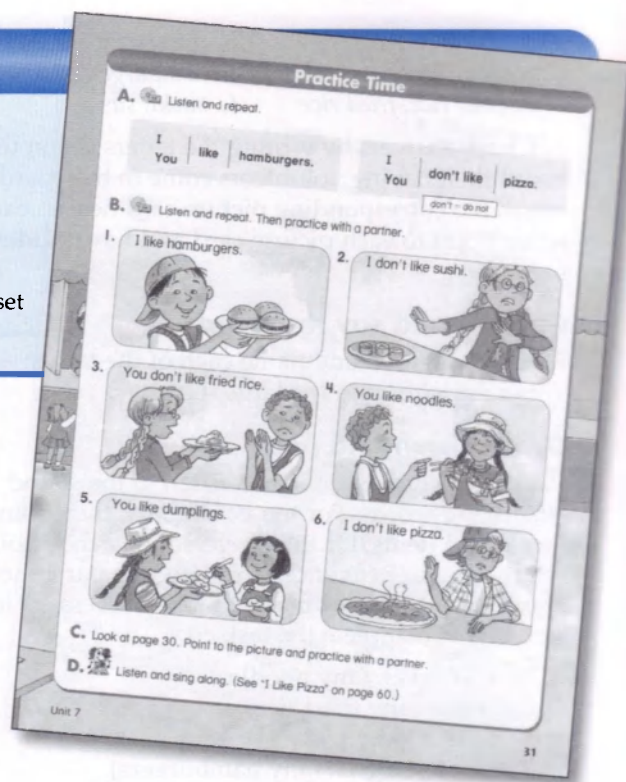
For general information on Practice Time, see pages 12–13.

Warm-Up and Review

1. **Vocabulary Review: Name the Cards.** Hold up the Unit 7 Word Time Picture Cards one by one. Students name each food item. Show the cards again more quickly. Students name each food item.
2. Check Workbook page 30. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 156.)

Introduce the Patterns

1. **I like (sushi).** Place the Unit 7 Word Time Picture Cards on the chalktray facing the class. Pick up the *sushi* card, smile, lick your lips, and pat your stomach. Point to your chest and say *I like sushi*. Students repeat. Write *I like sushi* on the board. Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Do the same with *hamburgers*, *fried rice*, *dumplings*, *pizza*, and *noodles*.
2. **I don't like (sushi).** Point to the *sushi* card and look at it with an expression of dislike. Point to your chest and say *I don't like sushi* while shaking your head and emphasizing *don't*. Students repeat. Write *I don't like sushi* on the board. Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Do the same with *hamburgers*, *fried rice*, *dumplings*, *pizza*, and *noodles*.
3. **You like (sushi).** Bring a volunteer to the front of the classroom. He/She points to a card depicting a food item that he/she likes, and pantomimes *like* as in Step 1. Point to and look at the volunteer and say *You like (sushi)*. Students repeat while pointing to and looking at the volunteer. Write *You like sushi* on the board. Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Do the same with *hamburgers*, *fried rice*, *dumplings*, *pizza*, and *noodles*.
4. **You don't like (sushi).** Bring another volunteer to the front of the classroom. He/She points to a card depicting a food item that he/she doesn't like, and pantomimes *dislike*. Point to and look at the volunteer and say *You don't like (sushi)* while shaking your head and emphasizing *don't*. Students repeat while pointing to and looking at the volunteer. Write *You don't like sushi* on the board. Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Do the same with *hamburgers*, *fried rice*, *dumplings*, *pizza*, and *noodles*.



5. **Practice for Fluency.** Bring six volunteers to the front of the classroom. Give each of them a picture card from the chalktray. One volunteer begins by pointing to his/her chest and then his/her picture card, pantomiming either *like* or *dislike*, and saying *I (like) (sushi)*. Seated students point to and look at this volunteer and say *You (like) (sushi)*. The other five volunteers take turns doing the same. Bring six new volunteers to the front of the classroom and do the activity again.

Practice the Patterns

Students open their Student Books to page 31.

A. Listen and repeat.

1. Write the text from the pattern boxes on the board. Play the recording, pointing to each word. Students listen.

*I like hamburgers. You like hamburgers.
I don't like pizza. You don't like pizza.*

2. Play the recording again. Students listen, look at the pattern boxes in their books, and repeat, pointing to each word.
3. Students try to say the patterns on their own, while looking at the pattern boxes in their books.
4. Write the explanation of the contraction on the board:

don't = do not

Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Then say each pattern with the full form of the contraction. Students repeat. Students practice each pattern in the pattern box, using both the contraction and the full form of the contraction.

B. Listen and repeat. Then practice with a partner.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each picture in their books.

1. *I like hamburgers.*
2. *I don't like sushi.*
3. *You don't like fried rice.*
4. *You like noodles.*
5. *You like dumplings.*
6. *I don't like pizza.*

2. Play the recording again. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each word in their books.

3. Students practice numbers 1–6 in pairs. They then change pairs and repeat the activity.

C. Look at page 30. Point to the picture and practice with a partner.

Students remain in pairs and look at page 30. They then take turns making statements about food items in the large scene using the new patterns and vocabulary items. For example: S1 (pointing to the hamburgers): *I like hamburgers.* S2 (pointing to and looking at S1): *You like hamburgers.*

D. Listen and sing along.

1. Students turn to the Unit 7 song *I Like Pizza*, page 60. Focus their attention on the pictures. Students try to guess some of the lyrics using the pictures as cues. Read the lyrics line by line. Students repeat each line. Play the recording. Students listen and follow along in their books.

I Like Pizza
(Melody: *This Old Man*)

I like pizza.
Yes. Yes. Yes.
I like hamburgers.
Yes. Yes. Yes.

I don't like sushi.
No. No. No.
I don't like noodles.
No. No. No.

I like dumplings.
Yes. Yes. Yes.
I like fried rice.
Yes. Yes. Yes.

I don't like pizza.
No. No. No.
I don't like hamburgers.

No. No. No.
Are you finished?
No, not yet.
Please hurry!

2. Play the recording again. Students listen and sing along, using their books for reference. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to become familiar with the song.

3. Spread a set of Unit 7 Word Time Picture Cards out along the chalktray. Divide the class into Groups A and B. Play the karaoke version. Group A sings the indented lines, Group B sings the non-indented lines. Both groups pantomime *like* and *dislike* when appropriate, and point to the picture card that corresponds to the line they are singing. Groups then change roles and sing the song again.

Games and Activities

1. **Pantomime.** Pantomime happily eating a slice of pizza. Elicit *You like pizza.* Nod your head and say *I like pizza.* Then pantomime taking a big bite of a hamburger. Make a disgusted face and elicit *You don't like hamburgers.* Shake your head and say *I don't like hamburgers.* Then divide the class into pairs and have students in each pair take turns pantomiming their likes and dislikes as above. Continue for five to seven minutes.
2. **Around the Circle.** Students sit in a circle. A volunteer (S1) begins by pantomiming *like*, pointing to him/herself, and saying *I like (fried rice).* The student on S1's left (S2) points to S1 and says *You like (fried rice).* S2 then pantomimes *dislike*, points to him/herself, and says *I don't like (dumplings).* The student on S2's left (S3) then points to S1 and says *You like (fried rice),* points to S2 and says *You don't like (dumplings),* then points to him/herself, pantomimes *like* or *dislike*, and uses the target pattern to name a food he/she likes or doesn't like. Continue in the same way around the circle. Start again when a student is not able to remember all the previous students' food items and likes/dislikes.
3. **Make the Sentences.** (See Game 43, page 145.) Do the activity using Unit 7 Word Time Word Cards and Grammar Cards.

Extra Practice

Explain and assign Worksheet 13, *I Like Pizza!*, page 186. (For instructions and answer key, see page 171.)

Finish the Lesson

1. **Tell the Class.** Ask a student to tell the class a food item he/she likes or doesn't like using the target pattern. The rest of the class says *You (like) (dumplings).* Students then take turns saying *I (like) (noodles)* while classmates respond with *You (like) (noodles).*
2. Explain and assign Workbook page 31. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 156.)

Phonics Time

Sound Focus: s, z (*sea, sock, soup, zebra, zipper, zoo*)

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities):

CD/cassette and player; Unit 7 Phonics Time Picture Cards, 1 set; 8 s and 8 z alphabet cards, 1 set per 3–4 students; a, c, e, g, i, o, o, p, r, u alphabet cards, 1 set per student (see Picture and Word Card Book pages 29 and 51–54)

For general information on Phonics Time, see pages 14–15.

Warm-Up and Review

1. **Pattern Review: Sing Along.** Play the recording of the Unit 7 song *I Like Pizza*. Students listen. Play the recording again and have students sing along.
2. Check Workbook page 31. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 156.)
3. **Phonics Review: Say the Initial Sound.** Write *b, d, f, g, h, k, m, n, p, t, v, w* on the board. Point to each letter and elicit its sound. Say six to eight words that begin with any of these letters (see Suggested Words below) and elicit each word's initial sound.

Suggested Words: *ball, pizza, Kim, girl, man, nurse, dog, Ted, water, hello, finished, van*

Introduce the Sounds

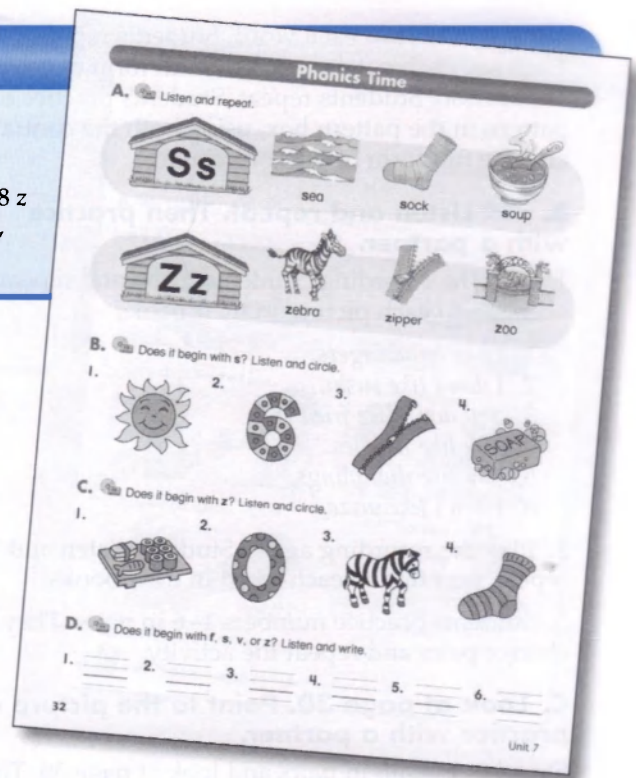
Note: The long *e* sound is written as /i/.

1. Hold up the *sea* picture card and say /s/-/s/, *sea*, stressing the initial sound. Attach the card to the board. Do the same with *sock* and *soup*. Repeat the activity for the three /z/ words *zebra, zipper, zoo*.
2. Write *s* on the board. Say /s/ while pointing to the letter. Add *ea* to the right of *s* and say /s/-/i/, *sea* pointing to the two parts of the word and then the whole word. Do the same for *sock* and *soup*. Repeat the entire procedure for the /z/ words.

Practice the Sounds

Students open their Student Books to page 32.

Students are expected to know the meaning of only the six words at the top of the page. The remaining words they hear in the lesson are for the purpose of sound recognition only. It is not necessary to teach these words as vocabulary.



A. Listen and repeat.

Focus students' attention on the s and z words at the top of the page. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to the pictures and words in their books.

s /s/
sea
sock
soup
z /z/
zebra
zipper
zoo

B. Does it begin with s? Listen and circle.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and circle the illustration of each word they hear that begins with s. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

1. *sun, sun*
2. *six, six*
3. *zipper, zipper*
4. *soap, soap*

2. Check answers by saying *Number 1. sun*, and having volunteers say /s/ if they circled the picture of *sun*, and sit silently if they did not. Do the same for numbers 2–4.

Answer Key: Pictures 1, 2, and 4 are circled.

C. Does it begin with z? Listen and circle.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and circle the illustration of each word they hear that begins with z.
2. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

1. *sushi, sushi*
2. *zero, zero*
3. *zebra, zebra*
4. *sock, sock*

2. Check answers by saying *Number 1. sushi*, and having volunteers say /z/ if they circled the picture of *sushi*, and sit silently if they did not. Do the same for numbers 2–4.

Answer Key: Pictures 2 and 3 are circled.

D. Does it begin with f, s, v, or z? Listen and write.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and write the initial letter of each word they hear. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

1. *sad, sad*
2. *family, family*
3. *vet, vet*
4. *foot, foot*
5. *zoo, zoo*
6. *van, van*

2. Check answers by writing the numbers 1–6 on the board and having volunteers come to the board and write the letter they wrote for each number.

Answer Key: 1. s 2. f 3. v 4. f 5. z 6. v

Games and Activities

1. **Quick: s or z?** Divide the class into groups of three to four. Give each group a pile of eight s alphabet cards and a pile of eight z alphabet cards. Have students place each pile facedown in the middle of the group. Say a word that begins with either s or z (see Suggested Words below). Students in each group try to be the first to repeat the word, say its initial sound, and slap the pile of alphabet cards that correspond to its initial letter. For example: Say *sea*. Students in each group try to be the first to say *sea*, /s/, and slap the pile of s cards. The first student in each group to correctly do this takes the alphabet card. Do the same with ten to twelve different words. The student in each group with the most cards at the end wins.

Suggested Words: *soccer, zipper, zoo, set, zen, seven, sock, zero, sap, zip, zap, sad, sushi, zone, six*

2. **One or Two Steps.** Students stand in a line side-by-side at the back of the classroom. Say ten to twelve words that begin with s, z, or another letter students know (see Suggested Words below). Students take one large step forward if the word they hear begins with s, and two large steps forward if the word they hear begins with z. If the word does not begin with either s or z, students remain still. If a student moves incorrectly, he/she goes to the back of the classroom and starts over. The first student(s) to reach the front of the classroom win(s).

Suggested Words: *bag, sun, zebra, step, fish, song, zigzag, soup, sit, sing, park, zero, snake*

LARGE CLASSES: Students stand up next to their desks. If the word they hear begins with s, they take one large step forward. If the word they hear begins with z, they do not move at all. If students make a mistake, they sit down.

3. **Make Words With the Cards.** Give each student alphabet cards *a, c, e, g, i, o, p, r, s, u, z*. Say *sea*. Students repeat the word and say its initial sound. Then, using their Student Books for reference, students put their alphabet cards in order to spell *sea*. Write the word on the board and have students check their answers and readjust their cards as necessary. Do the same with the remaining Unit 7 Phonics Time target words.

Extra Practice

Explain and assign Worksheet 14, Phonics Fun s and z, page 187. (For instructions and answer key, see page 171.)



Finish the Lesson

1. **Be a Snake! Zigzag!** Write *snake* and *zigzag* on the board. Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Then draw a curved line under *snake*, and a zigzag line under *zigzag*. Say /s/. Students stand up and move around the classroom, swerving like a snake, saying /s/. Say /z/. Students then zigzag around the classroom, saying /z/. Volunteers then take on the teacher's role, saying the sounds. Continue in the same way for three to four minutes.

LARGE CLASSES: At their desks, students make the same movements with their arms instead of moving around the classroom.

2. Explain and assign Workbook page 32. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 156.)

Assessment

Explain and assign the Unit 7 Test, page 222. (For instructions and answer key, see page 206.)





8 At the Supermarket

Conversation Time

Language Focus: *May I borrow a pen?/Sure. Here you are./Thanks.*

Function: Requesting an object; responding to requests; expressing gratitude

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities):

CD/cassette and player; Wall Chart 15; Unit 4 Word Time Picture Cards, 4 cards per student (see Picture and Word Card Book page 13)

For general information on Conversation Time, see pages 8–9.

Warm-Up and Review

- Phonics Review: Write the Letter in the Air.** Say /s/. Then face the board and write an s in the air with your finger. Students copy your motion. Do the same with /z/. Say a word that begins with either s or z (see Suggested Words below), and have students say the word's initial sound and write the corresponding letter in the air. Do the same with six to eight different words.

Suggested Words: *sea, zebra, sock, soap, zipper, sun, zoo, zero, six, seven, sushi*

- Check Workbook page 32. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 156.)

Introduce the Conversation

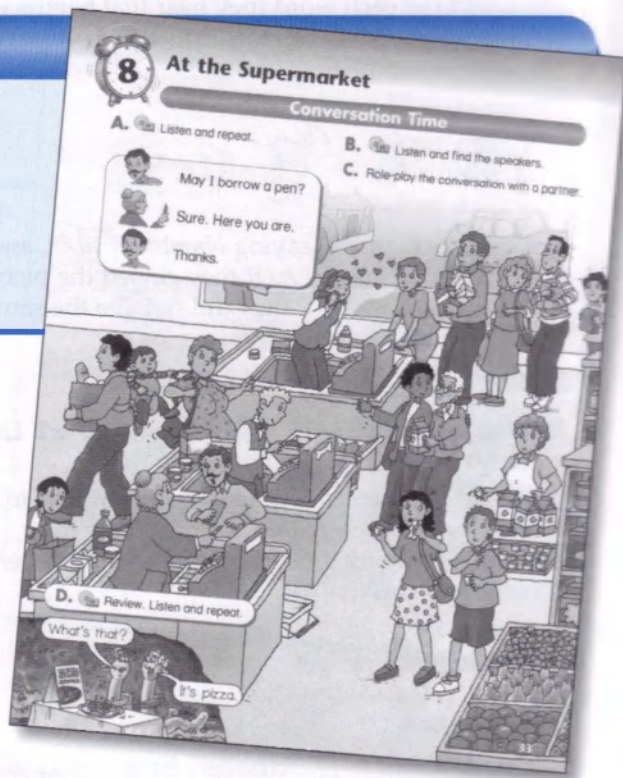
- Bring two students to the front of the classroom. Ask one of them to bring a pen. Stand behind each student and model his/her line(s) of the conversation with the following actions:

May I borrow a pen? Look at your empty hands. Look around the classroom, and look pleased as you see the student with the pen. Go to him/her, lean forward a little, smile, and point to the pen.

Sure. Here you are. Prompt the student to give the other student the pen.

Thanks. Smile and look directly at the student who gave the pen.

- Clarify word meaning.
borrow: Pick up a pen from a student's desk, write with it, and then return it to the student. Say *borrow*. Students repeat. Then pick up a book from a student's desk, flip through the pages, and read a bit. Then return it to the student. Say *borrow*. Students repeat.
- Model the conversation again, as in Step 1.



- Divide the class into Groups A and B. Model each line of the conversation again using facial expressions and body language. Group A repeats the first line of the conversation, Group B repeats line two, and so on. Encourage students to copy your facial expressions and body language. Groups then change roles and repeat the conversation again.
- Groups A and B say alternate lines of the conversation. Groups then change roles and say the conversation again. Prompt when necessary.

OPTION: Students ask to borrow any number of other school supplies such as pencils, books, or rulers. For example:

May I borrow two books?
Sure. Here you are.
Thanks.

Talk About the Picture

CHARACTER KEY FOR TEACHER REFERENCE

Annie's father: At the first cash register in the foreground.

- Attach Wall Chart 15 to the board, or open a Student Book to page 33. Students then open their Student Books to page 33. Read the following "story" while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*).

THIS is a **supermarket**. People are buying food. There are *three checkout lines*, and here's **Annie's father**. He needs to borrow a pen. He says *May I borrow a pen?* The clerk says *Sure. Here you are.* The **baby's pulling** on the **necklace!** Ouch! **These people** are *waiting* in line. They're *angry*.

2. Ask the following questions while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*).

(**pen**) What's this?
 How many **checkout lines**?
 (**people waiting in line**) Are they *happy*?
 How many girls?
 How many boys?
 (**cash register**) Is it a tree?

Practice the Conversation

A. Listen and repeat.

Play the recording (first version of the conversation). Students listen and repeat, pointing to each speaker in the conversation box.

Annie's father: *May I borrow a pen?*
 Clerk: *Sure. Here you are.*
 Annie's father: *Thanks.*

B. Listen and find the speakers.

Play the recording (second version of the conversation). Students find and point to the speakers in the large scene. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

C. Role-play the conversation with a partner.

Students choose a partner and role-play the conversation. They then change roles and role-play the conversation again.

D. Review. Listen and repeat.

Volunteers try to read or guess the worms' conversation. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each speech bubble.

A: *What's that?*
 B: *It's pizza.*

OPTION: Students role-play the conversation.

Find Digger's Bone

Students find Digger's bone hidden in the large scene.

Answer Key: Digger's bone is the cash register display window on the middle register.

OPTION: Students find Digger's bone as above, then draw a shopping cart or basket with a dog bone handle. Hang the pictures on the wall as an art display.

Games and Activities

1. **Three to a Conversation.** (See Game 3, page 140.) Play the game using the target conversation.
2. **Borrow from Your Neighbor.** Divide the class into groups of four to five. Give each student four Unit 4 Word Time Picture Cards. Students in each group sit in a circle and place their cards faceup in front of them. A student in each group (S1) begins by turning to the student on his/her left (S2), deciding which of S2's cards he/she would like to borrow, and asking *May I borrow a (book)?* S2 says *Sure. Here you are* as he/she hands the (book) picture card to S1. S1 says *Thanks*, looks at the card for several seconds, then hands it back to S2. S2 then requests an item from the student on his/her left in the same way. Each group continues around the circle in the same way until each student has requested three cards.

LARGE CLASSES: Students request cards in the same way as above from a student sitting nearby.

OPTION: Play as above, using realia instead of cards.

3. **Combine the Conversations.** Combine the Units 1, 4, and 8 conversations on the board in the following way:

A: *Good morning!*
 B: *Hello! How are you?*
 A: *Fine, thank you.*
 B: *May I borrow a pen?*
 A: *Sure. Here you are.*
 B: *Thanks.*
 A: *You're welcome.*

Point to and read each line. Students repeat. Bring two volunteers to the front of the classroom to role-play the conversation. Then divide the class into pairs and have pairs role-play the conversation in the same way. Students in each pair then change roles and role-play the conversation again.

Finish the Lesson

1. **Say the Next Word.** A volunteer says the first word of the target conversation. A student sitting next to or behind him/her says the next word. Continue around the class with each student saying the next word in the conversation. If a student cannot say the next word, elicit the word from a volunteer. Continue until the entire conversation has been said twice.
2. Explain and assign Workbook page 33. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 157.)

Word Time

Language Focus: Fruits and vegetables (*apples, oranges, bananas, cucumbers, potatoes, carrots*)

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities): CD/cassette and player; Wall Chart 16; Unit 8 Word Time Picture Cards, 7 sets (see Picture and Word Card Book page 31)

For general information on Word Time, see pages 10–11.

Warm-Up and Review

1. **Conversation Review: Borrow It.** Ask a student *May I borrow a pencil?* Elicit *Sure. Here you are* as that student hands you a pencil. Take the pencil and say *Thanks*. Students then turn to a classmate sitting nearby and ask to borrow something they can name in English. Students continue in the same way, practicing the conversation with other students sitting nearby, for three or four minutes.
2. Check Workbook page 33. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 157.)

Introduce the Words

Hold up and name the Unit 8 Word Time Picture Cards one by one. Students listen. Hold up and name the cards again, and have students repeat. Hold up the cards in random order and have students name them.

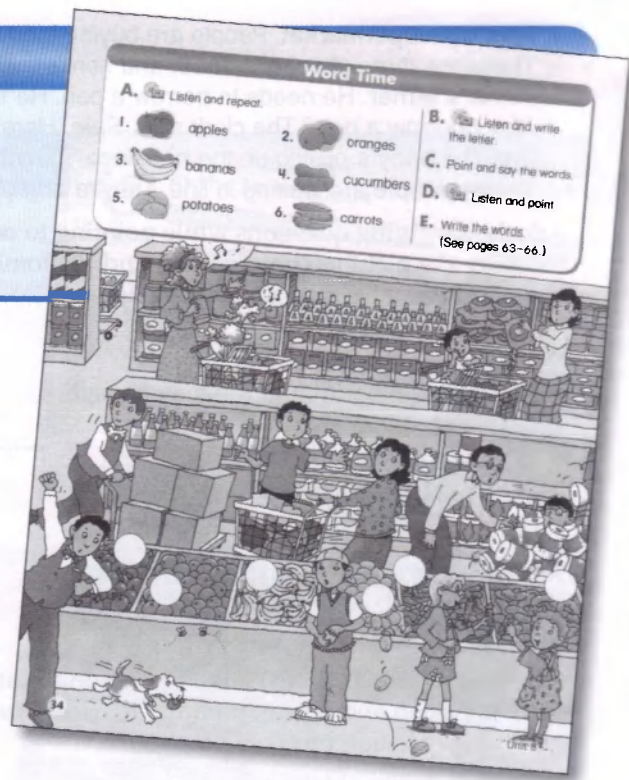
OPTION: Introduce the vocabulary as above, using real fruits and vegetables instead of picture cards.

Talk About the Picture

1. Students open their Student Books to page 34. They look at the large scene and name anything they can.
2. Attach Wall Chart 16 to the board, or open a Student Book to page 34. Read the following "story" while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*).

Many people are shopping at the supermarket.

This woman and her **dog** are *singing*. Uh-oh! Look at the **rice**. It's *falling* from the **bag**. Here are some **fruits** and **vegetables**. These are **oranges**. Those are **apples**. I don't like apples. These are **cucumbers**, and those are **carrots**. I like carrots! Those are **potatoes**, and these are **bananas**.



3. Ask the following questions while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*).
 - (**apples**) What are these?
 - (**potatoes**) What are those?
 - (**oranges**) What are these?
 - How many **shopping carts**?
 - How many **dogs**?
 - (**bananas**) Are these **cucumbers**? What are they?
 - (**Mike, among the paper towels**) Is he *happy*?

Practice the Words

A. Listen and repeat.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each picture in the vocabulary box.

- | | |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| 1. <i>apples</i> | 2. <i>oranges</i> |
| 3. <i>bananas</i> | 4. <i>cucumbers</i> |
| 5. <i>potatoes</i> | 6. <i>carrots</i> |

2. Say the words in random order. Students point to the pictures in the vocabulary box.

B. Listen and write the letter.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and write the letter they hear in the white circle for each vocabulary item. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

- | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| a. <i>potatoes, potatoes</i> | b. <i>apples, apples</i> |
| c. <i>bananas, bananas</i> | d. <i>carrots, carrots</i> |
| e. <i>oranges, oranges</i> | f. <i>cucumbers, cucumbers</i> |

2. Check answers by writing the letters *a–f* on the board then having volunteers come to the board and attach the corresponding picture card next to each letter. Point to each picture card and have students name it.

C. Point and say the words.

Students point to and name each of the target vocabulary items in the large scene.

D. Listen and point.

Play the recording. Students listen to the sound effects and words. For vocabulary, they point to the corresponding fruits and vegetables; for the conversations, they point to the speakers. (References are shown in parentheses.) Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

Carrots.

Apples.

Cucumbers.

Oranges.

Bananas.

Potatoes.

Now listen and point to the speakers.

A: *Ouch!* (boy and man by the paper towels)

B: *Are you okay?*

A: *I think so.*

A: *I don't like carrots.* (Annie and the girl beside her)

B: *I like cucumbers.*

E. Write the words. (See pages 63–66.)

Students turn to page 63 (*My Picture Dictionary*), find the picture of each target vocabulary item, and write the word next to it.

Find Digger's Bone

Students find Digger's bone hidden in the large scene.

Answer Key: The bowtie that the clerk pushing the boxes is wearing is shaped like Digger's bone.

OPTION: Students find Digger's bone as above, then draw any fruit or vegetable in the shape of a bone. Students then show their pictures to a classmate sitting nearby and say *I (like) (bananas)*.

Extra Vocabulary. Students turn to page 33. Introduce the extra vocabulary items *pears, grapes, tomatoes*. Students then find these items in the large scene.

Games and Activities

1. **Hunt for the Words.** (See Game 25, page 143.) Play the game using Unit 8 Word Time Picture Cards.
2. **Race to the Card.** Place two sets of Unit 8 Word Time Picture Cards around the classroom, each card in a different location. Divide the class into teams of six. Students in each team count off from one to six. Name one of the cards and say a number from one to six. For example: *oranges, six*. The student in each team whose number is six tries to be the first to run to the *oranges* card, hold it up, and name it. The first student to do so wins a point for his/her team. Students then put the card down and return to their teams. Do the same, using different numbers and cards, for five to seven minutes. The team with the most points at the end wins.

VERY SMALL CLASSES: Each time a card is named, all students stand up and try to be the first to run to the card, hold it up, and name it. The first student to do so wins a point. The student at the end with the most points wins.

3. **Where Does It Grow?** Divide the class into pairs and give each pair a set of Unit 8 Word Time Picture Cards. On a sheet of paper, each pair draws a tree and a line beneath the tree representing the ground. Pairs then place each Unit 8 Picture Card on their papers where that fruit or vegetable grows (apples, oranges, and bananas on the tree; cucumbers above the ground; potatoes and carrots below the ground). When they have placed all the cards, students point to each item and name it.
4. **Option: Project.** Students go to a supermarket and draw its fruit and vegetable section. Once back in class, divide the class into pairs and have each pair point to the items in their picture and name them.
5. **Option: Personalize the Picture.** Students look through old magazines or newspapers and cut out pictures of any food items they can name in English. Students then glue all their pictures on a large sheet of paper and label each picture. Students then show their collages to the class, pointing to each picture and saying *I (like) (bananas)*. Hang the collages on the walls for future reference.

Finish the Lesson

1. **Guess the Pantomime.** Bring a volunteer to the front of the classroom to pantomime peeling and/or eating any of the target food items. The rest of the class tries to identify the food item. The first student to correctly identify the food item is next to come to the front of the classroom and pantomime. Continue until most students have pantomimed.
2. Explain and assign Workbook page 34. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 157.)

Practice Time

Language Focus: Yes/No questions with *like* [Do you like (apples)? Yes, I do./No, I don't.]

Function: Asking about likes and dislikes

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities):

CD/cassette and player; 2 balls; 2 × 3 grids, 1 per student; Unit 8 Word Time Picture Cards, 1 set per student; Unit 8 Word Time Word Cards, 1 set per 4–5 students; Unit 8 Grammar Cards, 1 set per 4–5 students (see Picture and Word Card Book pages 31, 32, 57, and 58)

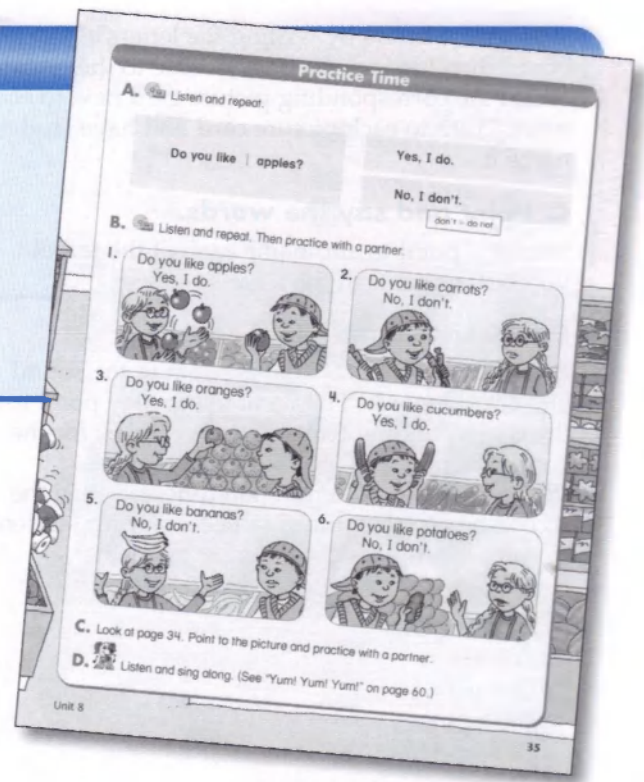
For general information on Practice Time, see pages 12–13.

Warm-Up and Review

1. **Vocabulary Review: Slow Reveal.** (See Game 32, page 144.) Hold up each Unit 8 Word Time Picture Card and elicit its name. Then play the game using the picture cards.
2. Check Workbook page 34. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 157.)

Introduce the Patterns

1. **Do you like (apples)? Yes, I do.** Write a big ? on the board and place the Unit 8 Word Time Picture Cards on the chalktray. Bring a volunteer to the front of the classroom and have him/her pick up a card representing a fruit/vegetable that he/she likes (for example: *apples*). Look at and point to the volunteer with a quizzical expression on your face, point to the ?, shrug your shoulders, and ask *Do you like (apples)?* Seated students repeat. Write *Do you like apples?* on the board. Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Then ask the volunteer the question again and elicit a positive response such as *Yes* or a nod of his/her head. Say *Yes, I do* while nodding your head. The volunteer repeats. Write *Yes, I do.* on the board to the right of *Do you like apples?* Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Do the same with different volunteers and *oranges, cucumbers, bananas, potatoes, and carrots.*
2. **Do you like (apples)? No, I don't.** Do the same as in Step 2 above, having volunteers choose items they do not like. Then elicit negative responses.
3. **Practice for Fluency.** Bring two volunteers to the front of the classroom and give each one a ball. The volunteers take turns tossing the balls to seated students and asking *Do you like (cucumbers)?* The student who catches the ball replies either *Yes, I do* or *No, I don't*, then throws the ball back. After five or six questions, bring two new volunteers to the front of the classroom to toss the balls and ask questions.



Practice the Patterns

Students open their Student Books to page 35.

A. Listen and repeat.

1. Write the text from the pattern boxes on the board. Play the recording, pointing to each word. Students listen.

A: *Do you like apples?* A: *Do you like apples?*
B: *Yes, I do.* B: *No, I don't.*

2. Play the recording again. Students listen, look at the pattern boxes in their books, and repeat, pointing to each word.

3. Students try to say the patterns on their own, while looking at the pattern boxes in their books.

4. Write the explanation of the contraction on the board:

don't = do not

Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Then say each pattern with the full form of the contraction. Students repeat. Students practice each pattern in the pattern box, using both the contraction and the full form of the contraction.

B.  Listen and repeat. Then practice with a partner.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each picture in their books.


1. *Do you like apples?*
Yes, I do.
2. *Do you like carrots?*
No, I don't.
3. *Do you like oranges?*
Yes, I do.
4. *Do you like cucumbers?*
Yes, I do.
5. *Do you like bananas?*
No, I don't.
6. *Do you like potatoes?*
No, I don't.

2. Play the recording again. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each word in their books.

3. Students practice numbers 1–6 in pairs. (S1 in each pair asks the questions, and S2 answers.) They then change roles and repeat the activity.

C. Look at page 34. Point to the picture and practice with a partner.

Students remain in pairs and look at page 34. They then take turns asking and answering questions about food items in the large scene using the new patterns and vocabulary items. For example:
S1 (pointing to bananas): *Do you like bananas?*
S2 (shaking his/her head): *No, I don't.*

D.  Listen and sing along.

1. Students turn to the Unit 8 song *Yum! Yum! Yum!*, page 60. Focus their attention on the pictures. Students try to guess some of the lyrics using the pictures as cues. Read the lyrics line by line. Students repeat each line. Play the recording. Students listen and follow along in their books.

Yum! Yum! Yum!
(Melody: *I'm a Little Tea Pot*)

Do you like bananas?
Yes, I do.
Yes, I do.
Yum! Yum! Yum!
Do you like apples?
No, I don't.
I don't like apples.
Yuck! Yuck! Yuck!

Do you like potatoes?
Yes, I do.
Yes, I do.
Yum! Yum! Yum!
Do you like carrots?
No, I don't.
I don't like carrots.
Yuck! Yuck! Yuck!

2. Play the recording again. Students listen and sing along, using their books for reference. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to become familiar with the song.

3. Place the *bananas*, *apples*, *potatoes*, and *carrots* picture cards on the chalktray and divide the class into Groups A and B. Play the karaoke version. Group A sings the questions, looking at Group B and pointing to the fruit or vegetable in question. Group B sings the replies, looking at Group A and nodding their heads for *Yes, I do* and shaking their heads for *No, I don't*. Groups then change roles and sing the song again.

Games and Activities

1. **Give Her Some Apples.** Divide the class into pairs and give each student a set of Unit 8 Word Time Picture Cards. S1 in each pair asks S2 *Do you like (apples)?* If S2 says *Yes, I do*, S1 gives S2 his/her *apples* card. If S2 says *No, I don't*, S1 keeps the card. Then S2 asks S1 the target question in the same way. Pairs continue like this until they have asked and answered the target question about each card.
2. **Check All the Items.** Give each student a 2×3 grid. Students write the name of each Unit 8 Word Time fruit and vegetable in any order in their grids, one per square. When all students have completed their grids, they stand up and walk around the class asking other students *Do you like (oranges)?* For a *Yes, I do* reply, students write ✓ and the name of that student in that square of their grids. For a *No, I don't* reply, students say *Okay* and move to another student. The first student to have a ✓ in each square wins.
3. **Make the Sentences.** (See Game 43, page 145.) Do the activity using Unit 8 Word Time Word Cards and Grammar Cards.

Extra Practice

Explain and assign Worksheet 15, *Do You Like Bananas?*, page 188. (For instructions and answer key, see page 171.)

Finish the Lesson

1. **Ask Questions.** Ask *Do you like cats?* Elicit *Yes, I do* or *No, I don't* from individual students. Continue, asking five to six target questions about any items students can name in English. A volunteer then takes on the teacher's role and asks five to six more target questions.
2. Explain and assign Workbook page 35. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 157.)

Phonics Time

Sound Focus: short a (*ant, bag, hat, map*)

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities): CD/cassette and player; Unit 8 Word Time Picture Cards, 1 set; Unit 8 Phonics Time Picture Cards, 1 set; *short a* card, 1 card per student (see Picture and Word Card Book pages 31, 33, and 34)

For general information on Phonics Time, see pages 14–15.

Warm-Up and Review

- Pattern Review: Do You Like Oranges?** Hold up the *oranges* picture card with a quizzical look on your face and ask a student *Do you like oranges?* Elicit either *Yes, I do* or *No, I don't*. Then hold up each Unit 8 Word time Picture Card and elicit both the target question and answer for each card.
- Check Workbook page 35. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 157.)
- Phonics Review: Write the Capital Letter.** Write *b, d, f, g, h, k, m, n, p, s, t, v, w, z* in a vertical column on the board. Point to each letter and elicit its sound. Then have volunteers come to the board, write the corresponding capital letter to the left of each lowercase letter, and say that letter's sound.

Introduce the Sounds

Note: The *short a* sound is written as /æ/.

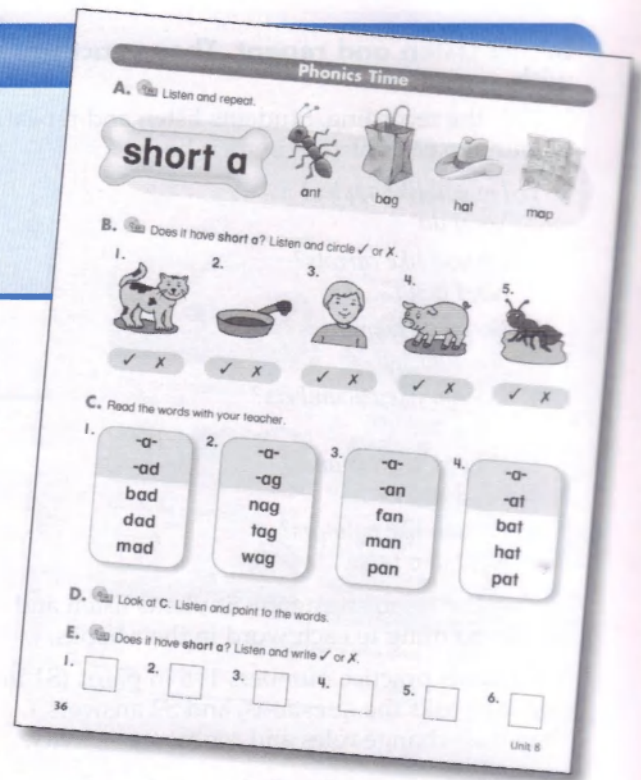
- Hold up the *ant* picture card and say /æ/-/æ/, *ant*, stressing the /æ/ sound. Students repeat. Attach the card to the board. Students repeat. Attach the card to the board. Do the same for *bag, hat, map*.
- Write *a* on the board. Say /æ/ while pointing to the letter. Students repeat. Add *n* to the right of *a*, and say /æ/-/n/-an, while pointing to the two letters and then the combination. Add *t* to the right of *n* and say an-/t/, *ant*, pointing to the two parts of the word and then the whole word. Do the same for *bag, hat, map*.

Pronunciation Note: To help with correct pronunciation of /æ/, have students smile broadly, open their mouths wide, and drop their jaws.

Practice the Sounds

Students open their Student Books to page 36.

Students are expected to know the meaning of only the four words at the top of the page. The remaining words they hear and see in the lesson are for the purpose of sound recognition and reading practice only. It is not necessary to teach these words as vocabulary.



A. Listen and repeat.

Focus students' attention on the *short a* words at the top of the page. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to the pictures and words in their books.

a /æ/
ant
bag
hat
map

B. Does it have short a? Listen and circle ✓ or X.

1. Play the recording. Students listen to each word and circle ✓ if it has *short a*, and X if it does not. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

- cat, cat*
- pan, pan*
- boy, boy*
- pig, pig*
- ant, ant*

2. Check answers by saying *Number 1. cat*, and having students say *yes* if they circled ✓, and *no* if they circled X. Do the same for numbers 2–5.

Answer Key: 1. ✓ 2. ✓ 3. X 4. X 5. ✓

C. Read the words with your teacher.

Write *bad* on the board. Point to, sound out, then read the word. For example: /b/-/æ/-/d/, *bad*. Students repeat. Do the same for the remaining words in the first column. Elicit sounds where possible. Then have students try to sound out and read the words on their own. Repeat the activity with the remaining columns.

D. Look at C. Listen and point to the words.

Play the recording. Students listen and point to the words they hear.

wag, /w/-/æ/-/g/, *wag*

man, /m/-/æ/-/n/, *man*

bad, /b/-/æ/-/d/, *bad*

pan, /p/-/æ/-/n/, *pan*

pat, /p/-/æ/-/t/, *pat*

tag, /t/-/æ/-/g/, *tag*

hat, /h/-/æ/-/t/, *hat*

dad, /d/-/æ/-/d/, *dad*

E. Does it have short a? Listen and write ✓ or X.

1. Play the recording. Students listen to each word and write ✓ if it has *short a*, and X if it does not. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

1. *sad*, *sad*
2. *boat*, *boat*
3. *map*, *map*
4. *cookie*, *cookie*
5. *bat*, *bat*
6. *tag*, *tag*

2. Check answers by saying *Number 1. sad*, and having students say *yes* if they wrote ✓, and *no* if they wrote X. Do the same for numbers 2–6.

Answer Key: 1. ✓ 2. X 3. ✓ 4. X 5. ✓ 6. ✓

Games and Activities

1. **Pick Out the Short a Word.** Say three words, one with *short a*, the other two without *short a* (see Suggested Words below). Students name the *short a* word. Do this with five to six different groups of words.

Suggested Words: *hat, met, lot; Bob, map, cup; pal, top, set; Ted, red, bad; apple, egg, hop; hot, hungry, sad; dad, mom, boy; cow, cat, pig; pet, map, bus*

2. **Hold Up the Short a Card.** Give each student a *short a* card. Say eight to ten words that either have *short a* or do not (see Suggested Words below). When students hear a word with *short a*, they hold up their *short a* cards, repeat the word, and say /æ/.

Suggested Words: *bag, run, mitt, fat, pet, van, jot, jam, gas, hid, tan, sun*

3. **Spell and Write.** Students write the numbers 1–8 on a piece of paper. Sound out and say *bad*. Using their Student Books for reference if necessary, students write *bad* next to number 1 on their papers. Do the same with seven other words from *Read the words with your teacher*. Then check answers by writing each word on the board.

Extra Practice

Explain and assign Worksheet 16, Phonics Fun *short a*, page 188. (For instructions and answer key, see page 171.)

Finish the Lesson

1. **Write the Combinations.** Say a two- or three-letter combination (see Suggested Combinations below) and ask a volunteer to repeat that combination then come to the board and write it. Do the same with five to six different combinations.

Suggested Combinations: *ap, ad, ag, at, an, and, ant, ask*

2. Explain and assign Workbook page 36. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 157.)

Assessment

Explain and assign the Unit 8 Test, page 223. (For instructions and answer key, see page 207.)



9 At the Circus

Conversation Time

Language Focus: *What's wrong?/I feel sick./That's too bad.*

Function: Asking about someone's health; expressing sympathy

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities):
CD/cassette and player; Wall Chart 17

For general information on Conversation Time, see pages 8–9.

Warm-Up and Review

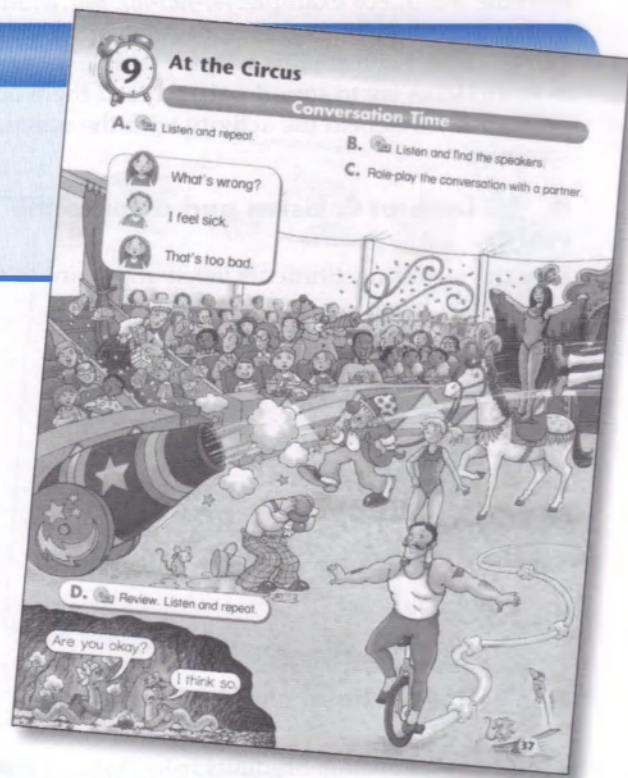
- Phonics Review: Read the Words.** Write *b* on the board and elicit /b/. Do the same with *a* and *d*. Then elicit these three sounds together and then the whole word, /b/-/æ/-/d/, *bad*. Continue in the same way with six to seven different three-letter words (see Suggested Words below).

Suggested Words: *sat, fat, dad, bat, man, ban, hat, sat, sad*

- Check Workbook page 36. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 157.)

Introduce the Conversation

- Bring two students to the front of the classroom. Stand behind each student and model his/her line(s) of the conversation with the following actions:
What's wrong? Look concerned.
I feel sick. Hold your stomach with a pained expression.
That's too bad. Look sympathetic.
- Clarify word meaning.
sick: hold your stomach with a miserable expression on your face. Say *sick*. Students repeat. Then pretend to cough and sneeze. Say *sick*. Students repeat.
- Model the conversation again, as in Step 1.
- Divide the class into Groups A and B. Model each line of the conversation again using facial expressions and body language. Group A repeats the first line of the conversation, Group B repeats line two, and so on. Encourage students to copy your facial expressions and body language. Groups then change roles and repeat the conversation again.
- Groups A and B say alternate lines of the conversation. Groups then change roles and say the conversation again. Prompt when necessary.



Talk About the Picture

CHARACTER KEY FOR TEACHER REFERENCE

Bill: In the audience, holding his stomach.

- Attach Wall Chart 17 to the board, or open a Student Book to page 37. Students then open their Student Books to page 37. Read the following "story" while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*).
This is a **circus**. Look at all the people! There's *one horse* and *three mice*. This is a **cannon**. Oh, my! Look at the **man flying from the cannon**! And here's a **man with popcorn**. I like popcorn. Oh, and poor **Bill** is *sick*. He ate too much.
- Ask the following questions while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*).
Do you like **popcorn**?
(**mouse**) Is it a horse? How many horses?
(**Bill**) Is he *happy*? Is he *sick*?
(**woman standing on horse**) Is she *standing* on a chicken? What is it?
(**man on unicycle**) Is he *riding a horse*?
(**triplets**) Can you find these three girls on any other pages? (They are on page 29.) Can you *point* to them?

Practice the Conversation

A. Listen and repeat.

Play the recording (first version of the conversation). Students listen and repeat, pointing to each speaker in the conversation box.

Bill's sister: *What's wrong?*
Bill: *I feel sick.*
Bill's sister: *That's too bad.*

B. Listen and find the speakers.

Play the recording (second version of the conversation). Students find and point to the speakers in the large scene. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

C. Role-play the conversation with a partner.

Students choose a partner and role-play the conversation. They then change roles and role-play the conversation again.

D. Review. Listen and repeat.

Volunteers try to read or guess the worms' conversation. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each speech bubble.

A: *Are you okay?*
B: *I think so.*

OPTION: Students role-play the conversation.

Find Digger's Bone

Students find Digger's bone hidden in the large scene.

Answer Key: Digger's bone is the top part of the popcorn seller's hat.

OPTION: Students find Digger's bone as above, then draw, color, and cut out a piece of clothing for themselves in the shape of a bone. For example: a hair bow or a necktie. They then wear it for the rest of the class period.

Games and Activities

1. **Back to Back.** Divide the class into pairs. Students sit with their backs to their partners, and role-play the conversation without looking at each other. Partners then change roles and repeat the activity. Once pairs have practiced both roles two to three times, pretend to sneeze and cough and elicit the conversation from the class.

2. **Which Line Is Being Pantomimed?** Bring a volunteer to the front of the classroom and have him/her silently role-play one line of the target conversation. Seated students try to guess what line the volunteer is role-playing, then say that line of conversation. The first student to guess correctly changes places with the volunteer and repeats the procedure. Do the same with six to eight new volunteers.

3. **Combine the Conversations.** Combine the Units 1, 6, and 9 conversations on the board in the following way:

A: *Hello.*
B: *Hello. How are you?*
A: *Fine, thank you. Are you okay?*
B: *No, I feel sick.*
A: *That's too bad.*

Point to and read each line. Students repeat. Bring two volunteers to the front of the classroom to role-play the conversation, with Student B pretending to be sick. Then divide the class into pairs and have pairs role-play the conversation in the same way. Students in each pair then change roles and role-play the conversation again.

Finish the Lesson

1. **Say it Together.** Pantomime not feeling well. Elicit *What's wrong?* Say *I feel sick.* Elicit *That's too bad.* Continue in the same way with three to four different volunteers pantomiming not feeling well.
2. Explain and assign Workbook page 37. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 158.)

Word Time

Language Focus: Physical descriptions (*tall, short, fat, thin, young, old*)

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities): CD/cassette and player; Wall Chart 18; 3 × 3 grids, 1 per student; Unit 9 Word Time Picture Cards, 9 cards per student; Unit 9 Word Time Word Cards, 1 card per 2 students (see Picture and Word Card Book pages 35 and 36)

For general information on Word Time, see pages 10–11.

Warm-Up and Review

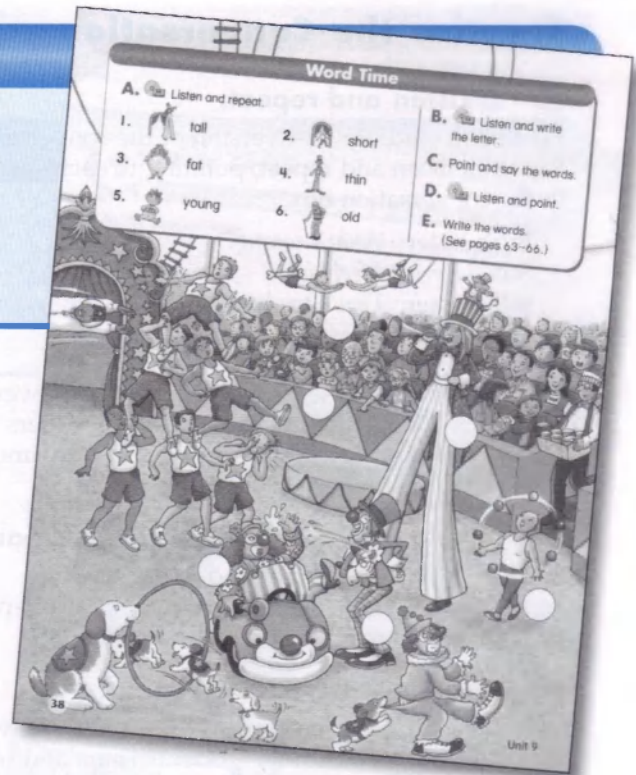
1. **Conversation Review: I Feel Sick.** As students come into class, sit at your desk with a pained expression on your face. Elicit *What's wrong?* Say *I feel sick*, and elicit *That's too bad*.
2. Check Workbook page 37. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 158.)

Introduce the Words

1. Pantomime *tall* by standing on tip-toes, stretching your body high and holding one hand high above your head. Say *tall*. Students repeat. Do the same with the remaining target vocabulary, using the following actions:
short: Bend your knees to make yourself look shorter and hold one hand down close to floor.
young: Pretend to be a very young child. For example: suck your thumb and look shy.
old: Hunch your back a little and walk shakily, as if unsteadily holding a cane.
thin: Hold in your stomach, suck in your cheeks, and move both hands down the side of your body.
fat: Stick out your belly, puff out your cheeks, and make a circle around your body with your hands.
2. Pantomime *tall* again and say *I'm _____*. Elicit *tall*. Do the same with the remaining target vocabulary.

Talk About the Picture

1. Students open their Student Books to page 38. They look at the large scene and name anything they can.
2. Attach Wall Chart 18 to the board or open a Student Book to page 38. Read the following "story" while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*).



Look at the circus. This is a very **tall** clown. This is a **short** clown. This is a **fat** clown, and this is a **thin** clown. The thin clown has a **flower**. I see **five** dogs. Uh-oh! This man is *sneezing*. Ah-choo! Next to Ted is an **old** man with a **young** baby.

3. Ask the following questions while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*).
(**short clown**) Is he *tall*?
(**tall clown**) Is she *tall*?
Who's *sneezing*? *Point*.
Can you *point* to Ted? Is he a girl?
Can you *point* to Annie? Is she *sad*?
(**dog**) What's this? How many dogs?

Practice the Words

A. Listen and repeat.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each picture in the vocabulary box.

1. *tall*
2. *short*
3. *fat*
4. *thin*
5. *young*
6. *old*

2. Say the words in random order. Students point to the pictures in the vocabulary box.

B. Listen and write the letter.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and write the letter they hear in the white circle for each vocabulary item. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

- old, old*
- young, young*
- fat, fat*
- thin, thin*
- tall, tall*
- short, short*

2. Check answers by writing the letters *a–f* on the board then having volunteers come to the board and attach the corresponding picture card next to each letter. Point to each picture card and have students name it.

C. Point and say the words.

Students point to and name each of the target vocabulary items in the large scene.

D. Listen and point.

Play the recording. Students listen to the sound effects and words. For the vocabulary, they point to the person described by that adjective; for the conversations, they point to the speakers. (References are shown in parentheses.) Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

- I'm tall.*
I'm fat.
You're young.
I'm short.
I'm old.
I'm thin.

Now listen and point to the speakers.

A: *I like hamburgers. Do you like hamburgers?*
(girl and boy in first row of audience, left-hand side)

B: *No, I don't. I like hot dogs.*

A: *Are you hungry?* (mother and boy in first row of audience, right-hand side)

B: *No, I'm not. I'm thirsty.*

E. Write the words. (See pages 63–66.)

Students turn to page 63 (*My Picture Dictionary*), find the picture of each target vocabulary item, and write the word next to it.

Find Digger's Bone

Students find Digger's bone hidden in the large scene.

Answer Key: Digger's bone is one of the trapeze bars in the background.

OPTION: Students find Digger's bone as above, then draw a picture of a clown doing a circus trick with a bone.

Extra Vocabulary.

Students turn to page 37. Introduce the extra vocabulary items *big, small, ugly, beautiful*. Students then find the circus performers in the large scene described by these adjectives.

Games and Activities

- Bingo!** (See Game 10, page 141.) Play the game using 3×3 grids and Unit 9 Word Time Picture Cards.
- Pantomime the Words.** Pantomime *fat*. Say *I'm ____*. Elicit *fat*. If students do not guess correctly the first time, continue pantomiming until students guess correctly. When students say *fat*, respond with *Yes, I'm fat*. Bring a volunteer to the front of the classroom. Whisper a target vocabulary word to him/her and have him/her pantomime the adjective. Seated students identify the adjective and the volunteer says *Yes, I'm (old)*. Continue in the same way with different volunteers, until most students have taken a turn.
- Find Your Partner: Words.** (See Game 19, page 142.) Attach the Unit 9 Word Time Picture Cards to the board. Write the corresponding word below each card. Point to each picture card and elicit its name. Then point to each picture card and the word card below it, and have students name the cards. Play the game's option, using Unit 9 Word Time Picture Cards and Word Cards.
- Option: Personalize the Picture.** Students take turns saying one or two descriptive sentences about themselves, using both Unit 9 and Unit 6 vocabulary. For example: *I'm tall. I'm happy*. Students continue until they all have taken a turn.

Finish the Lesson

- Describe It.** Sketch a picture of a giraffe, a mouse, a pig, a thin horse, a baby, and an old woman on the board. Point to each picture, say (*It's*) ____ and elicit the appropriate adjective.
- Explain and assign Workbook page 38. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 158.)

Practice Time

Language Focus: Affirmative and negative statements with adjectives; third person singular subject pronouns [(*He's*) (*short*). (*He isn't*) (*tall*).]

Function: Describing others' physical appearance

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities):

CD/cassette and player; Unit 9 Word Time Picture Cards, 1 set; Unit 9 Word Time Word Cards, 1 set per 4–5 students; Unit 9 Grammar Cards, 1 set per 4–5 students (see Picture and Word Card Book pages 35, 36, and 58)

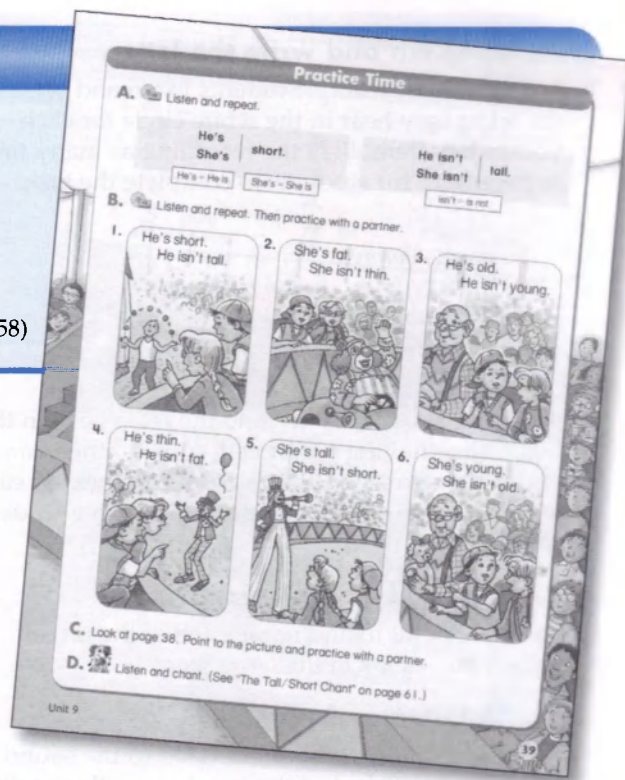
For general information on Practice Time, see pages 12–13.

Warm-Up and Review

1. **Vocabulary Review: Opposites.** Hold up each Unit 9 Word Time Picture Card and elicit its name. Then say *tall* and elicit its opposite, *short*. Do the same with *fat/thin* and *young/old*. Then have a volunteer take on the teacher's role and elicit the opposites.
2. Check Workbook page 38. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 158.)

Introduce the Patterns

1. **He's (tall).** Place the Unit 9 Word Time Picture Cards on the chalktray for reference. Bring a boy to the front of the classroom, and have him pantomime *tall*. Point to him, look at the class, and say *He's tall*, emphasizing *He's*. Seated students repeat. Write *He's tall* on the board. Point to and read each word. Seated students repeat. Do the same with *short*, *fat*, *thin*, *young*, and *old*.
2. **She's (tall).** Do the same as in Step 1, with a girl.
3. **He isn't (tall).** Bring two boy volunteers to the front of the classroom, and have one pantomime *tall* while the other pantomimes *short*. Point to the *short* boy, look at the class, shake your head, and say *He isn't tall*, emphasizing *isn't*. Seated students repeat. Then point to the *tall* boy, look at the class, shake your head, and say *He isn't short*, emphasizing *isn't*. Seated students repeat. Write *He isn't tall* on the board. Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Do the same with *fat/thin* and *young/old*.
4. **She isn't (tall).** Do the same as in Step 3, with two girls.
5. **Practice for Fluency.** Bring six volunteers to the front of the classroom and have each one pantomime a different Unit 9 adjective. Seated students take turns pointing to a volunteer and saying both the positive and negative pattern about that volunteer. For example (pointing to a girl volunteer pantomiming *young*): *She's young. She isn't old*. When both positive and negative statements have been made about all six volunteers, bring six new volunteers to the front of the classroom and do the activity again.



Practice the Patterns

Students open their Student Books to page 39.

A. Listen and repeat.

1. Write the text from the pattern boxes on the board. Play the recording, pointing to each word. Students listen.

*He's short. He isn't tall.
She's short. She isn't tall.*

2. Play the recording again. Students listen, look at the pattern boxes in their books, and repeat, pointing to each word.

3. Students try to say the patterns on their own, while looking at the pattern boxes in their books.

4. Write the explanation of the contractions on the board:

He's = He is She's = She is isn't = is not

Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Then say each pattern with the full form of the contractions. Students repeat. Students practice each pattern in the pattern box, using both the contractions and the full form of the contractions.

B. Listen and repeat. Then practice with a partner.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each picture in their books.

*1. He's short.
He isn't tall.*

2. *She's fat.*
She isn't thin.
3. *He's old.*
He isn't young.
4. *He's thin.*
He isn't fat.
5. *She's tall.*
She isn't short.
6. *She's young.*
She isn't old.

2. Play the recording again. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each word in their books.
3. Students practice numbers 1–6 in pairs. (S1 says the positive statement, and S2 says the negative statement.) They then change roles and repeat the activity.

C. Look at page 38. Point to the picture and practice with a partner.

Students remain in pairs and look at page 38. They then take turns making statements about the characters in the large scene using the new patterns and vocabulary items. For example: S1 (pointing to the tall clown): *She's tall.* S2 (pointing to the tall clown): *She isn't short.*

D. Listen and chant.

1. Students turn to *The Tall/Short Chant*, page 61. Focus their attention on the pictures. Students try to guess some of the lyrics using the pictures as cues. Read the lyrics line by line. Students repeat each line. Play the recording. Students listen and follow along in their books.

The Tall/Short Chant

<i>She's short.</i>	<i>He's tall.</i>
<i>She isn't tall.</i>	<i>He isn't short.</i>
<i>She's young.</i>	<i>He's young.</i>
<i>She isn't old.</i>	<i>He isn't old.</i>
<i>She's thin.</i>	<i>He's thin.</i>
<i>She isn't fat.</i>	<i>He isn't fat.</i>
<i>She's Annie!</i>	<i>He's Ted!</i>

2. Play the recording again. Students listen and chant, using their books for reference. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to become familiar with the chant.
3. Divide the class into Groups A and B. Play the karaoke version. Group A chants the nonindented lines and Group B chants the indented lines. Groups then change roles and chant again.

OPTION: Students chant as above, also pantomiming each adjective as they chant it.

Games and Activities

1. **Substitution.** Say *He isn't old.* Students repeat. Then say *she.* A volunteer says *She isn't old.* Then say *tall.* A different volunteer says *She isn't tall.* Say *is* and nod your head. Yet another volunteer says *She's tall.* Continue in the same way, using different pronouns and adjectives, until most students can comfortably substitute the given pronouns and adjectives.
2. **What Do You See?** Give students two minutes to quickly draw pictures of five to six people who can be described by the Unit 9 Word Time adjectives (for example: a tall man, a baby, a fat woman). Divide the class into pairs, and have students in each pair exchange pictures. Students then take turns pointing to the different people in the picture and telling one another about them using the target patterns.
3. **Make the Sentences.** (See Game 43, page 145.) Do the activity using Unit 9 Word Time Word Cards and Grammar Cards.
4. **Option: Project.** Students look through old magazines or newspapers and cut out pictures of people depicting the target adjectives. They then glue all their pictures on a large sheet of paper and label each picture. Students then show their collages to the class, pointing to each picture and saying (*He's*) (*thin*). (*He*) (*isn't*) (*fat*). Hang the collages on the wall for future reference.

Extra Practice

Explain and assign Worksheet 17, *Old or Young?*, page 190. (For instructions and answer key, see page 172.)



Finish the Lesson

1. **Guess the Card.** Hold up the *fat* card without showing the picture to students. Give students negative statement clues to help them identify the card. For example: *She isn't young. She isn't tall. She isn't short. She isn't thin. She isn't old. She's ____.* Elicit *fat*. Do the same with the remaining Unit 9 Word Time Picture Cards. A volunteer then takes on the teacher's role and gives clues.
2. Explain and assign Workbook page 39. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 158.)

Phonics Time

Sound Focus: short e (*bed, egg, pen, pet, yet*)

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities):

CD/cassette and player; 12 cards with Unit 9 Read the words... words written on them, 1 set per 4–5 students; Unit 9 Word Time Picture Cards, 1 set (see Picture and Word Card Book page 35)

For general information on Phonics Time, see pages 14–15.

Warm-Up and Review

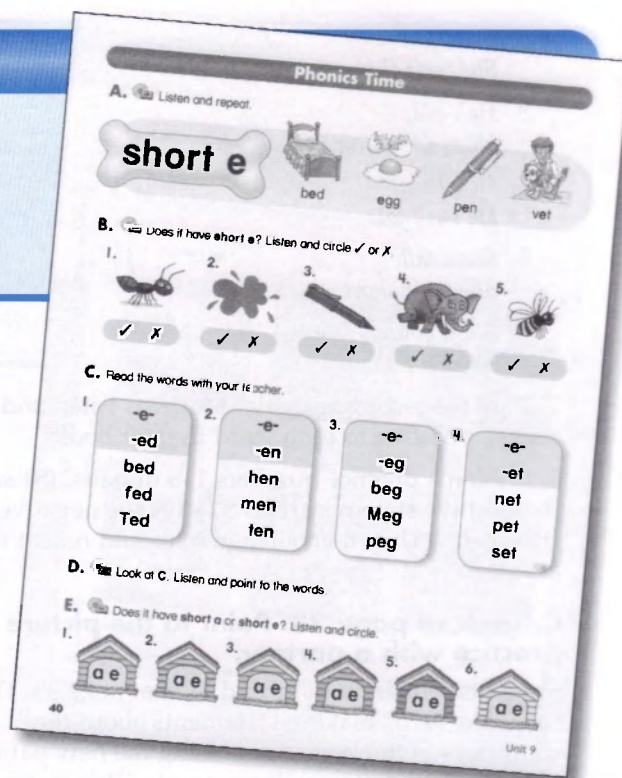
- Pattern Review: Say the Sentence.** Write *She's young. She isn't old.* on the board. Point to each word and have volunteers read it. Prompt if necessary. Then erase these two sentences and write *He* and *She* on the board. Hold the *young* picture card next to *He* and elicit *He's young. He isn't old.* Do the same with the remaining Unit 9 Word Time Picture Cards. Repeat the entire procedure for *She*.
- Check Workbook page 39. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 158.)
- Phonics Review: Two- and Three- Letter Combinations.** Write *b, p, d, t, g, m, n* in a vertical column on the board. Point to each letter and elicit its sound. Write *a* on the board and elicit /æ/. Write *a* to the left of *b*, point to both letters, and elicit *ab*. Do the same with *a* and the remaining consonants on the board. Write *t* to left of *ab* and have students read *tab*. Do the same with *t* and the remaining two-letter combinations on the board.

Introduce the Sounds

Note: The *short e* sound is written as /ɛ/.

- Hold up the *bed* picture card and say /ɛ/-/ɛ/, *bed*, stressing the /ɛ/ sound. Students repeat. Attach the card to the board. Do the same for *egg, pen, and vet*.
- Write *e* on the board. Say /ɛ/ while pointing to the letter. Students repeat. Add *d* to the right of *e* and say /ɛ/-/d/-*ed* while pointing to the two letters and then the combination. Students repeat. Then add *b* to the left of *ed* and say /b/-*ed, bed*, pointing to the two parts of the word and then the whole word. Students repeat. Do the same for *egg, pen, and vet*.

Pronunciation Note: To help with correct pronunciation of /ɛ/, have students smile very broadly and open their mouths only a little before they say this sound.



Practice the Sounds

Students open their Student Books to page 40.

Students are expected to know the meaning of only the four words at the top of the page. The remaining words they hear and see in the lesson are for the purpose of sound recognition and reading practice only. It is not necessary to teach these words as vocabulary.

A. Listen and repeat.

Focus students' attention on the *short e* words at the top of the page. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to the pictures and words in their books.

e /ɛ/
bed
egg
pen
vet

B. Does it have short e? Listen and circle ✓ or X.

1. Play the recording. Students listen to each word and circle ✓ if it has *short e*, and X if it does not. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

- ant, ant*
- red, red*
- pen, pen*
- elephant, elephant*
- bee, bee*

2. Check answers by saying *Number 1. ant*, and having students make an **X** with their arms if they circled **X**, and write **✓** in the air if they circled **✓**. Do the same for numbers 2–5.

Answer Key: 1. X 2. ✓ 3. ✓ 4. ✓ 5. X

C. Read the words with your teacher.

Write *bed* on the board. Point to, sound out, then read the word. For example: /b/-/ɛ/-/d/. *bed*. Students repeat. Do the same for the remaining words in the first column. Elicit sounds where possible. Then have students try to sound out and read the words on their own. Repeat the activity with the remaining columns.

D. Look at C. Listen and point to the words.

Play the recording. Students listen and point to the words they hear.

Meg, /m/-/ɛ/-/g/, Meg

net, /n/-/ɛ/-/t/, net

men, /m/-/ɛ/-/n/, men

bed, /b/-/ɛ/-/d/, bed

set, /s/-/ɛ/-/t/, set

fed, /f/-/ɛ/-/d/, fed

hen, /h/-/ɛ/-/n/, hen

peg, /p/-/ɛ/-/g/, peg

E. Does it have short a or short e? Listen and circle.

1. Play the recording. Students listen to each word and circle *a* if it has *short a*, and *e* if it has *short e*. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

1. *met, met*
2. *mat, mat*
3. *peck, peck*
4. *pack, pack*
5. *pan, pan*
6. *pen, pen*

2. Check answers by saying *Number 1. met*. Then have students stand up and say /ɛ/ if they circled *e*, and stay seated and say /æ/ if they circled *a*. Do the same for numbers 2–6.

Answer Key: 1. e 2. a 3. e 4. a 5. a 6. e

Games and Activities

1. **Dictation.** Students write the numbers 1–8 on a piece of paper. Sound out and say *keg*. Using their Student Books for reference if necessary, students write *keg* next to number 1 on their papers. Do the same with seven other words from **Read the words with your teacher**. Then check answers by writing each word on the board.

2. **Duck, Duck, Goose.** (See Game 51, page 146.) Play the game using *short a* and *short e*.
3. **Find and Hold Up the Card.** Divide the class into teams of four to five. Give each team identical sets of 12 cards with a different word from Units 8–9 Phonics Time Activity C (**Read the words...**) written on each card. Teams place the cards face up in the middle of the team. One by one, read each word printed on the cards. Students in each team try to be the first to find and hold up the card that corresponds to the word they hear, then say that word's vowel sound. Students holding the correct card keep it. Students holding up cards that are not correct return them to the desk face up. Continue this way until all the cards have been taken from the middle of each team. The student in each team with the most cards at the end wins.

Extra Practice

Explain and assign Worksheet 18, Phonics Fun *short e*, page 191. (For instructions and answer key, see page 172.)

Finish the Lesson

1. **Word Chant.** Create a chant in the following way (* = clap hands):

/n/ * /ɛ/ * /t/ *

/n/ * /ɛ/ * /t/ *

*What's this? ***

net

Model the chant and have students repeat. Then chant with students. Repeat the chant using six to seven different *short e* words (see Suggested Words below).

Suggested Words: *bed, peg, set, men, Ted, Meg, beg, pet, ten*

2. Explain and assign Workbook page 40. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 158.)

Assessment

Explain and assign the Unit 9 Test, page 224. (For instructions and answer key, see page 207.)



Review 3

Story Time

Review Focus: Units 7–9 conversations, vocabulary, and patterns

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities): CD/cassette and player

For general information on Story Time, see page 16.

Warm-Up

1. Review Units 7–9 Conversations, Vocabulary, and Patterns. Students turn to each Conversation Time page (pages 29, 33, and 37), Word Time page (pages 30, 34, and 38), and Practice Time page (pages 31, 35, and 39). Elicit each conversation, vocabulary item, and pattern.
2. Check Workbook page 40. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 158.)

Work with the Pictures

Students open their Student Books to page 41.

1. Divide the class into groups of three. Groups find and name any items or characters they recognize in the six scenes.
2. Ask each group how many items they found. Encourage groups to name as many items or characters as they can.
3. When groups have finished, have each group name one item, and write these items on the board. Once all the items have been listed, point to and say each word. Students repeat, pointing to those items in their books.
4. Ask the following questions while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**).

Scene 1: Is **Digger** old?
Is **Annie** tall?

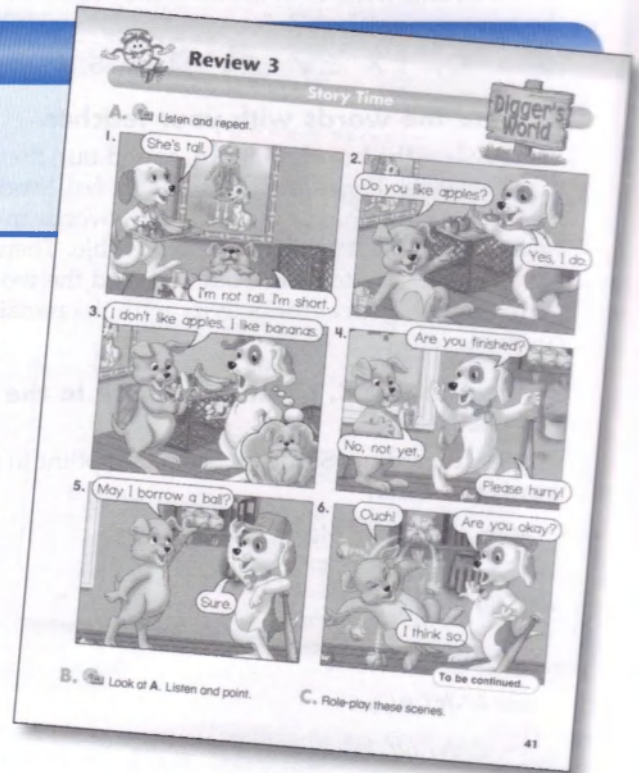
Scene 2: (**apple**) Is it a cucumber?
Does **Digger** like apples?

Scene 3: Does Max like bananas?
Is Max hungry?

Scene 4: How many **balls**?

Scene 5: How many **books**?

Scene 6: Is Max okay?



Work with the Text

1. Point to Max's speech bubble in Scene 1. A volunteer guesses what Max is saying. If he/she guesses correctly, do the same with Digger's speech bubble. If he/she does not guess correctly, ask another student.
2. Do the same with all the scenes on this page. Encourage students to look back at the Units 7–9 Conversation Time, Word Time, and Practice Time pages for support if needed.

Note: It is not necessary for students to guess the exact words of the characters. Accept their guesses as long as they convey the gist of what the character is saying.

Practice the Story

A. Listen and repeat.

1. Play the recording (first version of the story). Students listen and follow along in their books.

1. Digger: *She's tall.*
Max: *I'm not tall. I'm short.*
2. Max: *Do you like apples?*
Digger: *Yes, I do.*
3. Max: *I don't like apples. I like bananas.*

4. Digger: *Are you finished?*
Max: *No, not yet.*
Digger: *Please hurry!*
5. Max: *May I borrow a ball?*
Digger: *Sure.*
6. Max: *Ouch!*
Digger: *Are you okay?*
Max: *I think so.*

2. Play the recording again. Pause after each line, and have students repeat. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to become familiar with the story.

B. Look at A. Listen and point.

1. Play the recording (second version of the story). Students listen and follow along in their books.
2. Divide the class into pairs. Students in each pair take on the role of one of the characters (Digger or Max). Play the recording again, pausing after each line. Students repeat their character's lines. Students in each pair then change roles and do the activity again. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

C. Role-play these scenes.

1. Ask students which roles are needed to act out the scenes. List the roles on the board (*Digger, Max*).
2. Divide the class into Groups A and B. Group A role-plays Digger's lines, and Group B role-plays Max's lines. Groups then change roles and role-play the scenes again.
3. Bring a volunteer from each group to the front of the classroom. Play the recording and have these volunteers act out the story along with the recording. They then act out the story on their own, without the recording.
4. Students choose a partner and role-play the story. They then change roles and role-play the story again.

Games and Activities

1. **"Ouch!" Contest.** Volunteers come to the front of the classroom. They pretend to hurt their legs by "banging" them against a desk or chair, yelling *Ouch!* and holding their legs on the "injured" place. Ask each student *Are you okay?* Volunteers respond *I think so.* The rest of the class judges who performed the loudest and best *Ouch!* The winner then performs his/her *Ouch!* again and the rest of the class copies his/her *Ouch!*

2. **Puppets.** Each student performs the entire story for the class using the Max and Digger puppets they made in Review 1 (see page 53).
3. **Make a New Story.** Students divide a piece of paper into six equal parts and come up with their own version of the story by drawing original scenes and characters. If this is too challenging, students copy the pictures and speech bubbles from page 41. Students can also do this activity in pairs.

Finish the Lesson

1. **Listen and Pantomime.** Divide the class into groups of three, and have students in each group take on the role of one of the characters in the story. Play the recording. Students listen and pantomime their role. Repeat the procedure until each student has pantomimed each role.
2. Explain and assign Workbook page 41. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 159.)

Activity Time

Review Focus: Units 7–9 vocabulary, patterns, and sounds

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities):
CD/cassette and player; Units 7–8 Word Time Picture Cards, 1 set per 3–4 students; Unit 9 Word Time Picture Cards, 1 set (see Picture and Word Card Book pages 27, 31, and 35)

For general information on Activity Time, see page 17.

Warm-Up

- Review Units 7–9 Vocabulary, Patterns, and Sounds.** Students turn to each Word Time page (pages 30, 34, and 38), Practice Time page (pages 31, 35, and 39), and Phonics Time page (pages 32, 36, and 40). Elicit the vocabulary items, patterns, and sounds.
- Check Workbook page 41. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 159.)

Review

Students open their Student Books to page 42.

A. Listen and write ✓ or X.

1. Give each student a Unit 7–8 Word Time Picture Card. Say *dumplings*. The student(s) with the *dumplings* card holds up the card. Ask him/her *Do you like dumplings?* He/She answers *Yes, I do* or *No, I don't*. Repeat the procedure with the remaining cards.

2. Play the recording. Students listen and write ✓ next to the foods Ted likes, and X next to the foods he does not like.

Annie: *Do you like bananas, Ted?*

Ted: *No, I don't. I like oranges. And I like apples.*

Annie: *Do you like pizza?*

Ted: *No, I don't. But I like dumplings.*

Annie: *Oh! You like dumplings! Do you like sushi?*

Ted: *No, I don't. But I like hamburgers.*

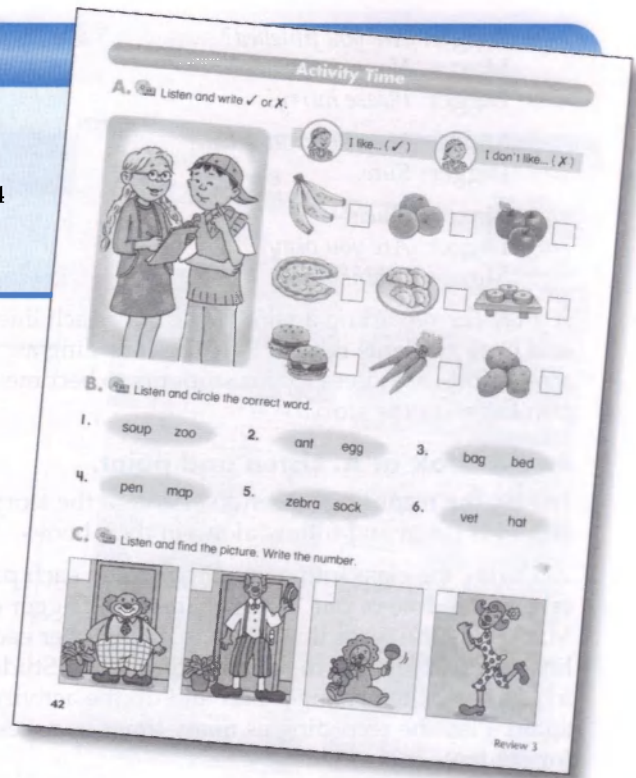
Annie: *Oh! Do you like carrots?*

Ted: *No, I don't. But I like potatoes.*

3. Check answers by saying each food item and having students nod their heads and smile if they wrote ✓ for that item, and shake their heads and frown if they wrote X.

Answer Key

bananas X	oranges ✓	apples ✓
pizza X	dumplings ✓	sushi X
hamburgers ✓	carrots X	potatoes ✓



B. Listen and circle the correct word.

1. Write *s*, *z*, *a*, and *e* on the board. Point to each letter and elicit its sound. Then play the recording. Students listen and circle each word they hear. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

- soup, soup*
- ant, ant*
- bed, bed*
- map, map*
- zebra, zebra*
- vet, vet*

2. Check answers by saying *Number 1* and having a volunteer say the word he/she circled. Do the same for numbers 2–6.

C. Listen and find the picture. Write the number.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and find the picture that corresponds to the sentences they hear. They then write that number in the space provided. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

- She's thin. She isn't fat.* [twice]
- He's tall. He isn't short.* [twice]
- She's young. She isn't old.* [twice]
- He's fat. He isn't thin.* [twice]

2. Check answers by saying *Number 1. She's thin. She isn't fat*, then having students point to the corresponding picture in their books. Do the same for numbers 2–4.

Answer Key: 4, 2, 3, 1

Games and Activities

- 1. Do You Like Noodles?** Divide the class into groups of three to four, and give each group a set of Units 7–8 Word Time Picture Cards. Groups sit in a circle and place the cards facedown in a stack in the middle of the group. A student in each group (S1) begins by taking the top card from the pile, looking at it, showing it to the student on his/her left (S2), and asking *Do you like (sushi)?* S2 answers *Yes, I do* and keeps the card, or *No, I don't* and returns the card to the bottom of the stack. S2 then takes a card from the top of the pile, and shows it to the student on his/her left (S3) in the same way. Groups continue in the same way until all the cards have been taken from the stack.
- 2. Pantomime the Adjective.** Bring three volunteers to the front of the classroom. Give each volunteer a Unit 9 Word Time Picture Card. The volunteers look at their cards without showing them to seated students, and take turns pantomiming the depicted adjective. Seated students guess the adjective that is being pantomimed, saying *(Ken) is (tall)*. If the guess is correct, *(Ken) says Yes, I'm (tall)*. If the guess is not correct, *(Ken) continues to pantomime until seated students guess correctly*. When finished, three new volunteers come to the front of the classroom and do the activity again. Continue in the same way until most students have taken a turn pantomiming.
- 3. What Other Words Have These Sounds?** Students find the 12 words in Activity B. (**Listen and circle the correct word**) in the Units 7–9 Phonics Time pages (pages 32, 36, and 40). While books are open to these pages, elicit other words with the same target sounds.

Finish the Lesson

1. Explain and assign Checklist 3 (see Student Book page 69) for students to do at home or in class.
2. Explain and assign Workbook page 42. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 159.)
3. Do Chapter 3 of Storybook 1, *Annie and the Map*. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 167.)



Around Town

Conversation Time

Language Focus: *What's your telephone number?/It's 765-1234./Pardon me?/765-1234.*

Function: Asking for someone's telephone number; asking for repetition

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities): CD/cassette and player; Wall Chart 19; a ball

For general information on Conversation Time, see pages 8–9.

Warm-Up and Review

- Phonics Review: Whisper and Write.** Bring a volunteer to the front of the classroom and whisper a *short e* word in his/her ear (see Suggested Words below). That student writes the word on the board. The rest of the class reads the word out loud. If the student has trouble writing the word, help him/her by sounding out the word. For example: /p/-/ɛ/-/n/, *pen*. Do the same with different volunteers and five to six different words.

Suggested Words: *bed, hen, beg, net, fed, men, peg, pet, ten, set*

- Check Workbook page 42. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 159.)

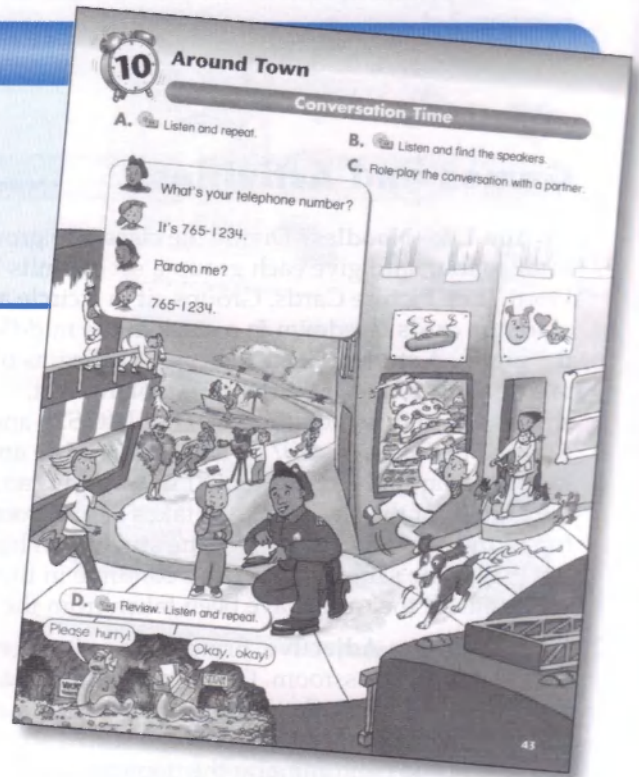
Introduce the Conversation

- Bring two students to the front of the classroom. Stand behind each student and model his/her line(s) of the conversation with the following actions:

<i>What's your telephone number?</i>	Look quizzically at the student.
<i>It's 765-1234.</i>	Lean forward a little and speak rather quickly.
<i>Pardon me?</i>	Tilt your head to one side, and cup your hand over your ear. Look slightly puzzled.
<i>765-1234.</i>	Clearly state the number again, speaking more slowly and a bit more loudly.

- Clarify word meaning.

telephone: Draw a telephone on the board. Point to it and say *telephone*. Students repeat. Write a local telephone number underneath the phone. Point to it and say *telephone number*. Students repeat.



- Model the conversation again, as in Step 1.
- Divide the class into Groups A and B. Model each line of the conversation again using facial expressions and body language. Group A repeats the first line of the conversation, Group B repeats line two, and so on. Encourage students to copy your facial expressions and body language. Groups then change roles and repeat the conversation again.
- Groups A and B say alternate lines of the conversation. Groups then change roles and say the conversation again. Prompt when necessary.

Talk About the Picture

- Attach Wall Chart 19 to the board, or open a Student Book to page 43. Students then open their Student Books to page 43. Read the following "story" while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*).

This is the town where Ted and Annie live. Look at the **trees** and **lake**. **These dogs** are *running away* from the **vet**. Uh-oh! One of the dogs *ran into* the **baker!** **This boy** is *sad*. He's *crying*. The **police officer** asks *What's your telephone number?* He's *writing* the boy's telephone number down with a **pencil**.

2. Ask the following questions while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**).

How many trees?

(**lake**) What's this?

(**crying boy**) Is he a girl? Is he happy?

(**cake**) Is it a hamburger? Do you like **cake**?

(**dog**) Is it a cat? How many dogs?

(**pencil**) Is it a pencil?

Practice the Conversation

A. Listen and repeat.

Play the recording (first version of the conversation). Students listen and repeat, pointing to each speaker in the conversation box.

Police officer: *What's your telephone number?*

Boy: *It's 765-1234.*

Police officer: *Pardon me?*

Boy: *765-1234.*

B. Listen and find the speakers.

Play the recording (second version of the conversation). Students find and point to the speakers in the large scene. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

C. Role-play the conversation with a partner.

Students choose a partner and role-play the conversation. They then change roles and role-play the conversation again.

D. Review. Listen and repeat.

Volunteers try to read or guess the worms' conversation. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each speech bubble.

A: *Please hurry!*

B: *Okay, okay!*

OPTION: Students role-play the conversation.

Find Digger's Bone

Students find Digger's bone hidden in the large scene.

Answer Key: Digger's bone is along the side of the Animal Clinic window.

OPTION: Students find Digger's bone as above, then draw, color, and cut out a dog bone to use as a microphone. Then, using the target conversation and their microphones, students ask classmates their telephone numbers.

Games and Activities

1. **Toss the Ball.** (See Game 5, page 140.) Play the game using the target conversation.
2. **What's Your Telephone Number?** Students walk around the classroom and use the target conversation to find out as many of their classmates' telephone numbers as possible. Students say their telephone numbers very quickly the first time they say them to prompt *Pardon me?* When time is up, students return to their desks. Ask *How many telephone numbers?* and have students reply (*Five*) telephone numbers.

Note: If students do not wish to give their real telephone numbers, they can use imaginary ones.

3. **Combine the Conversations.** Combine the Units 1, 5, and 10 conversations on the board in the following way:

A: *Good morning. What's your first name?*

B: *Ben.*

A: *What's your last name?*

B: *Smith.*

A: *Pardon me?*

B: *Smith.*

A: *What's your telephone number?*

B: *427-9873.*

A: *Thanks.*

Point to and read each line. Students repeat. Bring two volunteers to the front of the classroom to role-play the conversation, with Student A writing down Student B's name and telephone number when appropriate. Divide the class into pairs and have pairs role-play the conversation in the same way. Students in each pair then change roles and role-play the conversation again.

Finish the Lesson

1. **Telephone Number Chain.** Ask a student his/her telephone number. Have that student respond with his/her real or made-up telephone number then ask another student his/her telephone number. Students continue in the same way until most students have taken a turn.
2. Explain and assign Workbook page 43. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 159.)

Word Time

Language Focus: Occupations (*doctor, nurse, police officer, teacher, mail carrier, firefighter*)

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities): CD/cassette and player; Wall Chart 20; Unit 10 Word Time Picture Cards, 5–10 matching pairs of cards (see Picture and Word Card Book page 39)

For general information on Word Time, see pages 10–11.

Warm-Up and Review

1. **Conversation Review: What's Your Telephone Number?** Ask a student *What's your telephone number?* When the student replies, say *Pardon me?* The student repeats his/her telephone number. Write the telephone number on the board. Do the same with several students.
2. Check Workbook page 43. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 159.)

Introduce the Words

1. Hold up and name the Unit 10 Word Time Picture Cards one by one. Students listen. Hold up and name the cards again, and have students repeat.
2. Hold up the *doctor* picture card and say *He's a _____*. Elicit *doctor*. Then do the same with the remaining picture cards, using *She's a _____* where appropriate.

Talk About the Picture

1. Students open their Student Books to page 44. They look at the large scene and name anything they can.
2. Attach Wall Chart 20 to the board, or open a Student Book to page 44. Read the following "story" while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*).

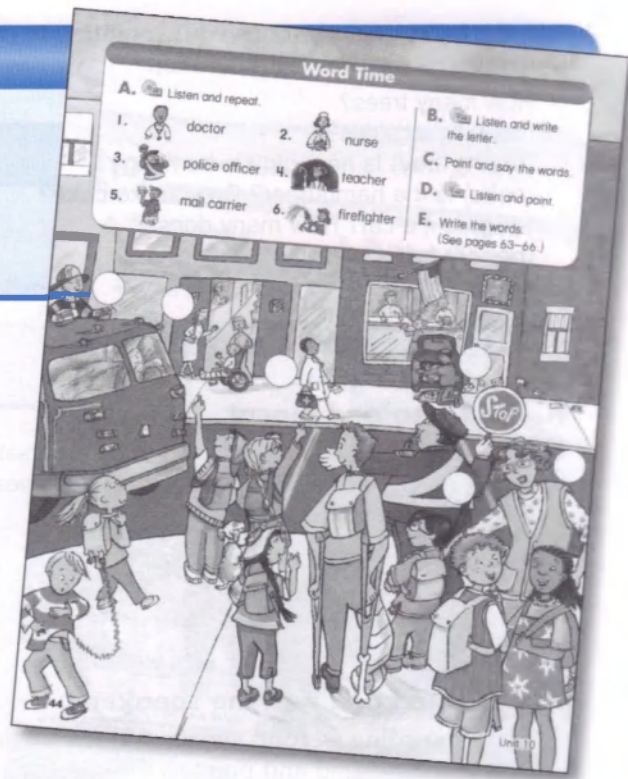
Here are **Ted**, **Annie**, and their friends. **Digger** is here, too. Annie is looking at a **doctor**. Ted is looking at a **nurse**. Over here, the **mail carrier** is *taking* letters from the **mailbox**. Here's Ted and Annie's teacher, **Ms. Apple**. This is a **police officer**. Oh, look! The **firefighter** is riding on his **truck**.

3. Ask the following questions while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**).

(**Annie**) What's her first name?

(**Ted**) What's his first name?

Can you find **Ms. Apple**, the teacher, on any other pages? (Ms. Apple is on page 19.)



(**firefighter**) Is he a mail carrier?
(**doctor**) Is he a police officer?
(**nurse**) Is she a nurse?
How many girls?
How many boys?

Practice the Words

A. Listen and repeat.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each picture in the vocabulary box.

- | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. <i>doctor</i> | 2. <i>nurse</i> |
| 3. <i>police officer</i> | 4. <i>teacher</i> |
| 5. <i>mail carrier</i> | 6. <i>firefighter</i> |

2. Say the words in random order. Students point to the pictures in the vocabulary box.

B. Listen and write the letter.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and write the letter they hear in the white circle for each vocabulary item. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

- a. *nurse, nurse*
- b. *firefighter, firefighter*
- c. *mail carrier, mail carrier*
- d. *police officer, police officer*
- e. *teacher, teacher*
- f. *doctor, doctor*

2. Check answers by writing the letters *a–f* on the board then having volunteers come to the board and attach the corresponding picture card next to each letter. Point to each picture card and have students name it.

C. Point and say the words.

Students point to and name each of the target vocabulary items in the large scene.

D. Listen and point.

Play the recording. Students listen to the sound effects and words. For vocabulary, students point to the people depicting the occupation; for the conversations, students point to the speakers. (References are shown in parentheses.) Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

I'm a police officer.

I'm a firefighter.

I'm a teacher.

I'm a doctor.

I'm a mail carrier.

I'm a nurse.

Now listen and point to the speakers.

A: *Hello, Nurse Lin. (boy in wheelchair and nurse)*

B: *Hello, James. How are you?*

A: *Fine, thank you.*

A: *Wow! He's tall. He isn't short. (girl with braids and backpack in foreground)*

E. Write the words. (See pages 63–66.)

Students turn to page 63 (*My Picture Dictionary*), find the picture of each target vocabulary item, and write the word next to it.

Find Digger's Bone

Students find Digger's bone hidden in the large scene.

Answer Key: Digger's bone is at the bottom of one of the man's crutches.

Extra Vocabulary. Students turn to page 43.

Introduce the extra vocabulary items *actor, baker, vet*.

Students then find these people in the large scene.

Games and Activities

1. **Concentration: Picture to Picture.** (See Game 11, page 141.) Play the game using Unit 10 Word Time Picture Cards.
2. **Pantomime the Action.** Divide the class into teams of four to five. One student from each team comes to the front of the classroom. Show each of these students the same Unit 10 Word Time Picture Card. They then

pantomime the occupation on the card. The first team to correctly identify the occupation their teammate is pantomiming wins a point. Students in each group take turns coming to the front of the classroom to pantomime an occupation. Continue until all students have had a chance to pantomime. The team with the most points at the end wins.

VERY SMALL CLASSES: Bring a volunteer to the front of the classroom. Give that volunteer one of the Unit 10 Word Time Picture Cards. The volunteer pantomimes the occupation on the card and seated students try to identify the occupation. The first student to guess correctly wins a point. Continue in the same way with different volunteers and picture cards until most students have taken a turn pantomiming. The student at the end with the most points wins.

3. **Hold It Up!** (See Game 24, page 143.) Play the game using Unit 10 Word Time Picture Cards.
4. **Option: Personalize the Picture.** Students choose one of the target occupations and draw themselves as that professional, including the environment in which he/she would work. Students should label their drawings *I'm a (mail carrier)*. They then take turns standing up, showing their pictures to the class, pantomiming activities of the occupation, and saying *I'm a (mail carrier)*.
5. **Option: Project.** Invite students' parents or other members of the community to class to tell students about the occupations they hear about. Students keep a list of all the occupations they hear about. Help students with English spelling if necessary. After they have heard about the different occupations, students take turns pantomiming the activities of one of these occupations. They then say *I'm a (banker)*. Seated students point to the student who has just pantomimed, look at the teacher, and say (*He's*) *a (banker)*.

Finish the Lesson

1. **Chant!** Attach the *doctor, nurse, and teacher* picture cards to the board. Create a chant in the following way (* = clap hands):

*I'm a doctor. * * **

*I'm a doctor. * * **

*doctor **

*doctor **

*doctor * * **

Model the chant and have students repeat. Chant with students, pointing to cards on the board to indicate the next occupation to be chanted.

2. Explain and assign Workbook page 44. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 160.)

Practice Time

Language Focus: Yes/No questions with 3rd person singular; subject pronouns [*Is (he) a (doctor)? Yes, (he) is./No, (he) isn't. (He's) a (nurse).*]

Function: Asking about occupations

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities):

CD/cassette and player; Unit 10 Word Time Picture Cards, 1 set per 2 students; Unit 10 Word Time Word Cards, 1 set per 4–5 students; Unit 10 Grammar Cards, 1 set per 4–5 students (see Picture and Word Card Book pages 39, 40, 58, and 59)

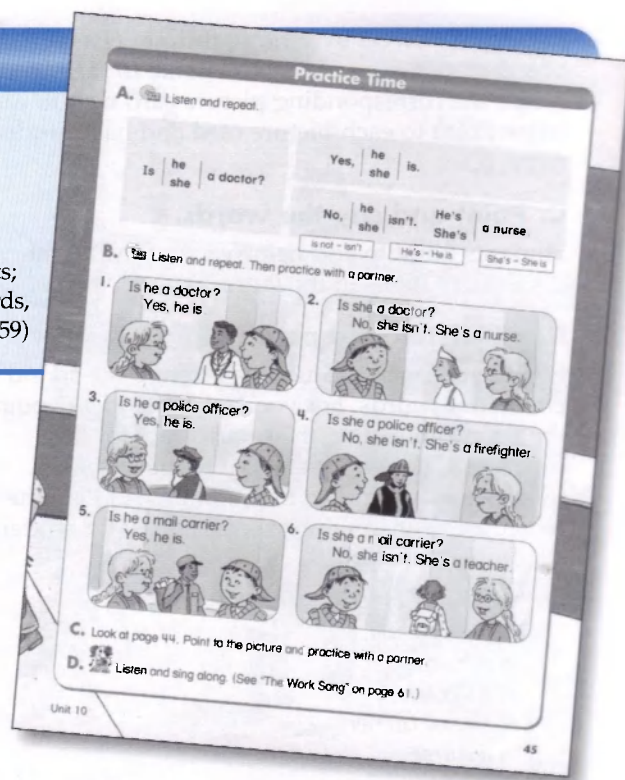
For general information on Practice Time, see pages 12–13.

Warm-Up and Review

- Vocabulary Review: Slow Reveal.** (See Game 32, page 144.) Hold up each Unit 10 Word Time Picture Card and elicit its name. Then play the game using the cards.
- Check Workbook page 44. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 160.)

Introduce the Patterns

- Is (he) a (doctor)? Yes, (he) is.** Write a big ? on the board. Hold the *doctor* picture card up with a piece of paper covering most of the picture. Point to the ? and the *doctor* card, shrug your shoulders, look quizzically at the class, and ask *Is he a doctor?* Students repeat. Write *Is he a doctor?* on the board. Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Ask the question again, slide the paper covering the picture card down to reveal more of the picture, and elicit an affirmative response such as *Yes* or a nod of students' heads. Then say *Yes, he is.* Students repeat. Write *Yes, he is.* on the board to the right of *Is he a doctor?* Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Do the same with *nurse, teacher, police officer, firefighter, and mail carrier*, using *he* or *she* as appropriate.
- Is (she) a (doctor)? No, (she) isn't. (She's) a (nurse).** Hold up the *nurse* picture card up with a piece of paper covering most of the picture. Point to the ? and the *nurse* card, shrug your shoulders, look quizzically at the class, and ask *Is she a doctor?* Students repeat. Write *Is she a doctor?* on the board. Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Ask the question again. Elicit a negative response such as *No* or a shake of students' heads. Say *No, she isn't. She's a nurse.* Students repeat. Write *No, she isn't. She's a nurse.* on the board to the right of *Is she a doctor?* Point to and read each word. Student repeat. Do the same with *doctor, teacher, police officer, firefighter, and mail carrier*, using *he* or *she* as appropriate.
- Practice for Fluency.** Bring six volunteers to the front of the classroom and give each of them a Unit 10 Word Time Picture Card. The volunteers hold these cards so seated students cannot see them. Seated



students then take turns pointing to a volunteer and asking another seated student *Is (he) a (teacher)?* The volunteer turns the card around and the seated student who was asked the question looks at the card and responds with the target pattern. Students continue in the same way until a question has been asked and answered about each volunteer. Then do the activity again with six new volunteers.

Note: Remind students that women now have jobs that were traditionally held by men, so it is not possible to tell the gender of a person solely from knowing his/her occupation.

Practice the Patterns

Students open their Student Books to page 45.

A. Listen and repeat.

1. Write the text from the pattern boxes on the board. Play the recording, pointing to each word. Students listen.

A: <i>Is he a doctor?</i>	A: <i>Is she a doctor?</i>
B: <i>Yes, he is.</i>	B: <i>Yes, she is.</i>
A: <i>Is he a doctor?</i>	A: <i>Is she a doctor?</i>
B: <i>No, he isn't.</i>	B: <i>No, she isn't.</i>
<i>He's a nurse.</i>	<i>She's a nurse.</i>

2. Play the recording again. Students listen, look at the pattern boxes in their books, and repeat, pointing to each word.

3. Students try to say the patterns on their own, while looking at the pattern boxes in their books.

4. Write the explanation of the contractions on the board:

isn't = is not He's = He is She's = She is

Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Then say each pattern with the full form of the contractions. Students repeat. Students practice each pattern in the pattern box, using both the contractions and the full form of the contractions.

B.  Listen and repeat. Then practice with a partner.


1. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each picture in their books.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>Is he a doctor?</i>
<i>Yes, he is.</i> | 2. <i>Is she a doctor?</i>
<i>No, she isn't.</i>
<i>She's a nurse.</i> |
| 3. <i>Is he a police officer?</i>
<i>Yes, he is.</i> | 4. <i>Is she a police officer?</i>
<i>No, she isn't.</i>
<i>She's a firefighter.</i> |
| 5. <i>Is he a mail carrier?</i>
<i>Yes, he is.</i> | 6. <i>Is she a mail carrier?</i>
<i>No, she isn't.</i>
<i>She's a teacher.</i> |

2. Play the recording again. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each word in their books.
3. Students practice numbers 1–6 in pairs. (S1 in each pair asks the questions, and S2 answers.) They then change roles and repeat the activity.

C. Look at page 44. Point to the picture and practice with a partner.

Students remain in pairs and look at page 44. They then take turns asking and answering questions about characters in the large scene using the new patterns and vocabulary items. For example: S1 (pointing to the police officer): *Is he a police officer?* S2: *Yes, he is.*

D.  Listen and sing along.

1. Students turn to *The Work Song*, page 61. Focus their attention on the pictures. Students try to guess some of the lyrics using the pictures as cues. Read the lyrics line by line. Students repeat each line. Play the recording. Students listen and follow along in their books.

The Work Song
(Melody: *La Cucaracha*)

<i>Is she a teacher, teacher?</i> <i>No, she isn't.</i> <i>No, she isn't.</i>	<i>Is he a mail carrier, mail carrier?</i> <i>No, he isn't.</i> <i>No he isn't.</i>
<i>Is she a police officer, police officer?</i> <i>No, she isn't.</i> <i>She's a doctor.</i>	<i>Is he a firefighter, firefighter?</i> <i>No, he isn't.</i> <i>He's a nurse.</i>

2. Play the recording again. Students listen and sing along, using their books for reference. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to become familiar with the song.

3. Divide the class into Groups A and B. Play the karaoke version. Group A sings the questions, and Group B sings the answers. For the first verse, both groups point to the picture of the doctor in their books. In the second verse, they point to the picture of the nurse. Groups then change roles and sing the song again.

Games and Activities

- I Can Guess It.** Draw a man and a woman on the board, then divide the class into pairs and give each pair a set of Unit 10 Word Time Picture Cards. Have pairs place the cards facedown in front of them. S1 in each pair picks up a card without looking at it and shows the picture to S2. To indicate if the person on the card is male or female, S2 points to either the man or the woman drawn on the board. S1 then asks S2 *Is (he) a (firefighter)?* S2 responds with the target pattern. Pairs do the same with the remaining cards. They then change roles and do the activity again.
- Guess Who.** (See Game 42, page 145.) Play the game using the target patterns.
- Make the Sentences.** (See Game 43, page 145.) Do the activity using Unit 10 Word Time Word Cards and Grammar Cards.

Extra Practice

Explain and assign Worksheet 19, Teacher or Nurse, page 192. (For instructions and answer key, see page 172.)



Finish the Lesson

- Guess the Occupation.** Bring two volunteers to the front of the classroom. One of these students (S1) whispers a Unit 10 occupation to the other student (S2), and S2 pantomimes it. Seated students identify the occupation, asking S1 *Is (she) a (police officer)?* If the guess is correct, S1 says *Yes, (she) is.* If not, S1 says *No, she isn't.* The first student to guess correctly wins a point. If no one guesses correctly after three tries, S1 says *No, (she) isn't. (She's) a (nurse).* Bring two more volunteers to the front of the classroom and do the activity again.
- Explain and assign Workbook page 45. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 160.)

Phonics Time

Sound Focus: short i (*dig, in, pin, sit*)

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities):

CD/cassette and player; 3×3 Bingo grids, 1 per student; Unit 10 Word Time Picture Cards, 1 set; *a, b, d, e, f, g, h, i, k, m, n, p, s, t, v, w,* and *z* alphabet cards, 1 set per 4–5 students; Unit 10 Phonics Time Picture Cards, 1 set (see Picture and Word Card Book pages 39, 41, and 51–54)

For general information on Phonics Time, see pages 14–15.

Warm-Up and Review

- 1. Pattern Review: Is He a Doctor?** Hold up the *doctor* picture card and ask *Is he a doctor?* Elicit *Yes, he is.* Ask *Is he a nurse?* and elicit *No, he isn't. He's a doctor.* Hold up the *nurse* picture card, ask *Is she a nurse?* and elicit *Yes, she is.* Ask *Is she a doctor?* and elicit *No, she isn't. She's a nurse.* Continue in the same way with the remaining Unit 10 Word Time Picture Cards, eliciting both positive and negative responses for each card.
- 2. Check Workbook page 45.** (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 160.)
- 3. Phonics Review: Make the Words.** Give each student either an *a, b, d, e, f, g, h, k, m, n, p, s, t, v, w,* or *z* alphabet card. Say six to eight words containing previously studied letters (see Suggested Words below). For example: *bag.* Students holding the *b, a* and *g* alphabet cards stand up, say the sounds of their alphabet cards in the order /b/-/æ/-/g/ then together say the word *bag.*

Suggested Words: *tag, men, bat, fed, mad, man, pat, pet*

Introduce the Sounds

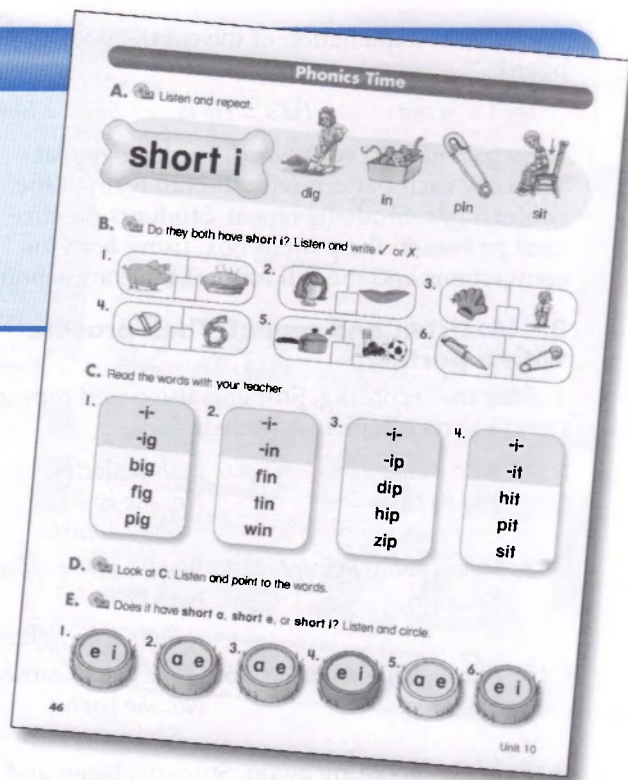
Note: The *short i* sound is written as /ɪ/.

- Hold up the *dig* picture card and say /ɪ/-/ɪ/, *dig*, stressing the /ɪ/ sound. Students repeat. Attach the card to the board. Do the same for *in, pin, sit.*
- Write *i* on the board. Say /ɪ/ while pointing to the letter. Students repeat. Add *g* to the right of *i* and say /ɪ/-/g/-*ig* while pointing to the two letters and then the combination. Students repeat. Then add *d* to the left of *i* and say /d/-*ig, dig*, pointing to the two parts of the word and then the whole word. Students repeat. Do the same for *in, pin, sit.*

Practice the Sounds

Students open their Student Books to page 46.

Students are expected to know the meaning of only the four words at the top of the page. The remaining words they hear and see in the lesson are for the



purpose of sound recognition and reading practice only. It is not necessary to teach these words as vocabulary.

A. Listen and repeat.

Focus students' attention on the *short i* words at the top of the page. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to the pictures and words in their books.

i /ɪ/
dig
in
pin
sit

B. Do they both have short i? Listen and write ✓ or X.

1. Play the recording. For each number, students listen to the words depicted in each box. If both words have *short i*, students write ✓. If the two words have different vowel sounds, they write X. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>pig, pie</i>
<i>pig, pie</i> | 2. <i>wig, lips</i>
<i>wig, lips</i> |
| 3. <i>mitt, man</i>
<i>mitt, man</i> | 4. <i>pill, six</i>
<i>pill, six</i> |
| 5. <i>lid, kick</i>
<i>lid, kick</i> | 6. <i>pen, pin</i>
<i>pen, pin</i> |

2. Check answers by saying *Number 1. pig pie*, and having a volunteer repeat the words and say *yes* if

he/she wrote ✓, and *no* if he/she wrote ✗. Do the same for numbers 2–6.

Answer Key: 1. ✗ 2. ✓ 3. ✗ 4. ✓ 5. ✓ 6. ✗

C. Read the words with your teacher.

Write *big* on the board. Point to, sound out, then read the word. For example: /b/-/ɪ/-/g/, *big*. Students repeat. Do the same for the remaining words in the first column. Elicit sounds where possible. Then have students try to sound out and read the words on their own. Repeat the activity with the remaining columns.

D. Look at C. Listen and point to the words.

Play the recording. Students listen and point to the words they hear.

fin, /f/-/ɪ/-/n/, *fin*

pig, /p/-/ɪ/-/g/, *pig*

hit, /h/-/ɪ/-/t/, *hit*

dip, /d/-/ɪ/-/p/, *dip*

sit, /s/-/ɪ/-/t/, *sit*

big, /b/-/ɪ/-/g/, *big*

win, /w/-/ɪ/-/n/, *win*

zip, /z/-/ɪ/-/p/, *zip*

E. Does it have short a, short e, or short i? Listen and circle.

1. Play the recording. Students listen to each word and circle the letter that represents its short vowel sound. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

- | | |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. <i>bit</i> , <i>bit</i> | 2. <i>bat</i> , <i>bat</i> |
| 3. <i>bet</i> , <i>bet</i> | 4. <i>met</i> , <i>met</i> |
| 5. <i>mat</i> , <i>mat</i> | 6. <i>mitt</i> , <i>mitt</i> |

2. Check answers by saying *Number 1. bit*, and having a volunteer repeat the word, say its vowel sound, and name the letter he/she circled. Do the same for numbers 2–6.

Answer Key: 1. i 2. a 3. e 4. e 5. a 6. i

Games and Activities

1. **Raise Your Hands.** Say ten to twelve words with *short a*, *short e*, or *short i* (see Suggested Words below). Students listen. When they hear a *short i* word, students raise their hands and repeat it.

Suggested Words: *set*, *pan*, *hip*, *fig*, *net*, *sit*, *tag*, *Ted*, *tin*, *hen*, *win*, *wag*, *mad*, *pig*, *Meg*

2. **Three-Letter Bingo.** Write *ad*, *ag*, *an*, *at*, *ed*, *eg*, *en*, *et*, *ig*, *in*, *ip*, *it* on the board. Point to each two-letter combination and have students read it. Give each student a 3×3 Bingo grid. They then write any nine of the two-letter combinations in their grids, one in each square.

Say a three-letter word that includes one of these combinations (see Suggested Words below). For example: *beg*. Students with *eg* in their grids repeat the word, say its vowel sound, then check *eg* off. Do the same with ten to twelve different words. The first student to check off three squares in a row (vertically, horizontally, or diagonally) calls out *Bingo!* and wins that round. Students exchange grids and play again as above.

Suggested Words: *beg*, *wig*, *zig*, *bad*, *tan*, *Ted*, *zip*, *hen*, *sag*, *met*, *sin*, *set*, *bit*, *fat*

3. **Spell the Words.** Divide the class into teams of four to five and give each team a set of *a*, *b*, *d*, *e*, *f*, *g*, *h*, *i*, *k*, *m*, *n*, *p*, *s*, *t*, *v*, *w* and *z* alphabet cards. Say a word with either *short a*, *short e*, or *short i* (see Suggested Words below). Teams try to be the first to spell that word with their cards and raise their hands. A volunteer from the team that first spells the word then comes to the board and writes the word. If the spelling is correct, the team wins a point. If the spelling is not correct, another team corrects the spelling on the board and wins a point. Do the same with ten to twelve different words. The team with the most points at the end wins.

Suggested Words: *bad*, *bed*, *pin*, *pit*, *keg*, *mag*, *met*, *set*, *bat*, *dad*, *ten*, *win*, *hat*, *van*, *fan*, *zip*

Extra Practice

Explain and assign Worksheet 20, *Phonics Fun short i*, page 193. (For instructions and answer key, see page 172.)

Finish the Lesson

1. **Chant.** Write *dig*, *in*, *pin*, *sit* on the board. Point to each word and have students sound it out. Establish a four-beat rhythm. Point to *dig*, and on beats one and two, ask *What's this?* Students respond *dig dig* on beats three and four. Do the same with the remaining words on the board. Continue in the same way, pointing to the words in random order, until students can comfortably read each word while keeping the rhythm.
2. Explain and assign Workbook page 46. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 160.)

Assessment

Explain and assign the Unit 10 Test, page 225. (For instructions and answer key, see page 208.)



11 In Annie's Yard

Conversation Time

Language Focus: *Dad, this is my friend, Sam./Nice to meet you, Sam./Hello.*

Function: Introducing others; meeting someone politely

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities):
CD/cassette and player; Wall Chart 21; Unit 10 Phonics Time Word Cards, 1 set (see Picture and Word Card Book page 42)

For general information on Conversation Time, see pages 8–9.

Warm-Up and Review

- Phonics Review: Read the Words.** Write *i* on the board. Point to it and elicit its sound. Then write five short *i* words on the board (see Suggested Words below). Point to each word and have students read it.
Suggested Words: *sit, him, bid, pig, win*
- Check Workbook page 46. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 160.)

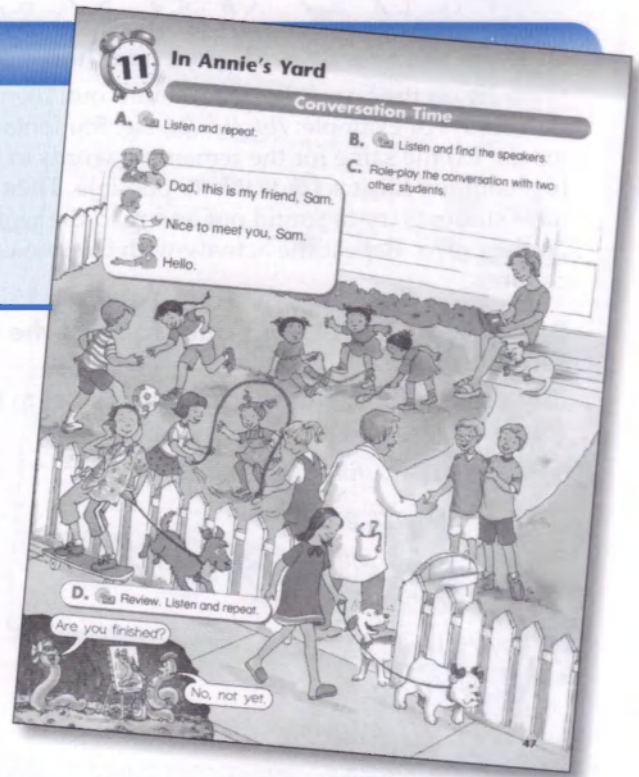
Introduce the Conversation

- Bring three students to the front of the classroom. Stand behind each student and model his/her line of the conversation with the following actions:

<i>Dad, this is my friend, Sam.</i>	Smile, look at "Dad," and hold your arm out, palm up, to "Sam."
<i>Nice to meet you, Sam.</i>	Smile and extend your arm towards "Sam" to shake hands.
<i>Hello.</i>	Smile and shake hands with "Dad."
- Clarify word meaning.

dad: Sketch a family on the board, point to the father, and say *dad*. Students repeat.

friend: On the board, sketch two children playing together. Point to them and say *friends*. Students repeat.
- Model the conversation again, as in Step 1.
- Divide the class into Groups A, B, and C. Model each line of the conversation again using facial expressions and body language. Group A repeats the first line of the conversation, Group B repeats line two, and Group C repeats line three. Encourage students to copy your facial expressions and body language. Groups then change roles and repeat the conversation again.



- Groups A, B, and C say the appropriate lines of the conversation. Groups then change roles and say the conversation again. Continue until each group has taken on each role. Prompt when necessary.

Talk About the Picture

- Attach Wall Chart 21 to the board, or open a Student Book to page 47. Students then open their Student Books to page 47. Read the following "story" while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*).

This is Annie's house. **These children** are playing in the **yard**. **Annie's father** is *shaking hands* with **Sam**. **Annie's mother** is *reading a book*. Her **cat** is *sitting* beside her. I see **three dogs**, too. **This one** looks *angry*. The **triplets** *can't jump rope*. **These girls** *can jump rope*. They're *happy*.
- Ask the following questions while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**).

How many **dogs**? Do you like dogs?
(cat) What's this? Do you like cats?
 How many girls?
(Sam) What's his first name?
(book) Is it a pencil case?

Practice the Conversation

A. Listen and repeat.

Play the recording (first version of the conversation). Students listen and repeat, pointing to each speaker in the conversation box.

Annie's brother: *Dad, this is my friend, Sam.*
Annie's father: *Nice to meet you, Sam.*
Sam: *Hello.*

B. Listen and find the speakers.

Play the recording (second version of the conversation). Students find and point to the speakers in the large scene. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

C. Role-play the conversation with two other students.

Divide the class into groups of three, and have students in each group role-play the conversation. They then switch roles and role-play the conversation again. Groups continue until each student has taken on each role.

D. Review. Listen and repeat.

Volunteers try to read or guess the worms' conversation. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each speech bubble.

A: *Are you finished?*
B: *No, not yet.*

OPTION: Students role-play the conversation.

Find Digger's Bone

Students find Digger's bone hidden in the large scene.

Answer Key: Digger's bone is one of the slats in the fence around Annie's yard.

OPTION: Students find Digger's bone as above, then draw their own home, hiding a bone in the picture. They give their pictures to a classmate sitting nearby and have him/her find the bone.

Games and Activities

1. **Listen and Act.** (See Game 1, page 140.) Play the game using the target conversation.
2. **Introductions.** Each student writes his/her name on a piece of paper. Collect the papers and place them face down on a desk at the front of the classroom. Bring a volunteer to the front of the classroom. The volunteer takes two of the pieces of paper, reads the names on them, and then introduces those two students to each

other. If the volunteer picks up a piece of paper with his/her own name, he/she returns it to the desk and picks up another one. Students continue until they all have taken a turn coming to the front of the classroom.

LARGE CLASSES: Divide the class into groups of five to six and have each group do the activity as above.

3. **Combine the Conversations.** Combine the Units 1, 2, and 11 conversations on the board in the following way:

A: *Kim, this is my friend, Ben.*
B: *Nice to meet you, Ben.*
C: *Hello.*
B: *Hi. How are you?*
C: *Fine, thank you.*
A: *Ah-choo!*
B: *Bless you.*
A: *Thanks.*

Point to and read each line. Students repeat. Bring three volunteers to the front of the classroom to role-play the conversation. Then divide the class into groups of three and have each group role-play the conversation in the same way. Students in each group then change roles and role-play the conversation again. Groups continue until each student has taken on each role.

Finish the Lesson

1. **Introduce "New" Students to the Class.** Students choose new names. Go to a student and have him/her whisper his/her new name to you. Introduce the student to the class by saying *Class, this is (Jan)*. The class responds *Nice to meet you, (Jan)* and (Jan) replies *Hello*. Repeat the activity with several different students. Volunteers then take on the teacher's role and introduce different students to the class.
2. **Explain and assign Workbook page 47.** (For instructions, see Teacher's Book pages 160–161.)

Word Time

Language Focus: Actions (*ride a bike, climb a tree, drive a car, draw a picture, play basketball, sing a song*)

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities): CD/cassette and player; Wall Chart 22; Unit 11 Word Time Picture Cards, 1 set per 2 students (see Picture and Word Card Book page 43)

For general information on Word Time, see pages 10–11.

Warm-Up and Review

1. **Conversation Review: Introductions.** Four pairs of volunteers come to the front of the classroom. One student in each pair chooses a new name and whispers it to his/her partner. His/Her partner introduces him/her to the class saying *This is my friend, (Bill)*. The class responds *Nice to meet you, (Bill)*, and (Bill) says *Hello*. The next pair of volunteers then does the same. Continue until all pairs have taken a turn.
2. Check Workbook page 47. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book pages 160–161.)

Introduce the Words

1. Pantomime *ride a bike* by moving around the classroom with bent knees, pretending to hold the handlebars and ring a bell. Say *ride a bike*. Do the same with the remaining target vocabulary (using the below actions). Then pantomime and name each action again and have students repeat.

climb a tree: Lift one leg and arm, then lift the other arm and leg as if climbing up branches of a tree.

drive a car: Pretend to press an accelerator with your foot, hold a steering wheel, and change gears.

draw a picture: Draw a picture on the board.

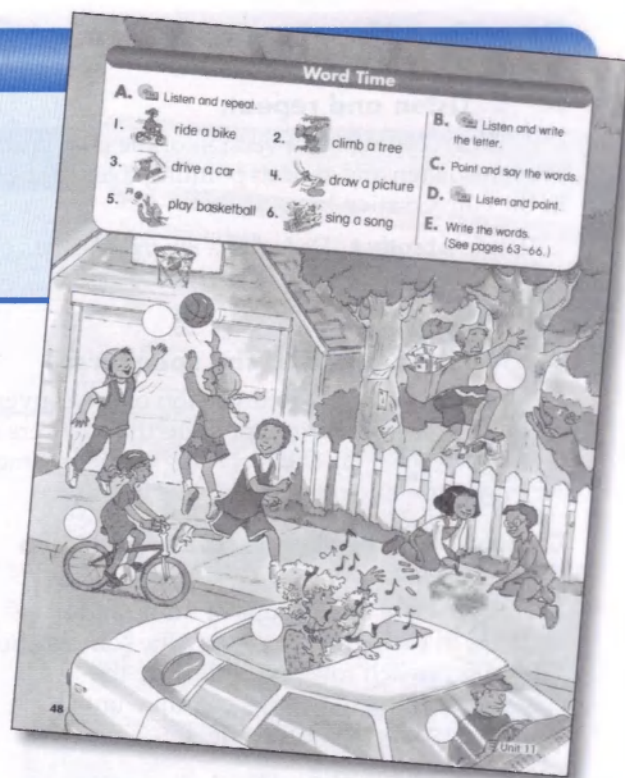
play basketball: Pretend to dribble a basketball and then shoot a basket.

sing a song: Pretend to hold a microphone and sing.

2. Hold up each Unit 11 Word Time Picture Card and elicit its name.

Talk About the Picture

1. Students open their Student Books to page 48. They look at the large scene and name anything they can.
2. Attach Wall Chart 22 to the board, or open a Student Book to page 48. Read the following "story" while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*).



Look at the **mail carrier**! What's wrong? Oh, the dog made him *climb the tree*. **Bill** is *running*. **Kim** is *riding a bike*. **Annie** and **Ted** are *playing basketball*. **Ivy** and **Mike** are *drawing a picture*. And what's this woman doing? She's *singing a song*.

3. Ask the following questions while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*).

(**girl on bike**) Is she riding a bike?

(**mail carrier**) Is he a firefighter? Is he *happy*?

(**Annie**) Is she a doctor?

(**Ted**) Is he *fat*?

Do you like to *play basketball*?

Do you like to *ride a bike*?

Practice the Words

A. Listen and repeat.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each picture in the vocabulary box.

1. *ride a bike*

2. *climb a tree*

3. *drive a car*

4. *draw a picture*

5. *play basketball*

6. *sing a song*

2. Say the phrases in random order. Students point to the pictures in the vocabulary box.

B. Listen and write the letter.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and write the letter they hear in the white circle for each vocabulary item. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

- drive a car, drive a car
- climb a tree, climb a tree
- ride a bike, ride a bike
- draw a picture, draw a picture
- sing a song, sing a song
- play basketball, play basketball

2. Check answers by writing the letters *a–f* on the board then having volunteers come to the board and attach the corresponding picture card next to each letter. Point to each picture card and have students name it.

C. Point and say the words.

Students point to and name each of the target vocabulary items in the large scene.

D. Listen and point.

Play the recording. Students listen to the sound effects and words. For vocabulary, they point to the person doing that action; for the conversations, they point to the speakers. (References are shown in parentheses.) Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

Sing a song.
Play basketball.
Drive a car.
Ride a bike.
Draw a picture.
Climb a tree.

Now listen and point to the speakers.

- A: *What's this?* (boy and girl drawing picture)
 B: *It's a tree.*
- A: *Phew! I'm hot. Are you hot?* (girl riding bike and boy beside her)
 B: *Yes, I am.*

E. Write the words. (See pages 63–66.)

Students turn to page 63 (*My Picture Dictionary*), find the picture of each target vocabulary item, and write the word next to it.

Find Digger's Bone

Students find Digger's bone hidden in the large scene.

Answer Key: Digger's bone is part of the handlebars on the bicycle that Kim is riding.

OPTION: Students find Digger's bone as above, then draw, color, and cut out a bone. They take turns using the bone as a prop to pantomime a target action, then have their classmates guess the action.

Extra Vocabulary. Students turn to page 47. Introduce the extra vocabulary items *play soccer*, *jump rope*, *read a book*. Students then find the people doing these actions in the large scene.

Games and Activities

- Run and Find.** (See Game 31, page 144.) Play the game using two sets of Unit 11 Word Time Picture Cards.
- Act It Out.** Divide the class into pairs and give each pair a set of Unit 11 Word Time Picture Cards. Pairs place the cards facedown between them. One student in each pair (S1) picks up a card without looking at it and shows it to his/her partner (S2). S2 pantomimes the action on the card. S1 tries to name the action. S2 continues pantomiming until S1 correctly names the action. S2 then chooses a card and takes a turn guessing. When they have named all their cards, students in each pair shuffle their cards, and do the activity again.
- Call Out the Action and Pantomime.** Divide the class into teams of three to four, and have the teams go to the back of the classroom. Place the Unit 11 Word Time Picture Cards face down on a desk at the front of the classroom. One student from each team comes to the front of the classroom, picks up one of the cards and calls out the action. His/Her teammates pantomime the action. The first team to have all its members correctly pantomime the action wins a point. Another member from each team then comes to the front of the classroom and chooses a card to pantomime. Students continue in the same way until they all have come to the front of the classroom. The team with the most points at the end wins.
VERY SMALL CLASSES: A volunteer comes to the front of the classroom, picks a card, and calls out the action. The first student to pantomime the action correctly wins a point. The student with the most points at the end wins.
- Option: Personalize the Picture.** Divide the class into groups of three to four. Give each group a large piece of paper and crayons or markers. Members of each group work together drawing the teacher and themselves in the playground doing the Unit 11 actions. Students label the actions on the picture. Groups then hold up their pictures, and each student names the activity he/she is doing. Display the pictures on the wall for future review.

Finish the Lesson

- Pantomime the Actions.** Say *ride a bike* and have students pantomime riding a bike. Do the same with the remaining Unit 11 Word Time actions, gradually increasing the speed at which the actions are called out. Then add students' names before the actions and have individual students pantomime. For example: *Joe, sing a song*. Volunteers then take on the teacher's role and give the commands to other students.
- Explain and assign Workbook page 48. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 161.)

Practice Time

Language Focus: Affirmative and negative statements with *can*; subject pronouns [(*I can (climb a tree).*)/(*I can't (ride a bike).*)]

Function: Expressing ability and inability

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities):

CD/cassette and player; Unit 11 Word Time Picture Cards, 1 set; Unit 2 Word Time Picture Card *bird*; Unit 3 Word Time Picture Card *cat*; Unit 11 Word Time Word Cards, 1 set per 4–5 students; Unit 11 Grammar Cards, 1 set per 4–5 students (see Picture and Word Card Book pages 5, 9, 43, 44, and 59)

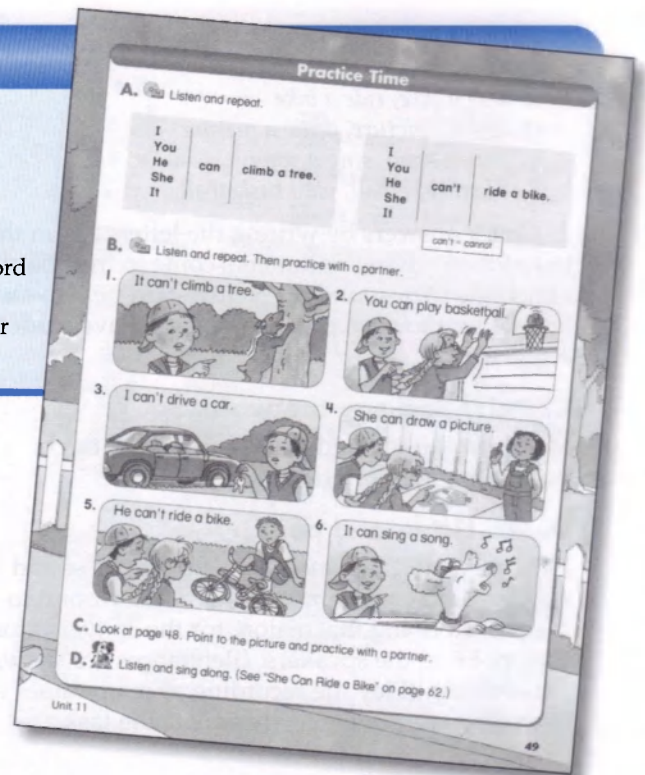
For general information on Practice Time, see pages 12–13.

Warm-Up and Review

- Vocabulary Review: Pantomime.** Hold up each Unit 11 Word Time Picture Card and elicit its name. Then show a volunteer the *ride a bike* picture card. That volunteer says *ride a bike*. The rest of the class pantomimes riding a bike. Repeat the activity with the remaining Unit 11 Word Time Picture Cards, having a different volunteer name the card each time.
- Check Workbook page 48. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 161.)

Introduce the Patterns

- I can/can't (ride a bike).** Pantomime riding a bike. Point to yourself and happily say *I can ride a bike*. Students repeat. Write *I can ride a bike*. on the board. Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Then pantomime trying to ride a bike and falling off the bike. Look sad, shake your head, and say *I can't ride a bike*. Write *I can't ride a bike*. on the board. Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Do the same with *climb a tree*, *drive a car*, *draw a picture*, *play basketball*, and *sing a song*.
- You can/can't (ride a bike).** Do the same as in Step 1, having a volunteer come to the front of the classroom to pantomime the actions. Point to and look at the volunteer when making the target statements.
- He can/can't (ride a bike).** Do the same as in Step 1, having a boy come to the front of the classroom to pantomime the actions. Point to the boy and look at the class when making the target statements.
- She can/can't (ride a bike).** Do the same as in Step 1, having a girl come to the front of the classroom to pantomime the actions. Point to the girl and look at the class when making the target statements.
- It can/can't (ride a bike).** Hold up the Unit 3 Word Time Picture Card *cat*. Point to the card while looking at the class and say *It can climb a tree*. Students repeat. Write *It can climb a tree*. on the board. Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Then say *It can't ride*



a bike. Students repeat. Write *It can't ride a bike*. on the board. Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Practice *can't* sentences with *drive a car*, *draw a picture*, *play basketball*, and *sing a song*.

- Practice for Fluency.** Write *I*, *You*, *He*, *She*, and *It* in a vertical column on the board. Write *can* and *can't* in a column to the right of the pronouns. Point to one of the pronouns, *can* or *can't*, then hold up a Unit 11 Word Time Picture Card to the right of *can/can't*. Elicit the target sentence. For example: point to *He* and *can't*, then hold up the *drive a car* picture card. Elicit *He can't drive a car*. Elicit sentences in the same way for three to five minutes.

Practice the Patterns

Students open their Student Books to page 49.

A. Listen and repeat.

- Write the text from the pattern boxes on the board. Play the recording, pointing to each word. Students listen.

I can climb a tree.
You can climb a tree.
He can climb a tree.
She can climb a tree.
It can climb a tree.

I can't ride a bike.
You can't ride a bike.
He can't ride a bike.
She can't ride a bike.
It can't ride a bike.

2. Play the recording again. Students listen, look at the pattern boxes in their books, and repeat, pointing to each word.
3. Students try to say the patterns on their own, while looking at the pattern boxes in their books.
4. Write the explanation of the contraction on the board:

can't = cannot

Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Then say each pattern with the full form of the contraction. Students repeat. Students practice each pattern in the pattern box, using both the contraction and the full form of the contraction.

B. Listen and repeat. Then practice with a partner.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each picture in their books.
 1. *It can't climb a tree.*
 2. *You can play basketball.*
 3. *I can't drive a car.*
 4. *She can draw a picture.*
 5. *He can't ride a bike.*
 6. *It can sing a song.*
2. Play the recording again. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each word in their books.
3. Students practice numbers 1–6 in pairs. They then change pairs and repeat the activity.

C. Look at page 48. Point to the picture and practice with a partner.

Students remain in pairs and look at page 48. They then take turns making statements about the characters in the large scene using the new patterns and vocabulary items. For example: S1 (pointing to the mail carrier): *He can climb a tree.* S2 (pointing to Annie): *She can play basketball.*

D. Listen and sing along.

1. Students turn to the Unit 11 song *She Can Ride a Bike*, page 62. Focus their attention on the pictures. Students try to guess some of the lyrics using the pictures as cues. Read the lyrics line by line. Students repeat each line. Play the recording. Students listen and follow along in their books.

She Can Ride a Bike

(Melody: *The Farmer in the Dell*)

<i>She can ride a bike.</i>	<i>She can drive a car.</i>
<i>She can ride a bike.</i>	<i>She can drive a car.</i>
<i>She can't play basketball.</i>	<i>She can't play basketball.</i>
<i>She can ride a bike.</i>	<i>She can drive a car.</i>
<i>He can climb a tree.</i>	<i>He can sing a song.</i>
<i>He can climb a tree.</i>	<i>He can sing a song.</i>
<i>He can't play basketball.</i>	<i>He can't play basketball.</i>
<i>He can climb a tree.</i>	<i>He can sing a song.</i>

2. Play the recording again. Students listen and sing along, using their books for reference. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to become familiar with the song.

3. Divide the class into Groups A and B, one group of girls and the other of boys. Play the karaoke version. The girls sing the *He* verses and the boys sing the *She* verses, with both groups nodding their heads when they sing *can* and shaking their heads when they sing *can't*. The girls pantomime *ride a bike* and *drive a car* as the boys sing those lines, and the boys pantomime *climb a tree* and *sing a song* as the girls sing those lines.

Games and Activities

1. **Substitution.** Say *He can draw a picture*. Students repeat. Then say *she*. A volunteer says *She can draw a picture*. Then say *climb a tree*. A different volunteer says *She can climb a tree*. Say *can't*. Yet another volunteer says *She can't climb a tree*. Continue in the same way, until students can comfortably substitute the new components.
2. **Talk About Your Group.** Divide the class into groups of four to five, making sure there are both boys and girls in each group. Give a *bird* picture card to one student in each group to designate him/her to be a bird. One student in each group (S1) begins by pantomiming a Unit 11 action and saying *I can (drive a car)*. Another student in the group points to and looks at S1 and says *You can (drive a car)*. A different student points to S1, looks at the other students in the group, and says *(He) can (drive a car)*. Students in each group then take turns pantomiming different Unit 11 actions in the same way, making sure to do some actions badly to elicit *can't* sentences. Groups continue in the same way for five to seven minutes.
3. **Make the Sentences.** (See Game 43, page 145.) Do the activity using Unit 11 Word Time Word Cards and Grammar Cards.

Extra Practice

Explain and assign Worksheet 21, *Play a Game!*, page 194. (For instructions and answer key, see page 173.)



Finish the Lesson

1. **Pantomime and Elicit.** Pantomime *draw a picture*. Point to yourself and say *I can draw a picture*. Elicit both *You can draw a picture* and *(She) can draw a picture*. Do the same with the remaining Unit 11 actions, eliciting both *can* and *can't* sentences. Then have a volunteer come to the front of the classroom to take on the teacher's role and pantomime.
2. Explain and assign Workbook page 49. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 161.)

Phonics Time

Sound Focus: short o (*hot, mop, on, pot*)

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities):

CD/cassette and player; *a, b, d, e, h, i, m, n, o, p, s,* and *t* alphabet cards, 1 set per 3 students; *short a, short e, short i* and *short o* cards, 1 set per student; Unit 11 Phonics Time Picture Cards, 1 set (see Picture and Word Card Book pages 34, 38, 42, 45, 46, and 51–54)

For general information on Phonics Time, see pages 14–15.

Warm-Up and Review

- Pattern Review: Sing Along.** Play the recording of the Unit 11 song *She Can Ride a Bike*. Students listen. Play the recording again and have students sing along.
- Check Workbook page 49. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 161.)
- Phonics Review: Say the Word With a Different Sound.** Write *short a, short e,* and *short i* on the board. Point to each letter and elicit its sound. Then say three words, two with the same short vowel sound, and one with a different short vowel sound (see Suggested Words below). Students name the word with the different vowel sound. Do this with five to six different groups of words.

Suggested Words: *sit, set, sin; ten, top, Ted; mitt, mat, map; kid, keg, kin; bed, Ben, bit; bag, beg, bet; fat, fad, fed*

Introduce the Sounds

Note: The *short o* sound is written as /a/.

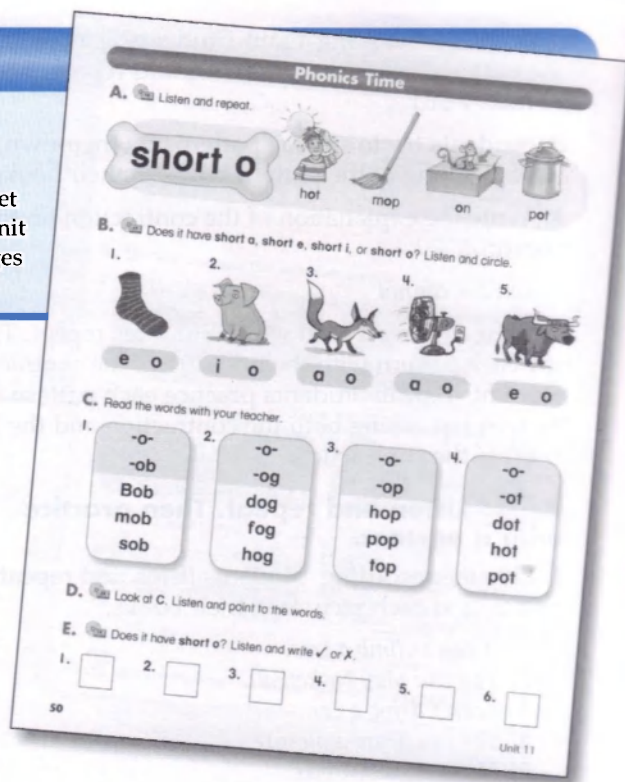
- Hold up the *hot* picture card and say /a/-/a/, *hot*, stressing the /a/ sound. Students repeat. Attach the card to the board. Do the same for *mop, on, pot*.
- Write *o* on the board. Say /a/ while pointing to the letter. Students repeat. Add *t* to the right of *o* and say /a/-/t/-ot while pointing to the two letters and then the combination. Students repeat. Then add *h* to the left of *o* and say /h/-ot, *hot*, pointing to the two parts of the word and then the whole word. Students repeat. Do the same for *mop, on, pot*.

Pronunciation Note: When students say /a/, have them open their mouths very wide, as if yawning.

Practice the Sounds

Students open their Student Books to page 50.

Students are expected to know the meaning of only the four words at the top of the page. The remaining words they hear and see in the lesson are for the purpose of sound recognition and reading practice only. It is not necessary to teach these words as vocabulary.



A. Listen and repeat.

Focus students' attention on the *short o* words at the top of the page. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to the pictures and words in their books.

*o /a/
hot
mop
on
pot*

B. Does it have short a, short e, short i, or short o? Listen and circle.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and circle the letter that represents the short vowel sound they hear in each word. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

- sock, sock*
- pig, pig*
- fox, fox*
- fan, fan*
- ox, ox*

2. Check answers by saying *Number 1. sock*, and having a volunteer say that word's vowel sound and name the letter he/she circled. Do the same for numbers 2–5.

Answer Key: 1. o 2. i 3. o 4. a 5. o

C. Read the words with your teacher.

Write *Bob* on the board. Point to, sound out, then read the word. For example: /b/-/ā/-/b/, *Bob*. Students repeat. Do the same for the remaining words in the first column. Elicit sounds where possible. Then have students try to sound out then read the words on their own. Repeat the activity with the remaining columns.

D. Look at C. Listen and point to the words.

Play the recording. Students listen and point to the words they hear.

fog, /f/-/ā/-/g/, *fog*
pot, /p/-/ā/-/t/, *pot*
mob, /m/-/ā/-/b/, *mob*
top, /t/-/ā/-/p/, *top*
Bob, /b/-/ā/-/b/, *Bob*
dog, /d/-/ā/-/g/, *dog*
hop, /h/-/ā/-/p/, *hop*
dot, /d/-/ā/-/t/, *dot*

E. Does it have short o? Listen and write ✓ or X.

1. Play the recording. Students listen to each word and write ✓ if it has *short o*, and X if it does not. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

- | | |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. <i>ten</i> , <i>ten</i> | 2. <i>pot</i> , <i>pot</i> |
| 3. <i>hit</i> , <i>hit</i> | 4. <i>cat</i> , <i>cat</i> |
| 5. <i>hop</i> , <i>hop</i> | 6. <i>pod</i> , <i>pod</i> |

2. Check answers by saying *Number 1. ten*, and having students repeat the word, say its vowel sound, and make an X with their arms if they wrote X, and write ✓ in the air if they wrote ✓.

Answer Key: 1. X 2. ✓ 3. X 4. X 5. ✓ 6. ✓

Games and Activities

1. **Say the Sound, Make the Word, and Write It.** Divide the class into groups of three. Give each group *b*, *d*, *h*, *m*, *n*, *o*, *p*, *s* and *t* alphabet cards. Say any three-letter word made up of those letters (see Suggested Words below). For example: *hot*. Students in each group find their *h*, *o*, and *t* alphabet cards. They each hold one card, and stand in a row to make the word. Each student says the sound of his/her letter /h/-/ā/-/t/, then together say the whole word *hot*, and write *hot* on the board. Do the same with five to six different words.

Suggested Words: *hot*, *pod*, *top*, *dot*, *mod*, *hob*, *pot*, *sob*

2. **Pass the Sounds.** Divide the class into teams of six to seven, and have each team form a line. Give the first student in each line (S1) *short a*, *short e*, *short i*, and

short o cards. Whisper a word with one of these short vowels to the last student in each line (see Suggested Words below). These students whisper the word to the student standing in front of them, who whispers the word to the student standing in front of him/her, and so on down the line. When it reaches S1, he/she says the word and its vowel sound out loud, then holds up the alphabet card that corresponds with that word's vowel sound. If S1 is correct, he/she wins a point for his/her team. If S1 is not correct, his/her teammates correct him/her. The last student in each line then goes to the front of the line. Continue doing the activity in the same way until all students have had a turn at the front of the line. The team with the most points at the end wins.

Suggested Words: *pen*, *got*, *set*, *bad*, *ham*, *tip*, *hop*, *fin*

3. **Make a List.** Students draw four columns on a sheet of paper and label one column *short a*, another *short e*, another *short i*, and another *short o*. Sound out and say a word with any of these short vowel sounds (see Suggested Words below). Students repeat the word and write it in the column that corresponds with that word's vowel sound. Do the same with eight to ten different words. At the end, point to each word and have students read it. Check answers by writing *short a*, *short e*, *short i*, and *short o* on the board, then having a volunteer come to the board and write the words he/she wrote in each column.

Suggested Words: *fed*, *win*, *man*, *men*, *hot*, *peg*, *wag*, *hip*, *dog*, *sob*, *net*, *fan*, *dot*, *fog*, *bag*, *nag*, *hen*, *tin*

Extra Practice

Explain and assign Worksheet 22, *Phonics Fun short o*, page 195. (For instructions and answer key, see page 173.)

Finish the Lesson

1. **Hold Up the Card.** Give each student a set of *short a*, *short e*, *short i*, and *short o* cards. Say a word that has one of these short vowel sounds (see Suggested Words below). Students hold up the card that corresponds to the vowel sound in the word they hear, then say that sound. Do the same with eight to ten different words.
Suggested Words: *in*, *pen*, *hot*, *hat*, *bed*, *dig*, *mop*, *pot*, *vet*, *sit*, *pin*, *bag*, *map*, *ant*, *egg*, *on*
2. Explain and assign Workbook page 50. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 161.)

Assessment

Explain and assign the Unit 11 Test, page 226. (For instructions and answer key, see page 208.)



At the Park

Conversation Time

Language Focus: *I'm going now./Bye-bye!/See you tomorrow.*

Function: Friendly leave taking

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities):
CD/cassette and player; a ball; Wall Chart 23; Units 8–11 Phonics Time
Picture Cards, 1 set (see Picture can Word Card Book page 33, 37, 41, and 45)

For general information on Conversation Time,
see pages 8–9.

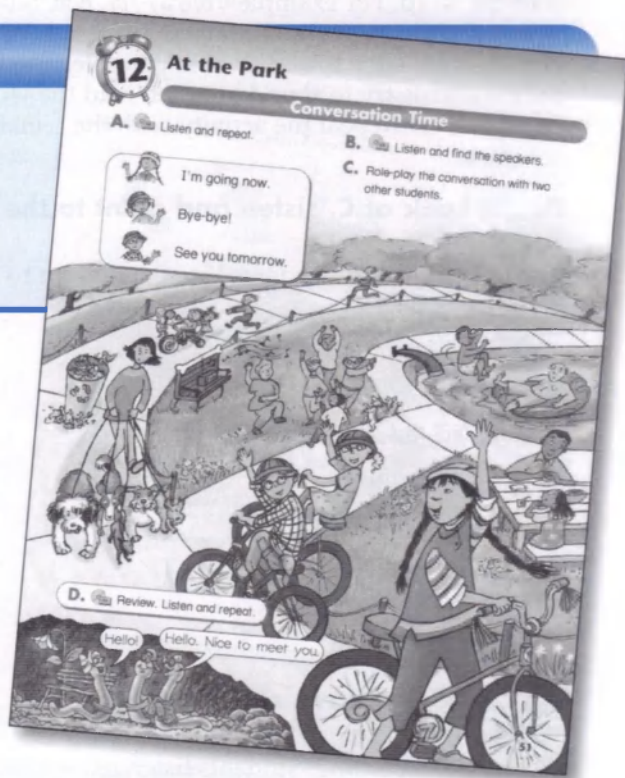
Warm-Up and Review

- Phonics Review: Short Vowels.** Stand the Units 8–11 Phonics Time Word Cards on the chalktray. Point to each card, read it, and have students repeat. Bring a volunteer to the front of the classroom with his/her Student Book for reference. Say /æ/. The volunteer writes *a* above all of the word cards that have *short a*, then reads each of these cards. Do the same with /ε/, /i/, and /a/, using a different volunteer for each vowel.
- Check Workbook page 50. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 161.)

Introduce the Conversation

- Bring three students to the front of the classroom. Stand behind each student and model his/her lines of the conversation with the following actions:

<i>I'm going now.</i>	Wave and start to walk out of the classroom.
<i>Bye-bye!</i>	Wave back.
<i>See you tomorrow.</i>	Pretend to leave the classroom and wave.
- Clarify word meaning.
going: Start to walk out of the classroom, and while walking say *going*. Students repeat.
tomorrow: Draw a monthly calendar on the board, clearly specifying the current day. Point to the current day, then point to the next day and say *tomorrow*. Students repeat.
- Model the conversation again, as in Step 1.
- Divide the class into Groups A, B, and C. Model each line of the conversation again, using facial expressions and body language. Group A repeats the first line of the conversation, Group B repeats line two, and Group C line three. Encourage students to copy your facial expressions and body language. Groups then change roles and repeat the conversation again.



- Groups A, B, and C say alternate lines of the conversation. Groups then change roles and say the conversation again. Continue until each group has taken on each role. Prompt when necessary.

OPTION: To replace the last line of the conversation, teach any or all of the following:

Take care.
See you later.
See you on (Monday).

Talk About the Picture

- Attach Wall Chart 23 to the board, or open a Student Book to page 51. Students then open their Student Books to page 51. Read the following "story" while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*).

This is a **park**. Back here are some **trees**, and here's a **bird** sitting on the recycling can. **These children** are *riding their bikes*. They're saying *Bye-bye*. *See you tomorrow*. Here is a woman *walking five dogs*. **These people** are *dancing*. **This man and his daughter** are *eating lunch*. **This woman** is *running*.

2. Ask the following questions while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*).

(**girl on bike**) Is she *driving a car*?

(**boy and girl on bikes**) Are they *riding bikes*?

How many dogs?

(**dancing people**) Are they *playing basketball*? Are they *climbing a tree*?

(**pool**) Is it a lake?

(**bike**) Is it a car?

(**man in the pool**) Is he *happy*?

Practice the Conversation

A. Listen and repeat.

Play the recording (first version of the conversation). Students listen and repeat, pointing to each speaker in the conversation box.

Emily: *I'm going now.*

Kim: *Bye-bye!*

Bill: *See you tomorrow.*

B. Listen and find the speakers.

Play the recording (second version of the conversation). Students find and point to the speakers in the large scene. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

C. Role-play the conversation with two other students.

Divide the class into groups of three, and have them role-play the conversation. They then switch roles and role-play the conversation again. Groups continue until each student has taken on each role.

D. Review. Listen and repeat.

Volunteers try to read or guess the worms' conversation. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each speech bubble.

A: *Hello!*

B: *Hello. Nice to meet you.*

OPTION: Students role-play the conversation.

Find Digger's Bone

Students find Digger's bone hidden in the large scene.

Answer Key: Digger's bone is the top edge of the park bench near the dancing people.

Games and Activities

1. **Back to Back.** Divide the class into groups of three. Students sit with their backs to their partners, and role-play the conversation without looking at each other. Members of each group then change roles and repeat the activity until all students have practiced all roles three times.
2. **Toss the Ball.** (See Game 5, page 140.) Play the game using the target conversation.
3. **Combine the Conversations.** Combine the Units 7, 8, and 12 conversations on the board in the following way:

A: *Are you finished?*

B: *No, not yet.*

A: *Please hurry!*

B: *Okay. Here you are.*

A: *Thanks. I'm going now.*

B: *Bye-bye!*

A: *See you tomorrow.*

Point to and read each line. Students repeat. Bring two volunteers, one with a book, to the front of the classroom to role-play the conversation. Student B hurries to finish reading the book before giving it to Student A. Then divide the class into pairs and have pairs role-play the conversation in the same way. Students in each pair then change roles and role-play the conversation again.

Finish the Lesson

1. **Leave Class.** When students leave the classroom, have them say *I'm going now*. Say *Bye-bye!* and elicit *See you tomorrow*.
2. Explain and assign Workbook page 51. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 162.)

Word Time

Language Focus: Actions (*swim, use chopsticks, fly a kite, make a sandwich, do a cartwheel, play the guitar*)

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities):

CD/cassette and player; Wall Chart 24; Unit 11 Word Time Picture Cards, 1 set; Unit 12 Word Time Picture Cards, 1 card per student (see Picture and Word Card Book page 47)

For general information on Word Time, see pages 10–11.

Warm-Up and Review

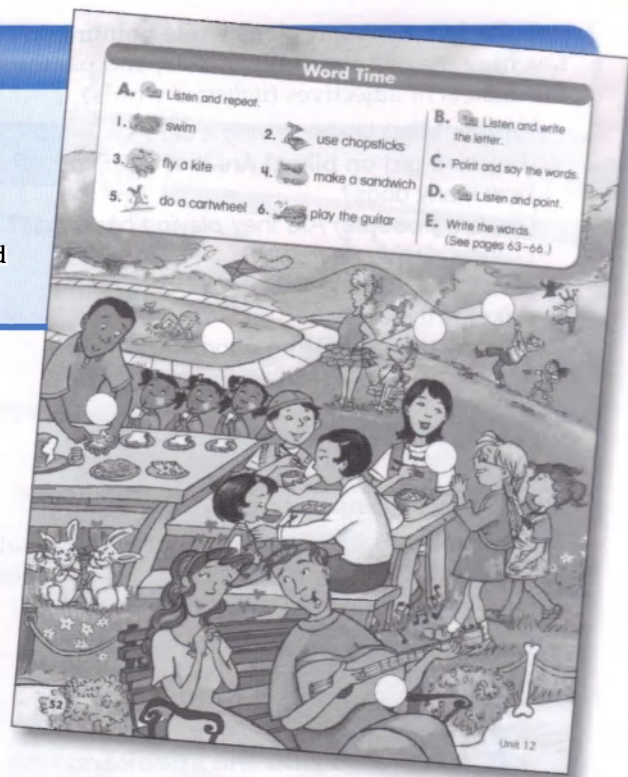
1. **Conversation Review: Bye-bye!** Wave and say *I'm going now*. Students respond with either *Bye-bye* or *See you tomorrow*. Divide the class into Groups A, B, and C. Group A stands up and says *I'm going now*. Group B says *Bye-bye*, and Group C says *See you tomorrow*. Groups change roles and role-play the conversation again.
2. Check Workbook page 51. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 162.)

Introduce the Words

1. Pantomime *swim* by pretending to do the crawl stroke. Say *swim*. Do the same with the remaining target vocabulary (using the below actions). Then pantomime and name each action and have students repeat.
use chopsticks: Use a pair of chopsticks or two pencils as chopsticks, and pretend to pick something up from a bowl and bring it to your mouth.
fly a kite: Pretend to hold the string of a kite and look high up into the sky.
make a sandwich: Open your left palm as if holding a slice of bread, and pretend to spread mustard on it, place slices of ham and cheese on the bread, and close the sandwich.
do a cartwheel: Hold your arms up and bend your body to the side as if about to do a cartwheel.
play the guitar: Pretend to hold the neck of a guitar with your left hand and strum the strings with your right hand.
2. Hold up each Unit 12 Word Time Picture Card and elicit its name.

Talk About the Picture

1. Students open their Student Books to page 52. They look at the large scene and name anything they can.
2. Attach Wall Chart 24 to the board, or open a Student Book to page 52. Read the following "story" while



pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*).

This man is playing the guitar. The **triplets' father** is *making sandwiches*. **Ted's mother** is *eating* and *using chopsticks*. **This boy** is *swimming*, and **this boy** is *flying a kite*. Here are **two children** *doing cartwheels*.

3. Ask the following questions while pointing to or touching the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*).
Can you *point* to the person *playing the guitar*?
Can you *point* to the person *flying a kite*?
Can you *point* to the person *making a sandwich*?
Do you like sandwiches?
Can you *point* to the person *using chopsticks*?
(tree) What's this?
(rabbit) Is it a sheep?

Practice the Words

A. Listen and repeat.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each picture in the vocabulary box.

1. *swim*
2. *use chopsticks*
3. *fly a kite*
4. *make a sandwich*
5. *do a cartwheel*
6. *play the guitar*

2. Say the phrases in random order. Students point to the pictures in the vocabulary box.

B. Listen and write the letter.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and write the letter they hear in the white circle for each vocabulary item. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

- play the guitar, play the guitar*
- fly a kite, fly a kite*
- make a sandwich, make a sandwich*
- swim, swim*
- use chopsticks, use chopsticks*
- do a cartwheel, do a cartwheel*

2. Check answers by writing the letters *a–f* on the board then having volunteers come to the board and attach the corresponding picture card next to each letter. Point to each picture card and have students name it.

C. Point and say the words.

Students point to and name each of the target vocabulary items in the large scene.

D. Listen and point.

Play the recording. Students listen to the sound effects and words. For the vocabulary, they point to the person doing that action; for the conversations, they point to the speakers. (References are shown in parentheses.) Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

Swim.

Play the guitar.

Make a sandwich.

Use chopsticks. (anyone using chopsticks)

Fly a kite!

Do a cartwheel. (anyone doing a cartwheel)

Now listen and point to the speakers.

A: *What's the matter?* (mother and daughter at picnic table)

B: *I feel sick.*

A: *Oh, that's too bad.*

A: *He can swim.* (woman beside pool)

E. Write the words. (See pages 63–66.)

Students turn to page 63 (*My Picture Dictionary*), find the picture of each target vocabulary item, and write the word next to it.

Find Digger's Bone

Students find Digger's bone hidden in the large scene.

Answer Key: Digger's bone is a post holding up the rope around the grassy area.

Extra Vocabulary. Students turn to page 51. Introduce the extra vocabulary items *dance, run, jump*. Students then find people doing these actions in the large scene.

Games and Activities

- Hold It Up!** (See Game 24, page 143.) Play the game using Unit 12 Word Time Picture Cards.
- What Can You Do?** Divide the class into groups of four to five, making sure there are both boys and girls in each group. One student in each group (S1) begins by pantomiming a Unit 12 action and saying *I can (use chopsticks)*. Another student in the group points to S1 and, while looking at him/her says *You can (use chopsticks)*. A different student points to S1, looks at the other students in the group, and says *(He) can (use chopsticks)*. Students in each group then take turns pantomiming different Unit 12 actions in the same way, making sure to do some actions badly to elicit *can't* sentences. Groups continue in the same way for five to seven minutes.
- Pantomime. Freeze!** Divide the class into groups of three to four. Bring one group to the front of the classroom and have them face the board. Give each seated student a Unit 12 Word Time Picture Card. For added challenge, distribute Unit 11 Word Time Picture Cards as well. Say *Start!* Students do the actions depicted on their cards. The group at the front of the classroom says *Stop!* and the pantomiming students freeze. The group at the front turns around and tries to identify the actions by saying *(Bill), (fly a kite)*. If the guess is correct, (Bill) says *Yes* and sits down. If the guess is not correct, (Bill) says *No* and the student at the front of the classroom guesses what (Bill) is doing two more times. If he/she still cannot identify the action, (Bill) names the action and sits down. When all students are seated, students exchange cards, and a different group comes to the front of the classroom. Continue until all groups have come to the front of the classroom.
- Option: Personalize the Picture.** Students draw a park in which they and their friends are doing the actions they can name in English. Students label the actions on the picture. They then take turns holding up their pictures, pointing to themselves in the picture, and saying *I can (swim)*. They then point to the other people in the picture and say *(She) can (play the guitar)*. Display the pictures on the wall for future review.

Finish the Lesson

- Pantomime and Name the Actions.** Hold up a Unit 11 or 12 Word Time Picture Card. Students pantomime and name the action. Do the same with the remaining Units 11–12 Word Time Picture Cards, gradually increasing the speed at which the cards are shown. A volunteer then comes to the front of the classroom, takes on the teacher's role, and holds up the cards.
- Explain and assign Workbook page 52. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 162.)

Practice Time

Language Focus: Yes/No questions with *can*; subject pronouns
[*Can (you) (swim)? Yes, (I) can./No, (I) can't.*]

Function: Asking about ability

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities):

CD/cassette and player; Units 11–12 Word Time Picture Cards, 1 set; Unit 12 Word Time Word Cards, 1 set per 4–5 students; Unit 12 Grammar Cards, 1 set per 4–5 students (see Picture and Word Card Book pages 43, 47, 48, and 59)

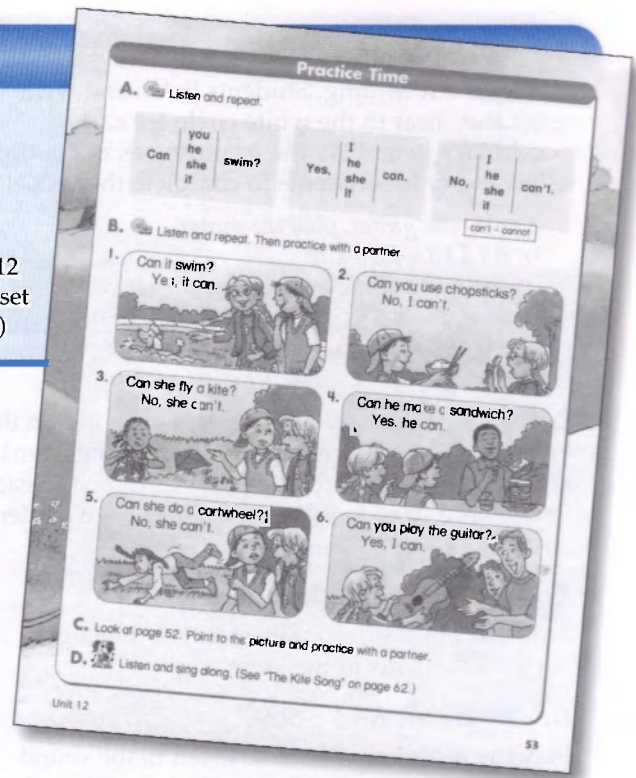
For general information on Practice Time, see pages 12–13.

Warm-Up and Review

- Vocabulary Review: Actions!** Pantomime each Unit 11–12 Word Time action and elicit its name. Place the Units 11–12 Word Time Picture Cards facedown on a desk at the front of the classroom. Bring a volunteer to the front of the classroom, and have him/her turn over one of the cards and pantomime the action. Seated students identify the action. Continue in the same way until all cards have been identified.
- Check Workbook page 52. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 162.)

Introduce the Patterns

- Can you (swim)? Yes, I can.** Place the Unit 12 Word Time Picture Cards on the chalktray. Write a big ? on the board. Bring a volunteer to the front of the classroom. Look at and point to the volunteer with a quizzical expression on your face, point to the ? and the *swim* picture card, shrug your shoulders, and ask *Can you swim?* Seated students repeat. Write *Can you swim?* on the board. Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Then ask the volunteer the question again, prompt him/her to pantomime *swim*, and elicit a positive response such *Yes*, or a nod of his/her head. Say *Yes, I can.* The volunteer repeats. Write *Yes, I can.* on the board to the right of *Can you swim?* Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Do the same with *do a cartwheel*, *use chopsticks*, *fly a kite*, *make a sandwich*, and *play the guitar*.
- Can you (swim)? No, I can't.** Do the same as in Step 1, having volunteers pantomime the action badly. Then elicit negative responses.
- Can (he) (swim)? Yes, (he) can.** Do the same as in Step 1, having volunteers pantomime the actions. Point to the volunteer or card and ask seated students the question.
- Can (he) (swim)? No, (he) can't.** Do the same as in Step 2, pointing to the volunteer or card and asking seated students the question.



- Practice for Fluency.** Write *you, he, she,* and *it* in a vertical column on the board, attach the Unit 12 Word Time Picture Cards in a column to the right of the pronouns, and write *Yes* and *No* in a column to the right of the picture cards. Point to a pronoun, a picture card, and either *Yes* or *No*, and elicit the target question and answer. Continue in the same way until most students have said the target question and answer.

Practice the Patterns

Students open their Student Books to page 53.

A. Listen and repeat.

1. Write the text from the pattern boxes on the board. Play the recording, pointing to each word. Students listen.

- | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| A: <i>Can you swim?</i> | A: <i>Can you swim?</i> |
| B: <i>Yes, I can.</i> | B: <i>No, I can't.</i> |
| A: <i>Can he swim?</i> | A: <i>Can he swim?</i> |
| B: <i>Yes, he can.</i> | B: <i>No, he can't.</i> |
| A: <i>Can she swim?</i> | A: <i>Can she swim?</i> |
| B: <i>Yes, she can.</i> | B: <i>No, she can't.</i> |
| A: <i>Can it swim?</i> | A: <i>Can it swim?</i> |
| B: <i>Yes, it can.</i> | B: <i>No, it can't.</i> |

- Play the recording again. Students listen, look at the pattern boxes in their books, and repeat, pointing to each word.
- Students try to say the patterns on their own, while looking at the pattern boxes in their books.

4. Write the explanation of the contraction on the board:

can't = cannot

Point to and read each word. Students repeat. Then say each pattern with the full form of the contraction. Students repeat. Students practice each pattern in the pattern box, using both the contraction and the full form of the contraction.

B. Listen and repeat. Then practice with a partner.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each picture in their books.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>Can it swim?</i>
<i>Yes, it can.</i> | 2. <i>Can you use chopsticks?</i>
<i>No, I can't.</i> |
| 3. <i>Can she fly a kite?</i>
<i>No, she can't.</i> | 4. <i>Can he make a sandwich?</i>
<i>Yes, he can.</i> |
| 5. <i>Can she do a cartwheel?</i>
<i>No, she can't.</i> | 6. <i>Can you play the guitar?</i>
<i>Yes, I can.</i> |

2. Play the recording again. Students listen and repeat, pointing to each word in their books.

3. Students practice numbers 1–6 in pairs. (S1 in each pair asks the questions, and S2 answers.) They then change roles and repeat the activity.

C. Look at page 52. Point to the picture and practice with a partner.

Students remain in pairs and look at page 52. They then take turns asking and answering questions about characters in the large scene using the new patterns and vocabulary items. For example: S1 (pointing to the man who is playing the guitar): *Can he play the guitar?* S2: *Yes, he can.*

D. Listen and sing along.

1. Students turn to *The Kite Song*, page 62. Focus their attention on the pictures. Students try to guess some of the lyrics using the pictures as cues. Read the lyrics line by line. Students repeat each line. Play the recording. Students listen and follow along in their books.

The Kite Song
(Melody: *Oh! Susanna*)

Can you fly a kite?

Yes, I can. I can fly a kite.

Can you play the guitar?

Yes, I can. I can play the guitar.

I can fly a kite.

I can play the guitar.

Can you do a cartwheel?

No, I can't.

I can fly a kite.

Can he fly a kite?

Yes, he can. He can fly a kite.

Can he play the guitar?

Yes, he can. He can play the guitar.

He can fly a kite.

He can play the guitar.

Can he do a cartwheel?

No, he can't.

He can fly a kite.

2. Play the recording again. Students listen and sing along, using their books for reference. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to become familiar with the song.

3. Bring a boy to the front of the classroom and divide the rest of the class into Groups A and B. Play the karaoke version. For the first verse, Group A sings the questions, and the boy sings the answers. For the second verse, Group B sings the questions while pointing to the boy, and looking at Group A. Group A sings the answers. Groups then change roles and sing the song again.

Games and Activities

1. **Share the Answer.** Divide the class into pairs. Place the Units 11–12 Word Time Picture Cards facedown at the front of the classroom. Bring a pair of students to the front of the classroom. A student in this pair (S1) picks up one of the cards and asks the other student (S2) *Can you (swim)?* S2 whispers the reply to S1. Seated students ask S1 *Can (he) (swim)?* S1 replies using the target pattern. S2 then chooses a card and asks S1 the question. Another pair then comes to the front of the classroom. Continue in the same way until most students have taken a turn.
2. **Interview.** Each student chooses four of the Unit 12 Word Time actions and writes them across the top of a piece of paper, leaving room along the left-hand side of the page to write their classmates' names. They then walk around the classroom and, using the target patterns, interview five classmates. Students record the answers they receive by writing the person's name in the left-hand column, then writing ✓ under the action if he/she can do it, and ✗ if he/she cannot.
3. **Make the Sentences.** (See Game 43, page 145.) Do the activity using Unit 12 Word Time Word Cards and Grammar Cards.

Extra Practice

Explain and assign Worksheet 23, *Can You Swim?*, page 196. (For instructions and answer key, see page 173.)



Finish the Lesson

1. **Repeat the Answer.** Ask a student (S1) *Can you swim?* After he/she replies, ask the class *Can (he) swim?* Elicit the reply. S1 then asks another student *Can you (use chopsticks)?* and so on around the class. Students continue until most have taken a turn.
2. Explain and assign Workbook page 53. (For instructions see Teacher's Book page 162.)

Phonics Time

Sound Focus: short u (*bus, nut, sun, up*)

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities):

CD/cassette and player; a ball; *a, b, d, e, g, i, k, m, n, o, p, s, t, u, v, w,* and *z* alphabet cards, 1 set per 2–3 students; *short a, short e, short i, short o,* and *short u* cards, 1 set per student; Unit 12 Phonics Time Picture Cards, 1 set (see Picture and Word Card Book pages 34, 38, 42, 46, 49, 50, and 51–54)

For general information on Phonics Time, see pages 14–15.

Warm-Up and Review

- Pattern Review: Toss the Ball.** Throw a ball to a student (S1) and ask *Can you do a cartwheel?* S1 replies using the target pattern. Point to S1 and ask the class *Can (he) do a cartwheel?* They reply using the target pattern. S1 then throws the ball to another student (S2) and asks that student *Can you (make a sandwich)?* When S2 replies, S1 asks the class *Can (she) (make a sandwich)?* When the class replies, S2 throws the ball to another student and so on around the class. Students continue until most have taken a turn.
- Check Workbook page 53. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 162.)
- Phonics Review: Read the Words.** Write *short a, short e, short i,* and *short o* on the board. Point to each letter and elicit its sound. Write five to six three-letter words students can sound out and read on the board (see Suggested Words below), and have volunteers sound out and read each word.

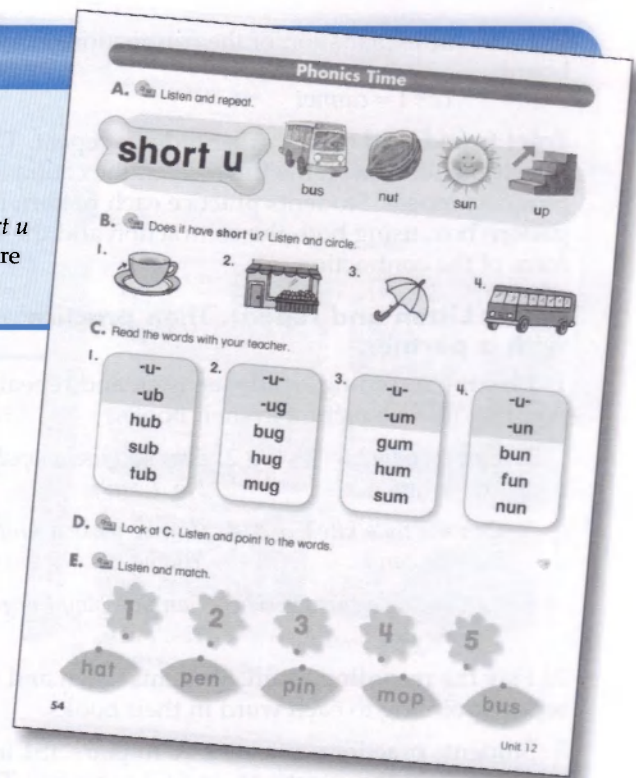
Suggested Words: *bag, hem, pit, won, zip, fan, win, hot, sob, mat, get, pen*

Introduce the Sounds

Note: The *short u* sound is written as /ʌ/.

- Hold up the *bus* picture card and say /ʌ/-/ʌ/, *bus*, stressing the /ʌ/ sound. Students repeat. Attach the card to the board. Do the same for *nut, sun, up*.
- Write *u* on the board. Say /ʌ/ while pointing to the letter. Students repeat. Add *s* to the right of *u* and say /ʌ/-/s/-*us* while pointing to the two letters and then the combination. Students repeat. Then add *b* to the left of *u* and say /b/-*us, bus*, pointing to the two parts of the word and then the whole word. Students repeat. Do the same for *nut, sun, up*.

Pronunciation Note: To help with correct pronunciation of /ʌ/, have students relax and drop their jaws, as if in surprise, and say this sound.



Practice the Sounds

Students open their Student Books to page 54.

Students are expected to know the meaning of only the four words at the top of the page. The remaining words they hear and see in the lesson are for the purpose of sound recognition and reading practice only. It is not necessary to teach these words as vocabulary.

A. Listen and repeat.

Focus students' attention on the *short u* words at the top of the page. Play the recording. Students listen and repeat, pointing to the pictures and words in their books.

u /ʌ/
bus
nut
sun
up

B. Does it have short u? Listen and circle.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and circle the illustration of each word they hear with *short u*. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

- cup, cup*
- shop, shop*
- umbrella, umbrella*
- bus, bus*

2. Check answers by saying *Number 1. cup*, then having students repeat the word, say its vowel

sound, and stand up if they circled the *cup* picture. Do the same for numbers 2–4.

Answer Key: Pictures 1, 3, and 4 are circled.

C. Read the words with your teacher.

Write *hub* on the board. Point to, sound out, then read the word. For example: /h/-/ʌ/-/b/, *hub*. Students repeat. Do the same for the remaining words in the first column. Elicit sounds where possible. Then have students try to sound out then read the words on their own. Repeat the activity with the remaining columns.

D. Look at C. Listen and point to the words.

Play the recording. Students listen and point to the words they hear.

bun, /b/-/ʌ/-/n/, *bun*

hub, /h/-/ʌ/-/b/, *hub*

mug, /m/-/ʌ/-/g/, *mug*

sum, /s/-/ʌ/-/m/, *sum*

bug, /b/-/ʌ/-/g/, *bug*

fun, /f/-/ʌ/-/n/, *fun*

tub, /t/-/ʌ/-/b/, *tub*

gum, /g/-/ʌ/-/m/, *gum*

E. Listen and match.

1. Play the recording. Students listen and match each number to the letter corresponding to the short vowel sound of each word they hear. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

1. *mop*, *mop*
2. *pen*, *pen*
3. *bus*, *bus*
4. *hat*, *hat*
5. *pin*, *pin*

2. Check answers by writing the numbers 1–5 on the board, then having volunteers come to the board and write the letter they wrote for each number.

Games and Activities

1. **Stand Up, Sit Down.** Say ten to twelve words that have short vowel sounds (see Suggested Words below). If a word has *short u*, students stand up, repeat the word, put their hands on their heads, and sit down as quickly as they can. If the word does not have *short u*, students remain seated.

Suggested Words: *nut*, *egg*, *hat*, *ant*, *cup*, *bed*, *hot*, *up*, *tip*, *nut*, *bus*, *vet*, *us*, *cat*, *Ted*, *Annie*

2. **Make a List.** Students draw five columns on a sheet of paper, and label one column *short a*, another *short e*, another *short i*, another *short o*, and another *short u*.

Sound out and say a word with any of these short vowel sounds (see Suggested Words below). Students repeat the word and write it in the column that corresponds to that word's vowel sound. Do the same with eight to ten different words. When finished, point to each word in each column, and have students read it. Check answers by writing *short a*, *short e*, *short i*, *short o* and *short u* on the board, then having a volunteer come to the board and write the words he/she wrote in each column.

Suggested Words: *pig*, *pen*, *man*, *up*, *ten*, *hot*, *sad*, *fat*, *bug*, *ban*, *fan*, *fun*, *bus*, *gig*, *men*

3. **Build the Short u Words.** Divide the class into groups of two to three. Give each group a set of the following alphabet cards: *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, *b*, *d*, *g*, *k*, *m*, *n*, *p*, *s*, *t*, *v*, *w* and *z*. Say *hop*, *fin*, *sum*, *fan*, *wag* twice or three times. Students listen, repeat the short *u* word, then make that word with their cards. Check answers by writing the word on the board and having students check their answers and re-adjust their cards as necessary. Do the same with *zip*, *mob*, *mad*, *gum*, *fed*; *pop*, *van*, *tub*, *sit*, *keg*; then *bat*, *pet*, *dot*, *win*, *bun*. Do the activity again, but this time have students make the words with *short a*, then *short e*, *short i*, and *short o*.

Extra Practice

Explain and assign Worksheet 24, Phonics Fun *short u*, page 197. (For instructions and answer key, see page 173.)

Finish the Lesson

1. **Hold Up the Card.** Give each student a set of *short a*, *short e*, *short i*, *short o*, and *short u* cards. Say a word that has one of these short vowel sounds (see Suggested Words below). Students hold up the card that corresponds to the vowel sound in the word they hear, then say that sound. Do the same with the six to seven different words.

Suggested Words: *fin*, *bus*, *pot*, *ham*, *nut*, *beg*, *up*, *run*, *win*, *net*, *sin*, *fan*, *bog*

2. Explain and assign Workbook page 54. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book pages 162–163.)

Assessment

Explain and assign the Unit 12 Test, page 227. (For instructions and answer key, see page 209.)



Review 4

Story Time

Review Focus: Units 10–12 conversations, vocabulary, and patterns

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities):
CD/cassette and player

For general information on Story Time, see page 16.

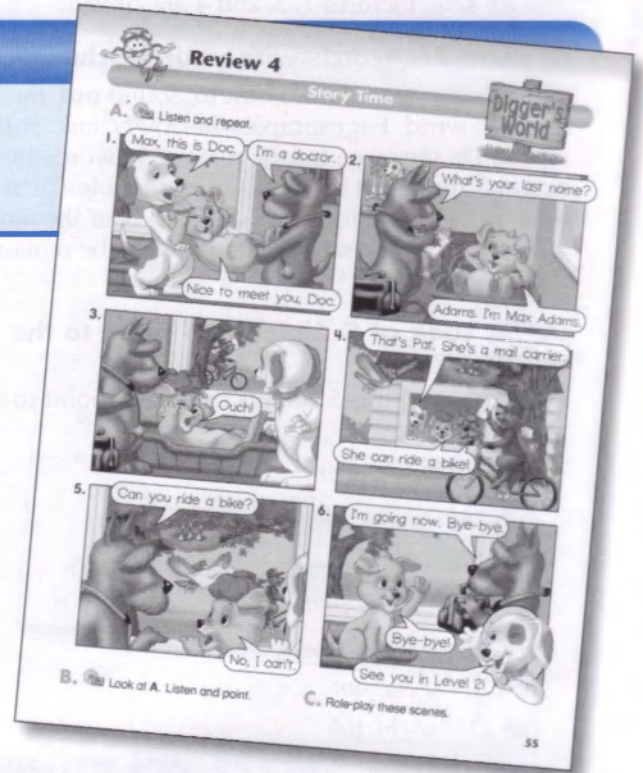
Warm-Up

1. **Review Units 10–12 Conversations, Vocabulary, and Patterns.** Students turn to each Conversation Time page (pages 43, 47, and 51), Word Time page (pages 44, 48, and 52), and Practice Time page (pages 45, 49, and 53). Elicit each conversation, vocabulary item, and pattern.
2. Check Workbook page 54. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book pages 162–163.)

Work with the Pictures

Students open their Student Books to page 55.

1. Divide the class into groups of three. Groups find and name any items or characters they recognize in the six scenes.
2. Ask each group how many items they found. Encourage groups to name as many items or characters as they can.
3. When groups have finished, have each group name one item, and write these items on the board. Once all the items have been listed, point to and say each word. Students repeat, pointing to those items in their books.
4. Ask the following questions while pointing to the pictures (**bold words**).
Scene 1: Is **Doc** a police officer?
Is he young?
Scene 2: What's **Max's** first name? What's Max's last name?
Scene 3: (**dog on bicycle**) Is it a cat?
Can she ride a bike?
Scene 4: Is **Pat** a mail carrier?
Scene 5: Can **Max** ride a bike?
Can you climb a tree?



Work with the Text

1. Point to Max's speech bubble in Scene 1. A volunteer guesses what Max is saying. If he/she guesses correctly, do the same with Digger's and Doc's speech bubbles. If he/she does not guess correctly, ask another student.
2. Do the same with all the scenes on this page. Encourage students to look back at the Units 10–12 Conversation Time, Word Time, and Practice Time pages for support if needed.

Note: It is not necessary for students to guess the exact words of the characters. Accept their guesses as long as they convey the gist of what the character is saying.

Practice the Story

A. Listen and repeat.

1. Play the recording (first version of the story). Students listen and follow along in their books.

1. Digger: *Max, this is Doc.*
Doc: *I'm a doctor.*
Max: *Nice to meet you, Doc.*
2. Doc: *What's your last name?*
Max: *Adams. I'm Max Adams.*

3. Max: *Ouch!*
4. Digger: *That's Pat. She's a mail carrier.*
Max and Doc: *She can ride a bike!*
5. Doc: *Can you ride a bike?*
Max: *No, I can't.*
6. Doc: *I'm going now. Bye-bye.*
Max: *Bye-bye!*

Digger: *See you in Level 2!*

2. Play the recording again. Pause after each line, and have students repeat. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to become familiar with the story.

B. Look at A. Listen and point.

1. Play the recording (second version of the story). Students listen and follow along in their books.
2. Divide the class into groups of four. Students in each pair take on the role of one of the characters (Digger, Max, Pat, or Doc). Play the recording again, pausing after each line. Students repeat their character's lines. Students in each group then change roles and do the activity again. Continue until each student has taken on each role. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to become familiar with their character's lines.

C. Role-play these scenes.

1. Ask students which roles are needed to act out the scenes. List the roles on the board (*Digger, Max, Pat, Doc*).
2. Divide the class into Groups A, B, and C, and D. Group A role-plays Digger's lines, Group B role-plays Max's lines, Group C role-plays Doc's lines, and Group D acts out Pat's part. Groups then change roles and role-play the scenes again. Continue until each student has taken on each role.
3. Bring a volunteer from each group to the front of the classroom. Play the recording and have these volunteers act out the story along with the recording. They then act out the story on their own, without the recording.
4. Divide the class into groups of four, and have them role-play the story. They then switch roles and role-play the story again. Continue until each student has taken on each role.

Games and Activities

1. **Puppets.** Students each make a Doc and a Pat puppet. Each student then performs the entire story for the class using these 2 puppets and the Max and Digger puppets they made in Review 1 (see page 13).
2. **Make a New Story.** Students divide a piece of paper into six equal parts and come up with their own version of the story by drawing original scenes and characters. If this is too challenging, students copy the pictures and speech bubbles from page 53. Students can also do this activity in pairs.

Finish the Lesson

1. **Listen and Pantomime.** Divide the class into groups of three, and have students in each group take on the role of one of the characters in the story. Play the recording. Students listen and pantomime their role. Repeat the procedure until each student has pantomimed each role.
2. Explain and assign Workbook page 55. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 163.)

Activity Time

Review Focus: Units 10–12 vocabulary, patterns, and sounds

Materials Needed (excluding materials for optional activities):

CD/cassette and player; 4×4 grids, one per student; Bingo markers, 12 per student; Units 10–12 Word Time Picture Cards, 16 per student (see Picture and Word Card Book pages 39, 43, and 47)

For general information on Activity Time, see page 17.

Warm-Up

1. **Review Units 10–12 Vocabulary, Patterns, and Sounds.** Students turn to each Word Time page (pages 44, 48, and 52), Practice Time page (pages 45, 49, and 53), and Phonics Time page (pages 46, 50, and 54). Elicit the vocabulary items, patterns, and sounds.
2. Check Workbook page 55. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 163.)

Review

Students open their Student Books to page 56.

A. Listen and ✓ the correct words.

1. Point to each picture and have students name the action. Then play the recording. Students listen and draw a line from the corresponding pronoun to can or can't, then to the action. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

1. *He can ride a bike.*
He can ride a bike.
2. *She can't fly a kite.*
She can't fly a kite.
3. *He can drive a car.*
He can drive a car.
4. *She can't do a cartwheel.*
She can't do a cartwheel.
5. *He can make a sandwich.*
He can make a sandwich.

2. Check answers by writing numbers 1–7 on the board, then having volunteers come to the board and write their answers next to each number.

B. Listen and circle the correct word.

1. Write *short i*, *short o*, and *short u* on the board. Point to each one and elicit its sound. Then play the recording. Students listen and circle each word they hear. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

1. *dig, dig*
2. *hot, hot*
3. *bus, bus*

Activity Time

A. Listen and ✓ the correct words.

	He	She	can	can't	
1.					ride a bike.
2.					fly a kite.
3.					drive a car.
4.					do a cartwheel.
5.					make a sandwich.

B. Listen and circle the correct word.

1. dig dog
2. hat hot
3. bus bar
4. in on
5. sun sit
6. nut mop

C. Listen and circle ✓ or X.

1. ✓ X
2. ✓ X
3. X
4. ✓ X

56 Review 4

4. *on, on*
5. *sit, sit*
6. *nut, nut*

2. Check answers by saying *Number 1.* and having a volunteer say the word he/she circled. Do the same for numbers 2–6.

C. Listen and circle ✓ or X.

1. Divide the class into pairs, and have students in each pair take turns asking and answering questions about each picture.

2. Play the recording. Students listen and circle ✓ if the sentences they hear correspond to that picture, and X if they do not. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

1. *She's a teacher.* [twice]
2. *He's a firefighter.* [twice]
3. *Is he a doctor?*
No, he isn't. He's a teacher. [twice]
4. *Is he a firefighter?*
Yes, he is. [twice]

3. Check answers by saying *Number 1. She's a teacher,* then having students stand up if they circled ✓, and stay seated if they circled X. Do the same for numbers 2–4.

Answer Key

1. X
2. ✓
3. ✓
4. X

Games and Activities

1. **Bingo.** (See Game 10, page 141.) Hold up each Unit 10–12 Word Time Picture Card and elicit its name. Then play the game using the picture cards and 4 × 4 grids.
2. **What Other Words Have These Sounds?** Students find the 12 words in Activity B. (**Listen and circle the correct word**) in the Units 10–12 Phonics Time pages (pages 46, 50, and 54). While books are open to these pages, elicit other words with the same initial sounds. For example: *What other /short o/ words can you see?*

Finish the Lesson

1. Explain and assign Checklist 4 (see Student Book page 70) for students to do at home or in class.
2. Explain and assign Workbook page 56. (For instructions, see Teacher's Book page 163.) Students can complete the four remaining review pages (pages 57–60) in class or at home.
3. Do Chapter 4 of Storybook 1, *Annie and the Map*. (For instructions and answer key, see Teacher's Book page 167.)

Assessment

Explain and assign the Final Test pages 228–233. (For instructions and answer key, see pages 209–211.)



Games and Activities for Conversation Practice

1. Listen and Act.

Two pairs of volunteers (P1 and P2) come to the front of the classroom. P1 says the conversation, using the Student Book for reference if necessary, and P2 acts it out. P1 and P2 then change roles and do the activity again. Another two pairs of volunteers then come to the front of the classroom and do the activity. Continue until most students have taken a turn.

2. Puppets.

Each student makes a puppet (see puppet-making ideas below). Divide the class into pairs and have pairs role-play the conversation using their puppets as the speakers. Make sure students give puppets appropriate gestures and facial expressions. Students in each pair then change roles and role-play the conversation again.

PUPPET-MAKING IDEAS:

1. Students draw pictures of the characters, people, or animals on a paper or cardboard. They then cut out the pictures and glue them onto popsicle sticks or pencils.
2. Students use markers to draw a face on a sock, and glue yarn on the sock for hair. Students put their hands in the sock with their thumb in the heel and fingers in the toe. They then bring the tips of their thumbs and fingers together to manipulate the puppet's mouth.

3. Three to a Conversation.

Bring three students (S1, S2, and S3) to the front of the classroom. Give S1 a Student Book for reference. S2 and S3 say the conversation. S1 checks for mistakes and corrects if necessary. S2 then holds the Student Book and S1 and S3 say the conversation. They then sit down. Divide the class into groups of three, and have each group do the activity as above. Students in each group then change roles and repeat the procedure. Continue until all students have taken on each role.

4. Tic-Tac-Toe Conversation.

Prepare 3×3 grids with one line of the conversation written in each square. Divide the class into pairs. Two pairs (P1 and P2) play together. Give each group of pairs one of the 3×3 grids. P1, in unison, says one of the conversation lines, then says the next line of that conversation. If they correctly say the lines of the conversation, they place their marker on that square of the grid. Then P2 takes a turn. The first pair to place three markers in a row (horizontal, vertical, or diagonal) wins the game.

5. Toss the Ball.

Toss a ball to a student and say the first line of the conversation. That student responds with the second line of the conversation, then tosses the ball to another

student who says the third line of the conversation, and so on around the class. Students continue until everyone has said a line of the conversation.

6. Which Line Doesn't Belong?

Write each line of four to five different conversations on a piece of paper, then copy it. Cut up both sheets to make two identical sets of strips of paper, each with one line of a conversation on it. Divide the class into Teams A and B. A volunteer from each team comes to the front of the classroom. Give each volunteer a set of identical strips of paper which includes a complete conversation plus one strip from a different conversation. For example: *Ah-choo! Bless you! Thanks! What's your first name? Say Go!* The volunteers look at their pieces of paper and place the line of conversation that doesn't belong on the chalktray. The first volunteer to place the correct piece of paper on the chalktray wins a point for his/her team. The team wins another point for each line of the conversation the members of the team can correctly say. Continue until each student has had a turn. The team with the most points at the end wins.

7. Who Was That?

Bring a student (S1) to the front of the classroom and have him/her face the board. Ask another student (S2) to say the first line of the conversation. S1 tries to identify S2 and say the second line of the conversation. If S1 identifies S2, they finish the conversation together. If S1 does not identify S2, he/she tries again. If S1 still cannot identify S2, he/she turns around to face the class, and S1 and S2 say the conversation from the beginning. Encourage S2 to change his/her voice to make the activity more challenging. Choose another pair of volunteers, and continue the activity in the same way until most students have had a turn.

Games and Activities for Vocabulary Practice

Note: All the games below can be played using Word Time Picture Cards or Word Cards, or Phonics Time Picture Cards or Word Cards.

8. Around the World.

Students sit in a circle. Two volunteers stand up next to each other to begin the game. Show these two students a picture card. The first student of the pair to correctly name the card wins a point. The "loser" sits back down, and the "winner" moves to stand beside the student on his/her left. This student then stands up. Show the new pair a different picture card. The first student of this pair to correctly name the card wins a point, then moves to stand beside the next student. Play continues in this way around the circle. If any student can go around the entire circle without having to sit down, he/she has gone "Around the World," and gets an extra five points.

Continue for five to seven minutes. The student with the most points at the end wins.

LARGE CLASSES: Instead of moving around a circle, students move along the rows of desks.

9. Basketball.

Preparation: Make two basketballs by cutting out two circles from orange pieces of paper. On each side of the board, draw a column of six horizontal lines. On the top line, draw a basketball hoop. Attach the two basketballs to the board below the bottom line.

Play: Divide the class into two teams and have a student from each team come to the front of the classroom. Show these two students a picture card. The first student to correctly name the card moves his/her team's basketball up to the first line. These two students return to their seats and another student from each team comes to the board to name a card. Continue play in the same way. The first team to move their basketball to the hoop wins two points. Return the basketball to the starting position and continue play until a pre-determined number of points is reached. The team who reaches this number first wins.

VARIATIONS:

1. Count an incorrect guess as a foul, which results in the loss of one point.
2. Students shoot baskets instead of using the lines on the board. Place a wastebasket at the front of the classroom. After correctly identifying a card, students shoot a ball into the wastebasket. If they make a basket, the team gets a point.
3. Play the game as **Baseball**:
Preparation: Make two baseballs by cutting out two circles from white pieces of paper. Draw a large diamond on the chalkboard with a small square in each corner to represent the bases on a baseball field.
Play: Play in the same way as Basketball, but move the baseballs around the field from first base to home. The team that moves its baseball to home plate first wins one point. After nine "innings" (points), the team with the most points wins.

10. Bingo!

Prepare 3×3 , 4×4 , or 5×5 large grids. Give each student one grid and 9, 16, or 25 picture cards faceup. Students place a picture card in each square of the grid. One by one, call out the items illustrated on the picture cards. When a named item is on a student's grid, he/she places a marker on the card. If a student marks three (or four or five) items in a row (horizontal, vertical, or diagonal), he/she calls out *Bingo!* then names the cards making up the row, and wins a point. Students then reposition the cards on their grids and play again.

VARIATIONS:

1. Give students blank grids. On the board, write a list of words to be practiced. Students choose words from this list and write the word or draw a picture of the item in each grid square.

2. Before beginning play, students take turns naming the cards or pictures on their grids.

3. If beginning students need more support, hold up the picture cards while calling out the items.

4. Instead of calling out the names of items, give only hints about the items. For example: *It's red. It's round.* The first student to say the correct word puts his/her marker on that picture.

5. Students try to cover squares to form the shape of a pre-determined letter. For example: T, F, E, L, H. When a student covers squares in the shape of the pre-determined letter, he/she shouts *Bingo!*

6. Students try to cover every square on their grid. When a student does this, he/she shouts *Blackout!*

7. Students try to cover just the four corner squares of their grid. When a student does this, he/she shouts *Bingo!*

11. Concentration: Picture to Picture.

Shuffle five to ten pairs of matching picture cards and place them facedown on a desk. Students take turns turning over two cards and naming them. If a student cannot name the cards, he/she turns the cards facedown again and the next student takes a turn. If a student names the cards correctly but they do not match, the cards must also be turned facedown, and play moves to the next student. If the student does correctly name the cards and they do match, that student keeps the pair and takes another turn. The student who has the most pairs once all cards are taken wins the game.

12. Concentration: Picture to Word.

Prepare five to ten pairs of picture cards and corresponding word cards. Students play Concentration as in Game 11, matching the picture card to the corresponding word card.

13. Concentration: Pairs.

When playing either Concentration 11 or 12, have students play in pairs in order to make the game more cooperative.

14. Did You Hear That?

Divide the class into groups of three to four and give each group a set of five to seven picture cards. Read the *Talk About the Picture* section of the Word Time lesson in which the words illustrated on the picture cards are featured. Alternatively, read a simple story from a storybook that features words illustrated on the picture cards. Students listen and hold up cards when they hear them named. Check each time to determine which groups are or are not holding up the correct cards. Read the story again, pausing after the featured words in order to give groups a chance to hold up cards they may have missed before.

15. Do It!

Give each student a picture card. Name one of the cards twice then give a command. For example: *apple, apple, stand up!* Student(s) with that card name the card then do

the action. For added challenge, name two or three cards with the same command so that more students are doing the actions. For example: *apple, apple, boy, boy, stand up!* Students then take on the teacher's role. Continue in the same way for four to five minutes.

16. Do You Remember?

Students open their Student Books to a Conversation Time or Word Time page they have studied, and look at the large scene for one minute. When the time is up, students close their books and name as many items as they can.

17. Draw the Picture.

Divide the class into two teams. Place the target picture cards into a hat, large envelope, or small bag. Bring a volunteer from each team to the front of the classroom and ask them each to choose a card from the hat. The volunteers then draw a picture of their word on the board and their teams try to be the first to identify the picture. The first team to correctly identify the picture wins a point. The volunteers return to their seats and a new volunteer from each team comes to the board. Continue play until all words have been chosen from the hat. The team with the most points at the end wins.

VARIATIONS:

1. Both volunteers draw the same word.
2. Limit the drawing time to one minute. For extra challenge, shorten the amount of time even more.
3. Bring a volunteer from one team to the front of the classroom. Ask him/her to choose a word from the hat, then draw that word. The rest of the team guesses what is being drawn. Time how long it takes them to answer correctly. Record the time, then have a student from the other team take a turn in the same way. Continue until all words have been chosen from the hat. At the end of the game, add up each team's times. The team with the shortest time wins.

18. Eyewitness.

Divide the class into groups of three to four. Give each group a piece of paper. Place a set of ten picture cards facedown on a desk at the front of the classroom, and have a volunteer from each group come to the desk. Turn the cards faceup. The volunteers look at the cards, run back to their groups, and name as many of the cards as they can. Groups then try to be the first to make a list of those items by writing the name or drawing a picture of each one, then raising their hands. Groups take turns saying the words. Both the group that finishes first and the group that has the most correct win a point. Place a different set of ten cards on the desk at the front of the classroom, bring up different volunteers, and do the activity again in the same way.

19. Find Your Partner: Words.

Give each student a picture card, making sure to distribute at least two of each card. Students walk around the classroom naming their card, and try to find another student with the same card. When students find a student with the same card, the two come to the

teacher, name their card, and write the word on the board. If they do this correctly, they win a point. If they do not do this correctly, they correct the mistake and do not win a point. Once most students have come to the teacher, have students exchange cards and do the activity again. Continue in the same way for five to seven minutes. The student at the end with the most points wins.

20. Four Corners.

In each corner of the classroom place a sign with a picture representing a unit category. For example: animals, school supplies, nature, fruit. Say a Word Time word that corresponds to one of the categories. For example: *pen*. Students repeat the word and run to the corner of the room with that category's sign. If students are standing in the wrong corner, they sit down. Continue in the same way until there is just one student left standing.

LARGE CLASSES: Students point to the correct sign instead of running to it.

21. Guess the Card.

Divide the class into groups of four to five. Give each group 10–15 picture cards. Each group places their cards facedown in a row in front of them. One student in each group touches one of the cards and tries to guess what it is, saying *This is a (tree)*, then turns the card over. If the guess is correct, the card is left faceup. If the guess is not correct, the student names the card then turns it back over. Students in each group take turns trying to identify the cards until all cards have been turned over.

22. Guess the Order.

Divide the class into groups of three to four. Show students five picture cards, then shuffle the cards and stand them on the chalktray with the pictures facing the board. Write a number from 1–5 above each card (do not use the same number twice). Groups guess which card is below each number by writing numbers 1–5 on a piece of paper, then writing the name of a card next to each number. A volunteer from each group then writes the group's guesses on the board. Turn the cards to face the class, point to each card, and elicit its name. Groups then check how many cards they correctly identified. The group that correctly identified the most cards wins a point. Any group that correctly identified all the cards wins a bonus point. Continue in the same way for five to seven minutes. The group with the most points at the end wins.

VARIATION: Give each group a set of picture cards. Two groups (Group A and Group B) then join together and stand facing each other. Group A shows Group B their cards, shuffles them, and then places them facedown between the two groups. Volunteers in Group B point to each card and try to name it. Group A turn the cards faceup. Group B wins a point for each correctly named card. The two groups then change roles and Group A takes a turn trying to name Group B's cards.

23. Guess What's Missing.

Place six picture cards on the chalktray. Students study the cards for 10–15 seconds, then close their eyes. Remove one of the cards. Students open their eyes and try to be the first to raise their hands and identify the missing card. When a student correctly identifies the missing card, he/she wins a point. Play until all cards have been removed from the chalktray. Then play again, having volunteers take on the teacher's role of removing cards from the chalktray. The student with the most points at the end wins.

VARIATIONS:

1. For extra challenge, remove more than one card each time.
2. Divide the class into two teams. Play as above, with students in each team cooperating to identify the missing card. The first team to correctly identify the missing card wins a point.

24. Hold It Up!

Give each student a picture card. Name one of the items illustrated on the cards. Students with that card repeat and hold it up. For added challenge, name two or three items at a time, name items for which students do not have cards, or gradually name the items at a faster pace. Continue in the same way for three to four minutes.

25. Hunt for the Words.

Hide seven of each picture card around the classroom. Divide the class into groups of three to four. Give each group a set of each of the picture cards hidden around the classroom. Tell all groups how many more of each card they need to find. For example: two flowers, one tree, three birds. Say *Start!* Groups try to be the first to find the required number of cards, then run to the teacher and name those cards. The first group to collect and correctly name all their cards wins.

VARIATION: Two groups play against each other, hiding cards for the opposing group to find. For this activity the cards for each group need to be a different color.

26. Listen to the Clues.

Hold up a picture card with the back of the card facing the class. Give simple clues about the picture and have students try to identify it. For example (*banana* card): *It's yellow. Monkeys like this.* Do the same with five to seven different cards.

27. Old Maid.

Divide the class into groups of four to six. Give each group a set of cards made up of two identical sets of ten picture cards each, plus one card without a match. This card without a match is the *Old Maid* card. A volunteer in each group then distributes the cards evenly among the members of his/her group. Students look at the cards they have, place any matching pairs on the desk in front of them, and name them. If they are not able to name them, they must keep the cards until the next turn. Students in each group then take turns taking one card from the student sitting on their left. If the new card

matches one they have, they name it and put the pair down on the desk. If the card does not match, they keep the card and the next student takes a turn. Students continue in the same way until one student has put down all his/her cards. The student in each group with the most matching pairs at the end wins. The student with the odd card at the end is *Old Maid* and cannot win the game even if he/she has the most matching pairs.

28. Pair Them Up.

Prepare two identical sets of picture cards with enough cards for each student to get one card from each set. Distribute the cards from one of the sets among students, giving each student a card. Place the remaining set of cards facedown on a desk in the middle of the classroom. Divide the class into groups of four to six. A volunteer from one of the groups (S1) goes to the cards, points to one, guesses what it is, then turns the card over. If S1 is correct, he/she takes the card and checks to see if it matches a card his/her group has. If it does match, S1 keeps the pair. If it does not match, S1 returns the card to the desk, and a volunteer from another group takes a turn. If S1 does not guess correctly, or cannot correctly name the card, he/she turns the card back over and a volunteer from another group takes a turn. Continue in the same way until one group has placed all of its cards down as pairs. This group wins the game.

LARGE CLASSES: Divide the class into groups of four to six. Each group then plays as above. The student in each group with the most pairs at the end wins.

29. Pantomime and Guess the Word.

Pantomime an action related to a vocabulary word and have students try to identify the word. For example: (*banana*) pantomime peeling a banana and eating it. Continue pantomiming until a student correctly identifies the item. Then bring two to three students to the front of the classroom to take on the teacher's role. Alternatively, students work in groups, with students in each group taking turns pantomiming. Continue in the same way for five to seven minutes.

30. Race Track.

Divide the class into groups of five to six. Give each group two sets of picture cards and a die. Groups place their picture cards faceup in a circle. Designate a starting point on each group's circle and tell students how many times they must go around the circle in order to finish. Each student then places a marker on the designated starting point. Students in each group then take turns rolling the die and moving their markers around the circle, one card per number on the die. When students land on a card, they name it. If they correctly name it, they remain on that card. If they fail to name it, they return their marker to where it was at the start of that turn. The first student in each group to complete the required number of rounds wins. For extra challenge, when a student lands on a card and correctly names it, he/she turns it facedown so that the next student to land on that card must name it from memory.

31. Run and Find.

Attach a set of picture cards to the walls around the classroom. Divide the class into Teams A and B. Bring a volunteer from each team to the front of the classroom. Name one of the picture cards. These two volunteers try to be the first to repeat the word, then run to and touch the named card. The student to first touch the correct card wins a point for his/her team. Another student from each team then comes to the front of the classroom. Play continues in the same way until all cards have been named. Students can also come to the front of the classroom and take on the teacher's role, calling out words. The team with the most points at the end wins.

LARGE CLASSES: Divide the class into groups of three to four and give each group a set of picture cards. Groups then place their cards face up in the middle of the group. Say one of the words. Students in each group try to be the first to repeat the word, then find and hold up the named card. If the correct card is held up, the student keeps it. If a student holds up an incorrect card, he/she returns the card to the desk. Play continues until one group has picked up all their cards. The student in each group with the most cards at the end wins.

VARIATION: Assign a number to each student, making sure that for each number on Team A, there is the same number on Team B. Name one of the picture cards. Then say a number. The student from each team with that number tries to be the first to run and touch the named card.

32. Slow Reveal.

Hold up a picture card with another card or piece of paper covering it so that only a small portion of the picture is showing. Students try to name the picture. Each time a student incorrectly names the picture, slide the covering card down to gradually reveal more of the picture. Continue sliding the cover down until a student is able to name the picture. Continue in the same way with five to seven different cards.

33. Snap.

Place a set of picture cards and a set of the corresponding word cards in two piles facedown on a desk in the middle of the classroom. Simultaneously turn over one card from each pile. Students look at the two cards, decide if they match or not, then snap their fingers if they do match. The first student to snap his/her fingers to correctly identify a match then names each card and wins a point. If the cards do not match or if students do not correctly identify the match, continue play with two new cards. Play until all cards have been turned over. The student with the most points at the end wins.

LARGE CLASSES: Divide the class into groups of six to eight and have each group play as above.

VARIATION: Play with two sets of word cards. For extra challenge, use words with similar spellings.

34. Tic-Tac-Toe: Words.

Divide the class into pairs. Two pairs play against each other. Give each set of pairs nine picture cards. Pairs place the picture cards face up to make a 3×3 grid between them. Pairs take turns naming a card in the grid. If the pair is correct, they place their marker on that square of the grid. The first pair to place three markers in a row (horizontal, vertical, or diagonal) wins the game.

35. Touch the Card.

Place 10–15 picture cards on a desk in the middle of the classroom. Students gather around that desk. Name a card. Students try to be the first to touch the named card. The first student to touch the correct card and name it keeps the card. Continue in the same way until no cards are left on the desk. The student with the most cards at the end wins. Play again, having a volunteer take on the teacher's role and name the cards.

LARGE CLASSES: Divide the class into groups of four to five. Each group plays as above.

VARIATION: Instead of naming a card, hold up a word card. Students read the word silently and try to be the first to touch and name the corresponding picture card.

36. Verb Relay.

Divide the class into Teams A and B, then have each team stand in a line. Give a set of verb picture cards to the first student (S1) in each line. S1 turns to face his/her team, looks at the first card and pantomimes the action for the second student in his/her line (S2). S2 identifies the action being pantomimed. Then S1 turns over the next card in his/her pile and pantomimes that action for S3 and so on to the end of the line. The first team to finish wins a point. S1 then goes to the back of the line, the student now at the front of the line becomes the new S1, and play continues in the same way. The first team to get five points wins.

37. What Am I Drawing?

Slowly draw a picture of a vocabulary item on the board, pause several times, and ask *What's this?* Using complete sentences if possible, students try to identify the item. The first student to name the item is next to draw. Continue in the same way with four to six volunteers.

38. What's in the Bag?

Place realia of vocabulary items in a bag. A volunteer feels the bag, tries to identify an item without looking at it, then removes it from the bag. If the student identifies the item correctly, he/she keeps it and another volunteer takes a turn. If he/she does not identify the item correctly, the item is put back in the bag and another volunteer takes a turn. Continue in the same way until no items are left in the bag.

VARIATION: When volunteers feel items in the bag, ask them *What's that?* or *What is it?* Volunteers reply *It's a (pencil).*

39. Where Is It in the Book?

Name an item, a character, or an action from a Student Book unit. Students try to be the first to find the page on which the item, character, or action appears, point to it, then name it. The first student to do so wins a point. Continue in the same way until students have looked at at least one third of the pages they have studied. The student at the end with the most points wins.

Note: As a character or item may appear on more than one page, including pages not yet studied, accept any answer that is correct.

VARIATION: Students find a character in the Student Book and mimic that character's actions or gestures. The rest of the class tries to find that character in their Student Books, and name the character, an item that character has, or what that character is doing.

40. Which Card Doesn't Belong?

Divide the class into two teams. A volunteer from each team comes to the front of the classroom. Give each of these volunteers identical sets of four picture cards, three cards from the same unit or category and one card from a different unit or category. For example: *pig, cat, horse, pencil*. Say *Go!* The volunteers look at their cards, place the card that doesn't belong on the chalktray, and name it. The first volunteer to place the correct card on the chalktray and name it wins a point for his/her team. The team wins another point for each card the members of the team can correctly name. Continue in the same way until every student has had a turn. The team with the most points at the end wins.

Games and Activities for Grammar Practice

41. Complete the Sentences.

Make a list of incomplete sentences, such as *I like _____, I can _____, I'm _____*. Say one of them. A volunteer repeats, filling in the blank with an appropriate word. If the volunteer completes the sentence correctly, he/she wins a point. If he/she does not complete the sentence correctly, any other student can complete the sentence and win a point. Say another incomplete sentence and have another volunteer take a turn. Continue until most students have had a turn. The student with the most points at the end wins.

VARIATION: Do the activity in groups, with students from each group taking turns coming to the front of the classroom, choosing a strip of paper with the incomplete sentence written on it, and returning to his/her group to read the sentence. The rest of the group completes the sentence.

42. Guess Who.

Divide the class into groups of four to six. Place six picture cards facedown on a desk at the front of the classroom. One of the groups comes to the front of the classroom and each member takes one of the cards. Students in the other groups take turns asking questions using the target pattern in order to determine each

student's card. For example: (*Pat*), *do you like apples?* If the student has the *apples* card, he/she answers *Yes, I do*, and gives the card to the group that asked the question. That group then takes another turn. If the student does not have the *apples* card, he/she replies *No, I don't*, and another group takes a turn. Groups continue in the same way until the group at the front of the classroom has no cards left. Another group then comes to the front of the classroom.

43. Make the Sentences.

Divide the class into groups of four to five. Give each group a set of grammar cards and the related Word Time Word Cards. Students use these cards to make statements or questions and answers following the target pattern. For statements: Groups make statements and read them aloud. For questions and answers: One half of each group creates a question, then reads it aloud. The other half of the group then makes the answer and reads it aloud.

VARIATION: Prepare six to eight sentences (or questions and answers) using the target patterns. Dictate each sentence (or question and answer). Students repeat and write each complete sentence on a piece of paper. When finished, have a volunteer come to the front of the classroom, write the sentence on the board, and read it aloud. If the sentence is incorrect, have volunteers make corrections. Students then check their own sentence and correct it if necessary. Continue in the same way until all the sentences have been written correctly on the board.

44. Memory Chain.

A student (S1) makes a statement using the target pattern. For example: *I like apples*. The student sitting next to or behind him/her (S2) says S1's name, repeats the statement, then adds his/her own statement. For example: *Jim, you like apples. I like bananas*. The student sitting next to or behind S2 (S3) then repeats S1 and S2's statements, and adds his/her own. Students continue in the same way until someone is unable to repeat all the previous statements. The activity then begins again starting with this student.

45. Pass the Message.

Students work seated in rows. The first student in each row (S1) thinks of a statement using the target pattern and whispers it to the second student in the row (S2). S2 whispers the statement to the third student in the row (S3). S3 then whispers the statement to S4, and so on down the row. When the statement reaches the last student in the row, he/she says it aloud. If it matches S1's original statement, the row wins a point. If it does not match S1's original statement, the row does not win a point. Students in each row then move forward one seat and do the activity again. Continue until all students have had a turn sitting in the first seat of the row.

VARIATION: Play as above, but have the last student ask a question using the question form of the statement. For example: S1: *I like pizza*. Last student: (*S1's name*), *do you like pizza?*

46. True or False?

Using both target and review sentence patterns, prepare 10–20 statements, some true and some false (try to make the false statements as humorous as possible!). For example: *I'm Mr. Smith. I'm an astronaut. I have ten brothers and nine sisters.* Say one of the statements. Students who think the statement is true go to the front of the classroom, and those who think the statement is false go to the back of the classroom. Students who were correct and can repeat the sentence win a point. Continue in the same way until all the statements have been read. The student with the most points at the end wins.

47. What's Different?

Bring four to six volunteers to the front of the classroom. Give each volunteer a picture card. Have the volunteers hold their cards so that the rest of the class can see them. Seated students make statements about the volunteers using the target pattern and the card the volunteer is holding. For example: if the grammar pattern is *He/She likes (hamburgers)* and a volunteer is holding the *sushi* card, the student says *(Mari) likes sushi.* When a statement has been made about each volunteer, seated students close their eyes and three to four of the volunteers exchange cards. Students then open their eyes and make statements about the students who changed cards. For example: *(Ken) likes sushi.* Another four to six volunteers then come to the front of the classroom and do the activity again in the same way.

Games and Activities for Phonics and Spelling Practice

Note: All the games below can be played using either Phonics Time Picture Cards or Word Cards.

48. Bingo: Initial Letter.

Play Bingo. (See Game 10, page 141 for detailed instructions.) Hold up an alphabet card that corresponds to the initial letter of a picture in students' grids. Students place their markers on the corresponding pictures.

49. Bingo: Spelling.

Play Bingo. (See Game 10, page 141 for detailed instructions.) Students spell the named items with alphabet cards. If the spelling is correct, they place a marker over that picture in their grid.

50. Concentration: Picture to Initial Letter.

Play Concentration. (See Game 11, page 141 for detailed instructions.) Use 10–20 pairs of picture cards and alphabet cards that correspond to the picture cards' initial letters. Students match each picture card with its initial letter.

51. Duck, Duck, Goose.

On the board, write two lists of words with different initial or vowel sounds. For example: *b/p* or *short a/short e.* Designate one list as *List A*, and the other as *List B.*

Students sit in a circle. A volunteer walks around the circle, tapping each student on the head and saying a word from either *List A* or *List B.* If the word is from *List A*, the seated student stays seated. If, however, the volunteer taps a student's head and says a word from *List B*, that student (S1) quickly stands up and tries to tap the volunteer on the shoulder before the volunteer has run all the way around the circle and sat down in the S1's spot. If the volunteer is tapped on the shoulder, he/she remains the volunteer. If he/she sits down before being tapped on the shoulder, S1 becomes the new volunteer. Continue in the same way for five to seven minutes.

52. Find Your Partner: Sounds.

Play Find Your Partner. (See Game 19, page 142 for detailed instructions.) Use alphabet cards and picture cards illustrating words that begin with those letters. Students walk around the classroom naming their card or saying the sound of their letter, and try to match picture to initial sound. When students find a partner, the two come to the teacher and name their cards. If they do this correctly, they each win a point. If they do not do this correctly, they correct the mistake and do not win a point. Once most students have come to the teacher, have them exchange cards and do the activity again. The student with the most points at the end wins.

53. Guess from the Initial Letter.

Put a picture card and the alphabet card corresponding to its initial letter back to back. Hold up the cards with the alphabet card facing students. Elicit the sound of the letter, then point to the picture card and ask *What's this?* Students try to identify it by naming items that start with that initial sound. When a student correctly identifies the picture, turn the card to face the class then they repeat the word and its initial sound.

54. Hold Up the Card.

Give each student an alphabet card. Say the sound of one of the letters. The students with the corresponding card hold it up and repeat that letter's sound. For added challenge, say two or more sounds at a time, name letters for which students do not have cards, or gradually say the sounds at a faster pace.

55. I Spy.

Make sure there are many items in the classroom which students can name in English. If not, place picture cards of familiar items around the classroom. Say, for example, *I spy something that begins with /b/.* Students look around the classroom and try to name an item that begins with *b.* If they are correct, say *Yes* and give that student(s) a point. If the guess is not correct, reply *No* and have students continue guessing until someone guesses correctly. Give clues to help, if students are having trouble guessing, for example: *It's small, it's red.* Continue in the same way for five to seven minutes.

56. Make the Words.

Divide the class into groups of three to four. Give each group a set of alphabet cards with several extra vowel cards. Groups place all cards facedown in the middle of the group, and each student takes seven cards. The rest of the cards are left on the desk. A student (S1) begins by looking at his/her alphabet cards to see if he/she can spell a word. If he/she can spell a word, he/she lays out the alphabet cards to make that word on his/her desk, reads the word aloud, then picks up the same number of alphabet cards from the stack. The next student (S2) takes a turn, and tries to make a new word by adding his/her own letters to one of the letters in S1's word. If S2 can make a word, he/she joins it to the word on the desk like a crossword puzzle and reads the word aloud. If S2 cannot do this, the next student takes a turn. Students continue in the same way until all cards have been used. Students can use their Student Books for reference.

57. Pass the Sounds.

Divide the class into groups of five to six. Each group stands in a line. Give the first student in each line (S1) a set of alphabet cards. Show the last student in each line a card illustrating a word that starts with one of those letters. Students whisper the word down each line until it reaches S1. S1 says the word and its initial sound, then holds up the alphabet card corresponding to that initial sound. If S1 is correct, he/she wins a point for his/her line. If S1 is not correct, other students in line correct him/her. The last student in each line then goes to the front of the line. Continue in the same way until all students have had a turn being at the front of the line. The line with the most points at the end wins.

VARIATIONS:

1. Students pass the initial letter of the item depicted on the card down the rows by writing the letter corresponding to its initial sound on the back of the student in front of them.
2. Groups whisper the words down the lines in the same way. S1s spell the word they hear with alphabet cards then raise their hands and say the word.

58. Snap.

Play Snap. (See Game 33, page 144 for detailed instructions.) Use a set of alphabet cards and a set of picture cards. Make sure each alphabet card corresponds to the initial letter of one of the picture cards. For example: *b* matches *ball*.

59. Walk and Spell.

Clear sufficient space for students to walk in the shape of letters. Show a volunteer an alphabet card and have him/her walk in the shape of that letter, as if writing the letter with his/her feet. The rest of the class tries to name the letter and say its sound. The first student to correctly identify the letter is next to "Walk and Spell" a letter. Continue until most students have taken a turn.

60. What Letter Does It Begin With?

Divide the class into groups of three to four, and give each group a set of alphabet cards. Show students a set of picture cards that begin with those letters and elicit the words. Then shuffle the cards and place them along the chalktray facing the board. One of the groups comes to the front of the classroom and places each of their alphabet cards to the left of the picture card that they think begins with that letter. Turn the picture cards around. Students in the group point to the pictures and letters that match, say the initial sound, and name the picture. For example: /b/, *boy*. If some letters and picture cards have not been matched correctly, students rearrange the remaining alphabet cards so that they are beside the pictures that begin with those letters. They again say the initial sounds and name the pictures. Shuffle the cards again and repeat the procedure.

61. What's in the Air?

Face the board and write a letter in the air with your finger. Students try to name the letter and its sound. Do the same with several other letters. A volunteer (S1) then comes to the front of the classroom. Show S1 a picture card. S1 writes the initial letter of that item in the air. The rest of the class tries to identify the letter, naming it and saying its sound. The first student to do so is next to come to the front of the classroom and repeat the procedure. Continue in the same way for three to five minutes.

62. Write With Your Body.

Divide the class into groups of three to four. Give each group a set of alphabet cards. Group members work individually or together to form the letters with their bodies. For example: To form the letter *A*, one student bends over and places his/her hands a short distance in front of his/her feet. Another student places his/her arm across the bent-over student to form the cross stroke. Groups then take turns forming the letters in front of their classmates, and saying words that begin with the letters they are forming.

Workbook Instructions and Answer Key

The Alphabet

Pages iii-iv

Trace and write.

Students trace and write each uppercase and lowercase letter.

Unit 1

Conversation Time, Page 1

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the conversation.

A. Read and match.

Students look at the pictures and match each picture to the corresponding line of conversation.

Check answers by saying each line of the conversation and having students point to the corresponding picture.

Answer Key

1. matches the right-hand picture
2. matches the left-hand picture
3. matches the middle picture

B. Look and write.

Using the word bank for support, students complete each line of the conversation.

Check answers by writing the numbers 1-3 on the board, then having volunteers come to the board and write the word(s) they chose for each number.

Answer Key

1. Good morning.
2. Hello! How are you?
3. Fine, thank you.

Word Time, Page 2

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit each word.

A. Look and match.

Students look at each picture and match it to the corresponding word.

Check answers by saying *Number 1* and having a volunteer say the word he/she matched it to. Do the same for numbers 2-6.

Answer Key

- | | |
|----------|-----------|
| 1. girl | 2. Digger |
| 3. Annie | 4. Ted |
| 5. dog | 6. boy |

B. Write the letter.

Students read each word and look at the picture. They then find and write the letter that corresponds to each word.

Check answers by saying *Number 1. Annie*, and having a volunteer name the letter he/she wrote. Do the same for numbers 2-6.

Answer Key

- | | | |
|------|------|------|
| 1. b | 2. d | 3. a |
| 4. e | 5. c | 6. f |

Practice Time, Page 3

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the patterns.

A. Look and match.

Students look at each picture and match it to the corresponding sentences.

Check answers by pointing to each picture and having volunteers say the corresponding sentence.

Answer Key

1. You're Ted. You're a boy.
2. I'm Ted. I'm a boy.
3. I'm Annie. I'm a girl.
4. I'm Digger. I'm a dog.
5. You're Digger. You're a dog.
6. You're Annie. You're a girl.

B. Your Turn. Draw and write.

Students draw a picture of themselves. They then write about themselves using the target patterns.

Check answers by having volunteers take turns standing up, showing their picture, and saying the sentences they wrote.

Answer Key

Answers will vary.

Phonics Time, Page 4

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit each word.

A. Does it begin with b or p? Look and circle.

Students look at each picture and circle the initial letter of the illustrated word.

Check answers by writing the numbers 1-8 on the board, then having volunteers come to the board and write the letter they circled for each number.

Answer Key

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. b | 2. p | 3. p | 4. b |
| 5. p | 6. b | 7. p | 8. b |

B. Match and say.

For each number, students match the uppercase letter to the corresponding lowercase letter. They then say each letter.

Check answers by having volunteers come to the board and write capital and lowercase *b* and *p*. Then point to each letter and elicit its name.

Answer Key

1. $\begin{matrix} p & \times & B \\ b & \times & P \end{matrix}$ 2. $\begin{matrix} B & \times & p \\ P & \times & b \end{matrix}$ 3. $\begin{matrix} p & \times & B \\ b & \times & P \end{matrix}$

C. Look and write.

Students look at each picture and write the corresponding word.

Check answers by writing the numbers 1–3 on the board, then having volunteers come to the board and write the word they wrote for each number. Then point to each word and elicit its initial sound.

Answer Key

1. pizza 2. pencil 3. bird

Unit 2

Conversation Time, Page 5

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the conversation.

A. Read and match.

Students match each line of conversation to the corresponding picture.

Check answers by saying each line of the conversation and having students point to the corresponding picture.

Answer Key

1. matches the right-hand picture
2. matches the left-hand picture
3. matches the middle picture

B. Unscramble, match, and write.

Students draw a line from each scrambled sentence to the corresponding unscrambled sentence. They then write the unscrambled sentence.

Check answers by writing the numbers the 1–3 on the board, then having volunteers come to the board and write the unscrambled lines of conversation they wrote for each number. Make sure students have also correctly capitalized and punctuated the sentences.

Answer Key

1. Bless you!
2. Thanks.
3. Ah-choo!

Word Time, Page 6

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit each word.

A. Look and circle.

Students look at each picture and circle the corresponding word.

Check answers by pointing to each picture and having a volunteer say the word he/she circled.

Answer Key

1. lake 2. tree
3. butterfly 4. cloud
5. flower 6. bird

B. Look and write.

Students look at each picture and write the corresponding word.

Check answers by writing the numbers 1–6 on the board, then having volunteers come to the board and write the word they wrote for each number.

Answer Key

1. bird 2. cloud
3. tree 4. lake
5. flower 6. butterfly

Practice Time, Page 7

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the patterns.

A. Look and circle.

Students look at each picture and circle *this* or *that*.

Check answers by saying *Number 1* and having students say *this* and touch their desks if they circled *this*. If they circled *that*, they should say *that* and point to something in the distance. Do the same for numbers 2–4.

Answer Key

1. this 2. that 3. this 4. that

B. Look and write.

Students look at each numbered spot in the large scene. For each number, they then use the target pattern to write a sentence.

Check answers by writing the numbers 1–4 on the board having volunteers come to the board and write the sentence they wrote for each number.

Answer Key

1. This is a flower. 2. That's a lake.
3. That's a cloud. 4. This is a bird.

C. Your turn. Draw and write.

Students draw pictures illustrating *this* and *that* then write a sentence about each picture.

Check answers by having volunteers take turns standing up, showing their picture, and saying the sentences they wrote.

Answer Key

Answers will vary.

Phonics Time, Page 8

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the words.

A. Does it begin with g or k? Circle and write.
Students circle the initial letter of each illustrated word then write the word.

Check answers by writing the numbers 1–6 on the board, then having volunteers come to the board and write both the letter they circled and the word they wrote for each number.

Answer Key

1. k, key
2. g, girl
3. k, kite

B. Which pictures begin with the same sound? Circle.

For each number, students circle the two illustrations of words that begin with the same sound.

Check answers by pointing to and naming each picture, then having volunteers point to and name the pictures they circled.

Answer Key

1. girl, garden
2. kangaroo, key
3. gorilla, girl
4. kite, key

C. Match and say.

For each number, students match each uppercase letter to the corresponding lowercase letter. They then say each letter.

Check answers by having volunteers come to the board and write uppercase and lowercase g and k. Then point to each letter and elicit its name.

Answer Key

1. $\begin{matrix} g & \times & K \\ k & \times & G \end{matrix}$
2. $\begin{matrix} k & \times & G \\ g & \times & K \end{matrix}$
3. $\begin{matrix} G - g \\ K - k \end{matrix}$

Unit 3

Conversation Time, Page 9

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the conversation.

A. Read and match.

Students match each line of conversation to the corresponding picture.

Check answers by saying each line of the conversation and having students point to the corresponding picture.

Answer Key

1. matches the middle picture.
2. matches the right-hand picture.
3. matches the left-hand picture.

B. Look and write.

Using the word bank for support, students complete each line of the conversation.

Check answers by writing the numbers 1–4 on the board, then having volunteers come to the board and write the full sentence next to each number.

Answer Key

1. Sh! Be quiet!
2. Sorry.
3. That's okay.

Word Time, Page 10

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the words.

A. Look and match.

Students match the partial view of each animal to the corresponding word to the full view of the animal.

Check answers by pointing to each animal's partial view, then having students say the corresponding word and point to the full view of the animal.

Answer Key

1. horse
2. sheep
3. chicken
4. pig
5. cat
6. cow

B. Find and circle.

Students find and circle each target vocabulary word.

Check answers by saying each word and having students point to and spell the word they circled.

Answer Key

horseckpicatgmslapigchsheepfambcow
chickenrhose

C. Unscramble and write.

Students unscramble and write each word.

Check answers by writing the numbers 1–6 on the board, then having volunteers come to the board and write the unscrambled word for each number.

Answer Key

1. sheep
2. cat
3. pig
4. horse
5. chicken
6. cow

Practice Time, Page 11

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the patterns.

A. Look and write.

Students use the target patterns to write a question and answer about each picture.

Check answers by saying *Number 1* and having a volunteer say the sentences he/she wrote. Do the same for numbers 2–6.

Answer Key

1. What's this? It's a cat.
2. What's that? It's a horse.
3. What's this? It's a sheep.
4. What's this? It's a cow.
5. What's that? It's a chicken.
6. What's that? It's a pig.

B. Your turn. Draw and write.

Students draw a picture illustrating the target patterns. They then write about the picture using the target patterns.

Check answers by having volunteers take turns standing up, showing their pictures, and saying the sentences they wrote.

Answer Key

Answers will vary.

Phonics Time, Page 12

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the initial sound of each word.

A. Which picture begins with the letter? Write ✓.

For each number, students read the letter and check the illustration of the word that begins with that letter.

Check answers by saying *Number 1*, then pointing to and naming each picture. Students repeat, then raise their hands if they circled the picture. Do the same for numbers 2–6.

Answer Key

- | | |
|-----------|----------|
| 1. mother | 2. nurse |
| 3. milk | 4. net |
| 5. night | 6. mop |

B. Which pictures begin with the letter? Circle.

For each row, students read the letter then circle the illustrations of the words that begin with that letter.

Check answers by pointing to and naming each picture. Students say each word's initial sound, then nod their heads *yes* if they circled that picture, and shake their heads *no* if they did not.

Answer Key

m: mother, milk n: net, night

Review 1

Page 13

A. Look and match.

Students look at each picture and match it to the corresponding sentence.

Check answers by saying *Number 1* and having a volunteer say the sentence he/she circled. Do the same for numbers 2–6.

Answer Key

- | | |
|-------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. I'm Ted. | 2. That's a horse. |
| 3. I'm a girl. | 4. What's that? It's a bird. |
| 5. This is a butterfly. | 6. You're a dog. |

B. Look and circle.

Students look at each picture and circle the corresponding word.

Check answers by saying *Number 1* and having a volunteer say and spell the word he/she circled. Do the same for numbers 2–6.

Answer Key

- | | | |
|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. cow | 2. cat | 3. bird |
| 4. lake | 5. girl | 6. tree |

Page 14

A. Look at the numbers. Write the sentence.

Students look at each number above the writing grids, find the same number in the chart above, and write the corresponding word or punctuation mark on the writing grid.

Check answers by saying *Number 1* and having a volunteer read the sentences he/she wrote. Do the same for numbers 2–4.

Answer Key

1. Good morning. How are you?
2. I'm Annie. I'm a girl.
3. You're Ted. You're a boy.
4. This is a flower. That's a tree.

B. Which picture begins with a different sound? Write X.

For each number, students write *X* on the illustration of the word that has a different initial sound.

Check answers by saying *Number 1*, then pointing to and naming each picture. Volunteers point to and name the pictures they wrote *X* on. Do the same for numbers 2–4.

Answer Key

- | | | | |
|--------|---------|----------|---------|
| 1. pig | 2. girl | 3. night | 4. ball |
|--------|---------|----------|---------|

Unit 4

Conversation Time, Page 15

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the conversation.

A. Look and write.

Using the word bank for support, students complete each line of the conversation.

Check answers by writing the numbers 1–3 on the board, then having volunteers come to the board and write the complete sentence for each number.

Answer Key

1. Here you are.
2. Thanks.
3. You're welcome.

B. Unscramble, match, and write.

Students draw a line from each scrambled sentence to the corresponding unscrambled sentence. They then write the unscrambled sentence.

Check answers by writing the numbers 1–3 on the board then having volunteers come to the board and write the unscrambled sentence they wrote for each number. Make sure students have correctly capitalized and punctuated each sentence.

Answer Key

1. Thanks.
2. Here you are.
3. You're welcome.

Word Time, Page 16

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the words.

A. Write the letter.

Students read each word and look at the picture. They then find and write the letter that corresponds to each word.

Check answers by saying *Number 1. book*, and having a volunteer say the letter he/she wrote.

Do the same for numbers 2–6.

Answer Key

- | | | |
|------|------|------|
| 1. d | 2. e | 3. b |
| 4. c | 5. f | 6. a |

B. Read the question. Write the answer.

Students read each question and write the answer.

Check answers by saying *Number 1. What's this? A volunteer says the sentence he/she wrote. Do the same for numbers 2–4.*

Answer Key

1. What's this? It's a pencil case.
2. What's this? It's a book.
3. What's this? It's a pencil.
4. What's this? It's a pen.

Practice Time, Page 17

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the patterns.

A. Look and circle.

Students look at each picture and circle the corresponding phrase.

Check answers by writing the numbers 1–6 on the board, then having volunteers come to the board and write the phrase they circled for each number.

Answer Key

- | | |
|--------------|------------------|
| 1. a pencil | 2. a pen |
| 3. an eraser | 4. a pencil case |
| 5. a ruler | 6. a book |

B. Read the question. Write the answer.

Students read each question and write the answer.

Check answers by reading question and having students read the answer they wrote.

Answer Key

1. Is it a book? No, it isn't. It's a pencil.
2. Is it a ruler? Yes, it is.
3. Is it an eraser? Yes, it is.
4. Is it a pencil? No, it isn't. It's a pen.

Phonics Time, Page 18

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the words.

A. Does it begin with d or t? Write the word.

Students look at the large picture and find all illustrations of words that begin with *d*. They then write those words in the *d words* column. They do the same for the *t* words.

Check answers by writing *d words* and *t words* on the board, then having volunteers come to the board and write the words they wrote in each column.

Answer Key

- | | | | |
|----------|---------|-------|-------|
| d words: | desk | dog | duck |
| t words: | teacher | tiger | table |

B. What letter does it begin with? Read and write ✓.

Students look at the picture at the top of each column. They then determine what letter it begins with and write ✓ in that letter's row.

Check answers by naming each picture and having students say its initial letter.

Answer Key

- | | |
|-------------|----------------|
| d duck, dog | t tiger, table |
| b ball | p pencil |
| g gorilla | k key |
| m milk | n net |

Unit 5

Conversation Time, Page 19

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the conversation.

A. Look and write.

Using the word bank for support, students complete each line of conversation.

Check answers by saying *Number 1* and having a volunteer say the sentence. Do the same for numbers 2–4.

Answer Key

1. What's your first name? Ted.
2. What's your last name? Lee.

B. Look and circle.

Students look at the picture cues then circle the words that make up the corresponding sentence.

Check answers by saying *Number 1* and having students say the sentence they circled. Do the same for number 2.

Answer Key

1. What's your first name?
2. What's your last name?

C. Your turn. Read the question. Write the answer.

Students read each question and write the answer about themselves.

Check answers by asking volunteers the questions and having them answer.

Answer Key

Answers will vary.

Word Time, Page 20

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the words.

A. Write the number.

Students read the word form of each number, then write the corresponding numeral.

Check answers by writing the numbers 1–4 on the board, then having volunteers come to the board and write the number they wrote for each number.

Answer Key

1. 1 2. 4 3. 11 4. 6

B. Write the word.

Students look at each numeral, then write its corresponding word form.

Check answers by writing 12 on the board and having a volunteer say and spell the word he/she wrote. Do the same for the remaining numbers.

Answer Key

1. twelve 2. eight 3. two
4. seven 5. three 6. ten

C. Look and match.

Students look at each picture and match it to the corresponding phrase.

Check answers by pointing to each picture and having volunteers say the phrase they circled.

Answer Key

1. twelve birds 2. five cows
3. four dogs 4. two trees
5. eight pens 6. one boy

D. Find and circle the numbers.

Students find and circle six different vocabulary words.

Check answers by saying each word and having students point to and spell the word they circled.

Answer Key

two twelve one ve nine eleven four seven

Practice Time, Page 21

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the patterns.

A. Count and write.

Students look at the picture cue to the right of each number. They then find that item in the large scene, count how many of that item there are, and write that number and item name in the space provided.

Check answers by saying *Number 1. How many pigs?* A volunteer says the answer he/she wrote. Do the same for numbers 2–4.

Answer Key

1. six pigs 2. one cow 3. two trees 4. five cats

B. Look and write.

Students look at each picture and, using the target patterns, write a question and answer about each one.

Check answers by pointing to each picture and eliciting both the question and its answer.

Answer Key

1. How many books? Seven books.
2. How many boys? Eight boys.
3. How many pens? Four pens.
4. How many clouds? Five clouds.

Phonics Time, Page 22

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the words.

A. Does it begin with h or w? Look and match.

Students match each picture to the letter that corresponds to its initial sound.

Check answers by saying *Number 1* and having a volunteer say the word and its initial letter. Do the same for numbers 2–6.

Answer Key

1. h 2. h 3. w
4. w 5. w 6. h

B. Match and say.

Students match the uppercase letter to the corresponding lowercase letter. They then say each letter.

Check answers by having volunteers come to the board and write capital and lowercase *h* and *w*. Then point to each letter and elicit its name.

Answer Key

1. h — H 2. W \times h 3. h \times W
 w — W H \times w w \times H

C. Does it begin with h or w? Circle and write.

Students circle the initial letter of each illustrated word then write the word.

Check answers by writing the numbers 1–6 on the board, then having volunteers come to the board and write both the letter they circled and the word they wrote for each number.

Answer Key

1. h, house 2. w, water 3. h, horse
4. w, woman 5. h, hand 6. w, window

Unit 6

Conversation Time, Page 23

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the conversation.

A. Read and match.

Students match each line of conversation to the corresponding picture.

Check answers by saying each line of conversation and having students point to the corresponding picture.

Answer Key

1. matches the middle picture
2. matches the right-hand picture
3. matches the left-hand picture

B. Unscramble and match.

Students draw a line from each scrambled sentence to the corresponding unscrambled sentence.

Check answers by saying *Number 1* and having a volunteer say the sentence he/she matched it to. Do the same for numbers 2–3.

Answer Key

1. Are you okay?
2. I think so.
3. Ouch!

C. Circle and write.

Students circle the correct lines of the conversation, paying particular attention to capitalization and punctuation. They then write it.

Check answers by writing the numbers 1–3 on the board, then having volunteers come to the board and write the sentence they circled and wrote for each number.

Answer Key

1. Ouch!
2. Are you okay?
3. I think so.

Word Time, Page 24

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the words.

A. Look and write.

Students look at each picture and write the corresponding word.

Check answers by saying *Number 1* and having a volunteer say the word he/she wrote. Do the same for numbers 2–6.

Answer Key

- | | | |
|-----------|---------|------------|
| 1. happy | 2. hot | 3. sad |
| 4. hungry | 5. cold | 6. thirsty |

B. Read and complete the pictures.

Students read the words in each speech bubble and draw the corresponding expression on the blank face.

Check answers by having several volunteers stand up and show their pictures to the class.

Answer Key

Answers will vary.

C. Your turn. Draw and write.

Students draw a picture of themselves experiencing one of the target feelings. They then write a sentence about their picture.

Check answers by having volunteers take turns standing up, showing their picture, and saying the sentence they wrote.

Answer Key

Answers will vary.

Practice Time, Page 25

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the patterns.

A. Look and write.

Using the target patterns, students write a question and answer about each picture.

Check answers by pointing to each picture and having a volunteer read both the question and the answer he/she wrote.

Answer Key

1. Are you hungry? Yes, I am.
2. Are you cold? No, I'm not. I'm hot.
3. Are you happy? Yes, I am.
4. Are you thirsty? No, I'm not. I'm hungry.

B. Your turn. Read the question. Write the answer.

Students use the target patterns to answer each question about themselves.

Check answers by reading each question and having three to four volunteers say the answers they wrote.

Answer Key

Answers will vary.

Phonics Time, Page 26

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the words.

A. Which pictures begin with the letter? Circle.

For each row, students read the letter, then circle the illustrations of the words that begin with that letter.

Check answers by pointing to and naming each picture. Students say each word's initial sound, then nod their heads *yes* if they circled that picture and shake their heads *no* if they did not.

Answer Key

f: fish, fork, feet v: violin, van

B. Look and write.

Students look at each picture and write the corresponding word.

Check answers by saying *Number 1* and having a volunteer say the word he/she wrote and its initial sound. Do the same for numbers 2–6.

Answer Key

- | | | |
|---------|-----------|---------|
| 1. van | 2. violin | 3. fork |
| 4. fish | 5. feet | 6. vase |

C. Match and say.

Students match each uppercase letter to the corresponding lowercase letter. They then say each letter.

Check answers by writing lowercase *d, n, k, p, b, w, f, t, g, m, v*, and *h* on the board. Then have volunteers come to the board and write the corresponding uppercase letter next to each lowercase letter. Then point to each letter and elicit its name.

Answer Key

- | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| d D | n N | k K | p P |
| b B | w W | f F | t T |
| g G | m M | v V | h H |

Review 2

Page 27

A. Look and match.

Students match each picture to the corresponding sentence.

Check answers by pointing to each picture and having volunteers say the corresponding sentence.

Answer Key

1. Here you are!
2. What's your first name? Annie.
3. Sh! Be quiet!
4. Ouch!
5. Good morning.

B. Write the letter.

Students read each word and look at the picture. They then find and write the letter that corresponds to each word.

Check answers by saying *Number 1. book* and having a volunteer say the letter he/she wrote. Do the same for numbers 2–6.

Answer Key

- | | | |
|------|------|------|
| 1. f | 2. d | 3. a |
| 4. c | 5. e | 6. b |

Page 28

A. Read and circle the mistakes.

Students read each sentence and circle any capitalization or punctuation mistakes.

Check answers by writing the sentences on the board, then having volunteers come to the board and circle the mistakes.

Answer Key

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. good morning?
my name is ted.
what's your first name. | 2. this is a butterfly.
what's that!
is it a cloud. |
| 3. hello.
how are you.
are you hungry. | 4. this is an eraser?
is it a pen.
no! it isn't. it's a pencil! |

B. Complete the puzzle.

Students look at the picture cues and write the corresponding words in the puzzle.

Check answers by saying *Across, Number 1* and having a volunteer say and spell the word he/she wrote. They also say its initial sound. Do the same for the remaining words.

Answer Key

- | | |
|------------|----------|
| Across | Down |
| 1. mop | 1. pig |
| 2. gorilla | 2. nurse |
| 3. water | 3. ball |
| 4. desk | 4. vase |
| 5. house | 5. table |

Unit 7

Conversation Time, Page 29

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the conversation.

A. Circle and write.

Students read each sentence then circle and write the missing word.

Check answers by reading each sentence, pausing at the blank for volunteers to say the correct word.

Answer Key

1. Are you finished?
2. No, not yet.
3. Please hurry!

B. Read and connect.

Students connect the words and punctuation marks that make up each line of the conversation.

Check answers by having a volunteer read each line of conversation he/she connected.

Answer Key

1. Are you finished?
2. No, not yet.
3. Please hurry!

Word Time, Page 30

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the words.

A. Look and match.

Students match the partial view of each food item to the corresponding word to the full view of the food item.

Check answers by pointing to the partial view of each food item, then having students say the corresponding word and point to the full view of the food item.

Answer Key

1. hamburgers
2. dumplings
3. fried rice
4. noodles
5. pizza
6. sushi

B. Unscramble and write.

Students unscramble and write each word.

Check answers by writing the numbers 1–6 on the board, then having volunteers come to the board and write the unscrambled word next to each number.

Answer Key

1. sushi
2. dumplings
3. noodles
4. pizza
5. hamburgers
6. fried rice

C. Find and circle.

Students look at the puzzle and circle each vocabulary word.

Check answers by saying each word and having students point to and spell the word they circled.

Answer Key

pizza | ings | noodles | ush | dumplings | ers | hamburgers | a
pfriedrice | m | sushi

Practice Time, Page 31

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the patterns.

A. Read and write ✓ or X.

Students look at the picture. They then write ✓ if the statement is true, and X if it is not.

Check answers by reading each sentence and having students nod their heads if they wrote ✓, and shake their heads if they wrote X.

Answer Key

1. X
2. X
3. X
4. ✓
5. X
6. ✓

B. Unscramble and write.

Students unscramble each sentence and write it.

Check answers by having a volunteer write each sentence on the board.

Answer Key

1. You don't like noodles.
2. You like pizza.

C. Your turn. Draw and write.

Students draw pictures of food items that they like and don't like (items they can name in English). They then use the target patterns to write sentences about these items.

Check answers by having volunteers take turns standing up, showing their pictures, and saying the sentences they wrote.

Answer Key

Answers will vary.

Phonics Time, Page 32

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the words.

A. Does it begin with s or z? Circle and write.

Students circle the initial letter of each illustrated word then write the word.

Check answers by writing the numbers 1–3 on the board, then having volunteers come to the board and write both the letter they circled and the word they wrote for each number.

Answer Key

1. s, soup
2. z, zipper
3. s, sock

B. Which picture begins with a different sound? Write X.

For each number, students write X on the illustration of the word that has a different initial sound.

For each number, check answers by pointing to and naming each picture, then having volunteers point to and name the pictures they wrote X on.

Answer Key

1. zebra
2. sea
3. zebra
4. soup

C. Which pictures begin with the letter? Circle.

For each row, students read the letter, then circle the illustrations of the words that begin with that letter.

Check answers by saying /s/, pointing and naming each picture in the s row. Students repeat, then raise their hands if they circled the picture. Do the same for the z row.

Answer Key

- s: sock, sea, soup z: zipper, zebra

Unit 8

Conversation Time, Page 33

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the conversation.

A. Look and write.

Using the word bank for support, students complete each line of the conversation.

Check answers by writing the numbers 1–3 on the board then having volunteers come to the board and write the complete line of conversation for each number.

Answer Key

1. May I borrow a pencil?
2. Sure. Here you are.
3. Thanks.

B. Circle and write.

Students read each sentence then circle and write the missing word.

Check answers by saying *Number 1.* and having a volunteer say the word he/she circled and wrote. Do the same for numbers 2–3.

Answer Key

1. May I borrow a pen?
2. Sure. Here you are.
3. Thanks.

Word Time, Page 34

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the words.

A. Count and write.

Students look at the picture cue to the right of each number and find that item in the large scene. They then count how many of that item are in the large scene and write the number and item name in the space provided.

Check answers by asking *How many apples?* Elicit *Three apples.* Do the same for numbers 2–6.

Answer Key

- | | |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. three apples | 2. seven carrots |
| 3. two potatoes | 4. four oranges |
| 5. five bananas | 6. six cucumbers |

B. Unscramble and write.

Students unscramble and write each word.

Check answers by saying *Number 1* and having a volunteer say and spell the word he/she wrote. Do the same for numbers 2–6.

Answer Key

- | | | |
|------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1. apples | 2. potatoes | 3. bananas |
| 4. carrots | 5. oranges | 6. cucumbers |

Practice Time, Page 35

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the patterns.

A. Look and write.

Students use the target patterns to write a question and answer about each picture.

Check answers by saying *Number 1* and having a volunteer say both the question and answer he/she wrote. Do the same for numbers 2–4.

Answer Key

1. Do you like carrots? No, I don't.
2. Do you like bananas? Yes, I do.
3. Do you like cucumbers? Yes, I do.
4. Do you like oranges? No, I don't.

B. Your turn. Read the question. Write the answer.

Students read each question and write the answer about themselves.

Check answers by reading each question and having two to three volunteers say the answers they wrote.

Answer Key

Answers will vary.

Phonics Time, Page 36

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the words.

A. Circle and write.

Students look at each picture, then circle and write the corresponding word.

Check answers by writing the numbers 1–4 on the board, then having volunteers come to the board and write the word they circled and wrote for each number.

Answer Key

1. bag
2. map
3. hat
4. ant

B. Circle the short a words.

Students circle the *short a* words.

Check answers by reading each word and having students repeat and raise their hands if they circled it.

Answer Key

1. cat
2. sad
3. bat
4. pan
5. map

C. Does it have short a? Circle.

Students circle the illustrations of words that have *short a*.

Check answers by pointing to and naming each picture. Students repeat and raise their hands if they circled it.

Answer Key

Circled pictures: map, ant, hat, cat, van

Unit 9

Conversation Time, Page 37

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the conversation.

A. Circle and write.

Students read each sentence then circle and write the missing word.

Check answers by saying *Number 1* and having a volunteer say the word he/she circled and wrote. Do the same for numbers 2–3.

Answer Key

1. What's wrong?
2. I feel sick.
3. That's too bad.

B. Unscramble, match, and write.

Students match each scrambled sentence to the corresponding unscrambled sentence. They then write the unscrambled sentence.

Check answers by writing the numbers 1–3 on the board then having volunteers come to the board and write the unscrambled sentence for each number. Make sure students have correctly capitalized and punctuated the sentences.

Answer Key

1. I feel sick.
2. That's too bad.
3. What's wrong?

Word Time, Page 38

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the words.

A. Circle and write.

Students look at each picture then circle and write the corresponding word.

Check answers by pointing to each picture and having volunteers say and spell the corresponding word.

Answer Key

- | | | |
|----------|----------|--------|
| 1. young | 2. tall | 3. fat |
| 4. thin | 5. short | 6. old |

B. Write the letter.

Students read each phrase and look at the picture. They then find and write the letter that corresponds to each phrase.

Check answers by saying *Number 1. a fat cat.* A volunteer says the letter he/she wrote. Do the same for numbers 2–6.

Answer Key

- | | | |
|------|------|------|
| 1. d | 2. f | 3. b |
| 4. a | 5. e | 6. c |

Practice Time, Page 39

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the patterns.

A. Look and match.

Students look at each picture and match it to the corresponding sentences.

Check answers by pointing to each picture and having students say the corresponding sentences.

Answer Key

1. He's young. He isn't old.
2. He's fat. He isn't thin.
3. He's tall. He isn't short.
4. She's old. She isn't young.
5. She's short. She isn't tall.
6. She's thin. She isn't fat.

B. Look and write.

Students use the target patterns to write both a positive and a negative sentence about each picture.

Check answers by pointing to each picture and having students say the sentences they wrote.

Answer Key

1. He's short. He isn't tall.
2. She's old. She isn't young.
3. He's fat. He isn't thin.

Phonics Time, Page 40

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the words.

A. Look and write.

Students look at each picture cue and write the corresponding word in the space provided.

Check answers by saying *Number 1* and having a volunteer say and spell the word he/she wrote. Do the same for numbers 2–6.

Answer Key

- | | | |
|--------|--------|--------|
| 1. pen | 2. Ted | 3. net |
| 4. egg | 5. bed | 6. vet |

B. Which pictures have the vowel sound? Circle.

For each row, students read the vowel, then circle the illustrations of words that have the vowel sound.

Check answers by pointing to and naming each picture. Students repeat each word's vowel sound, then nod their heads *yes* if they circled that picture, and shake their heads *no* if they did not.

Answer Key

short e: vet, pen, egg
short a: bag, ant, hat

C. Circle the words you can read.

Students circle any words they can read. They then count how many words they have circled and write that number in the space provided.

Answer Key

Answers will vary.

Review 3

Page 41

A. Read and connect.

Students connect the lines that make up each conversation.

Check answers by saying the first line of each conversation and having volunteers say the next two lines.

Answer Key

1. May I borrow a pen?/Sure. Here you are./Thanks.
2. What's wrong?/I feel sick./That's too bad.
3. Are you finished?/No, no yet./Please hurry!
4. Ouch!/Are you okay?/I think so.
5. Here you are./Thanks./You're welcome.

B. Look and write.

Students look at each numbered spot in the large scene. Then, for each number, they write the corresponding word below.

Check answers by saying *Number 1* and having a volunteer say the word he/she wrote. Do the same for numbers 2–12.

Answer Key

- | | | |
|-------------|------------|---------------|
| 1. noodles | 2. oranges | 3. hamburgers |
| 4. pizza | 5. apples | 6. carrots |
| 7. potatoes | 8. sushi | 9. fried rice |
| 10. bananas | 11. cat | 12. pig |

Page 42

A. Read and circle the mistakes.

Students read each sentence and circle any capitalization or punctuation mistakes.

Check answers by writing the sentences on the board, then having volunteers come to the board and circle the mistakes.

Answer Key

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. <u>what's</u> that.
it's pizza?
i don't like pizza? | 2. <u>i</u> like apples!
do you like apples.
yes, i do? |
| 3. i'm <u>annie</u> .
i'm a girl?
i'm young? | 4. <u>this</u> is <u>ted</u> ?
<u>he's</u> young.
<u>he</u> isn't old? |

B. Read and match.

Students match each phrase to the corresponding picture.

Check answers by pointing to each picture and having volunteers say the corresponding phrase.

Answer Key

1. *three tall trees* matches the third picture
2. *two short boys* matches the fourth picture
3. *two old dogs* matches the second picture
4. *one fat pig* matches the first picture

C. Look and match.

Students look at each picture and match it to the corresponding sentence(s).

Check answers by saying *Number 1* and having a volunteer say the corresponding sentence. Do the same for numbers 2–4.

Answer Key

1. He's hungry. He isn't thirsty.
2. He's tall. He isn't short.
3. I like apples.
4. You don't like oranges.

Unit 10

Conversation Time, Page 43

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the conversation.

A. Read the question. Write the answer.

Students answer the question, pretending to be each of the characters.

Check answers by saying *Number 1*. *What's your telephone number?* A volunteer says the corresponding telephone number. Do the same for numbers 2–4.

Answer Key

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. It's 612-4321. | 2. It's 761-3942. |
| 3. It's 881-9841. | 4. It's 235-6011. |

B. Read and circle.

Students circle the words that make up each line of the conversation.

Check answers by saying *Number 1* and having a volunteer say the words he/she circled. Do the same for number 3.

Answer Key

1. What's your telephone number?
2. It's 769-1485.
3. Pardon me?
4. 769-1485

C. Your turn. Read the question. Write the answer.

Students answer the question using their own telephone numbers.

Check answers by asking several volunteers the question, then eliciting the answer.

Answer Key

Answers will vary.

Word Time, Page 44

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the words.

A. Which picture is different? Circle and write.

Students circle the picture that is different. They then write the word corresponding to the circled picture.

Check answers by writing the numbers 1–6 on the board then having volunteers come to the board and write the word(s) they wrote for each number.

Answer Key

1. doctor
2. teacher
3. nurse
4. firefighter
5. police officer

B. Look and write.

Students write a *He's/She's a* _____ sentence about each picture to identify each person's occupation.

Check answers by saying *Number 1* and having a volunteer say the sentence he/she wrote. Do the same for numbers 2–4.

Answer Key

1. He's a police officer.
2. She's a doctor.
3. He's a firefighter.
4. She's a teacher.

Practice Time, Page 45

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the patterns.

A. Read the question. Write the answer.

Students use the target pattern to write a question and answer about each picture.

Check answers by saying *Number 1*. *Is he a teacher?*

A volunteer says the answer he/she wrote. Do the same for numbers 2–4.

Answer Key

1. Is he a teacher? No, he isn't. He's a mail carrier.
2. Is she a firefighter? Yes, she is.
3. Is he a mail carrier? No, he isn't. He's a teacher.
4. Is she a doctor? Yes, she is.

B. Look and write.

Students look at the pictures and, using the target pattern, write a question and answer about each picture.

Check answers by pointing to each picture and having a volunteer read the question and answer he/she wrote. Do the same for number 2.

Answer Key

1. Is she a nurse? No, she isn't. She's a doctor.
2. Is he a police officer? No, he isn't. He's a teacher.

Phonics Time, Page 46

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the words.

A. Look and write.

Students look at the square, star, and rectangle for number 1. They then find each of those shapes above and write the corresponding letters in the space provided for number 1. They then do the same for numbers 2–8.

Check answers by saying *Number 1* and having a volunteer read and spell the word he/she wrote. Do the same for numbers 2–8.

Answer Key

1. pig
2. in
3. sit
4. sick
5. dig
6. pin
7. kit
8. tin

B. Circle the short i words.

Students circle the *short i* words.

Check answers by reading each word and having students repeat and raise their hands if they circled it.

Answer Key

1. pin
2. in
3. sip
4. pig
5. is, sit

C. Does it have short i? Write ✓ or X.

Students look at each picture and write ✓ if the illustrated word has *short i*, and X if it does not.

Check answers by saying *Number 1*. *sit*. Students repeat the word then stand up if they wrote ✓, and stay seated if they wrote X. Do the same for numbers 2–6.

Answer Key

1. ✓
2. X
3. X
4. ✓
5. ✓
6. X

Unit 11

Conversation Time, Page 47

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the conversation.

A. Look and write.

Using the word bank for support, students complete each line of the conversation.

Check answers by saying *Number 1* and having a volunteer read the sentence he/she wrote. Do the same for numbers 2–3.

Answer Key

1. Dad, this is my friend, Sam.
2. Nice to meet you, Sam.
3. Hello.

B. Unscramble and write.

Students unscramble and write each sentence.

Check answers by writing the numbers 1–3 on the board, then having volunteers come to the board and write the sentence they wrote for each number.

Answer Key

1. Mom, this is my friend, Pam.
2. Nice to meet you, Pam.
3. Hello.

Word Time, Page 48

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the words.

A. Look and circle.

Students look at each picture, then circle the corresponding words.

Check answers by saying *Number 1* and having a volunteer say the words he/she circled. Do the same for numbers 2–6.

Answer Key

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1. ride a bike | 2. sing a song |
| 3. play basketball | 4. drive a car |
| 5. climb a tree | 6. draw a picture |

B. Complete the puzzle.

Students look at the picture cues and write the corresponding words in the puzzle. They then take the letters from the bordered box and write them in the space provided to find out the mystery word.

Check answers by saying *Number 1* and having a volunteer say and spell the phrase he/she wrote. Do the same for numbers 2–6. Then elicit the mystery word.

Answer Key

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1. ride a bike | 2. draw a picture |
| 3. play basketball | 4. climb a tree |
| 5. drive a car | 6. sing a song |

What's the mystery word? apples

Practice Time, Page 49

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the patterns.

A. Look and circle.

Students look at each picture and circle the words that make up the corresponding sentence.

Check answers by writing the numbers 1–4 on the board, then having volunteers come to the board and write the sentence they wrote for each number.

Answer Key

1. He can't sing a song.
2. You can ride a bike.
3. I can climb a tree.

B. Look and write.

Using the target pattern, students write a sentence about each picture.

Check answers by saying *Number 1* and having a volunteer read the sentence he/she wrote. Do the same for numbers 2–3.

Answer Key

1. You can draw a picture.
2. He can't drive a car.
3. It can climb a tree.

Phonics Time, Page 50

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the words.

A. Look and write.

Students look at each picture cue and write the corresponding word in the space provided.

Check answers by saying *Number 1* then having a volunteer say and spell the word he/she wrote. Do the same for numbers 2–6.

Answer Key

- | | | |
|--------|---------|--------|
| 1. hot | 2. mop | 3. pot |
| 4. dog | 5. sock | 6. on |

B. Circle the short o words.

Students circle the *short o* words.

Check answers by reading each word and having students repeat and raise their hands if they circled it.

Answer Key

- | | | |
|--------|--------|--------|
| 1. hot | 2. dot | 3. Tom |
| 4. pot | 5. mop | |

C. Which pictures have the vowel sound? Circle.

For each box, students read the vowel, then circle the illustrations of words that have the vowel sound.

Check answers by pointing to and naming each picture. Students repeat each word's vowel sound, then nod their heads *yes* if they circled that picture, and shake their heads *no* if they did not.

Answer Key

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| short a: hat, ant | short e: bed, egg |
| short i: sit, pin | short o: on, pot |

Unit 12

Conversation Time, Page 51

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the conversation.

A. Read and match.

Students match each line of conversation to the corresponding picture.

Check answers by pointing to each picture and having volunteers say the corresponding line of conversation.

Answer Key

1. matches the middle picture
2. matches the right-hand picture
3. matches the left-hand picture

B. Circle and write.

Students circle the correct lines of conversation, paying particular attention to capitalization and punctuation. They then write each sentence.

Check answers by writing the numbers 1–3 on the board, then having volunteers come to the board and write the sentence they circled and wrote for each number.

Answer Key

1. I'm going now.
2. Bye-bye!
3. See you tomorrow.

Word Time, Page 52

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the words.

A. Circle and write.

Students look at each picture and circle the corresponding words. They then write the phrase.

Check answers by saying *Number 1* then having students pantomime the action and say the phrase. Do the same for numbers 2–4.

Answer Key

1. make a sandwich
2. play the guitar
3. do a cartwheel
4. fly a kite

B. Unscramble and write.

Students unscramble and write each word.

Check answers by writing the numbers 1–6 on the board, then having volunteers come to the board and write the word(s) they wrote for each number.

Answer Key

1. do a cartwheel
2. make a sandwich
3. use chopsticks
4. fly a kite
5. swim
6. play the guitar

Practice Time, Page 53

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the patterns.

A. Read the question. Check (✓) the correct answer.

Students read the question, look at the picture, and write ✓ for the correct answer.

Check answers by saying *Number 1*. *Can she do a cartwheel?* A volunteer says the answer he/she checked. Do the same for numbers 2–4.

Answer Key

1. Can she do a cartwheel? Yes, she can.
2. Can he play the guitar? No, he can't.
3. Can it swim? Yes, it can.
4. Can he use chopsticks? No, he can't.

B. Look and write.

Students use the target pattern to write a question and answer about each picture.

Check answers by saying *Number 1* and having a volunteer say the question and answer he/she wrote. Do the same for numbers 2–3.

Answer Key

1. Can she fly a kite? Yes, she can.
2. Can he make a sandwich? No, he can't.
3. Can she play the guitar? Yes, she can.

Phonics Time, Page 54

Focus students' attention on the support box at the top of the page. Elicit the words.

A. Find and circle.

Students look at each picture cue, then find and circle the words in the puzzle.

Check answers by saying *Number 1* then having a volunteer say and spell the word he/she circled. Do the same for numbers 2–4.

Answer Key

s a n e t
u (b u s) a
v e (s u n)
z n (u p) o
(n u t) a t

B. Circle the short u words and pictures.

Students look at the words and pictures, and circle all short u words and illustrations of short u words.

Check answers by pointing to each word and picture, then saying the word or naming the picture. Students stand up if they circled the word or picture and stay seated if they did not.

Answer Key

Circled words: sun, cup, bus, up
Circled pictures: bus, nut, sun, up

C. Does it have short u? Circle and write.

For each number, students circle the illustration of the short u word, then write the word.

Check answers by pointing to and naming each picture. Students repeat, then stand up if they circled the picture and stay seated if they did not.

Answer Key

1. bus 2. up 3. sun 4. nut

Review 4

Page 55

A. Circle the mistakes. Then rewrite the sentences.

Students read each sentence and circle any capitalization or punctuation mistakes. They then write each corrected sentence.

Check answers by writing the sentences on the board, then having volunteers come to the board and circle the mistakes. Each volunteer then writes the correctly capitalized and punctuated sentence for each number.

Answer Key

1. see You tomorrow?
See you tomorrow.
2. dad, this is My friend! kim.
Dad, this is my friend, Kim.
3. what's your Telephone number.
What's your telephone number?

B. Look and write.

Students look at each picture and write the corresponding sentence.

Check answers by saying *Number 1* and having a volunteer say the sentence he/she wrote. Do the same for numbers 2–4.

Answer Key

1. She can fly a kite.
2. She's a nurse.
3. I can climb a tree.
4. She's a police officer.

C. Read and match.

Students match each sentence(s) to the corresponding picture.

Check answers by saying *Number 1*. *Can she drive a car? No, she can't.* and having students point to the corresponding picture. Do the same for numbers 2–4.

Answer Key

1. matches the third picture
2. matches the fourth picture
3. matches the second picture
4. matches the first picture

Page 56

A. Look and write.

Students look at each picture, then write the corresponding word.

Check answers by saying *Number 1* and having a volunteer repeat and spell the word he/she wrote. Then have another volunteer say the word's vowel sound. Do the same for numbers 2–8.

Answer Key

1. mop
2. sit
3. sun
4. bus
5. pin
6. pot
7. bed
8. cat

B. Read the question. Write the answer.

Students read each question and answer it based on the picture cue.

Check answers by reading each question and having a volunteer read the answer he/she wrote.

Answer Key

1. Can she fly a kite? Yes, she can.
2. Is she a mail carrier? No, she isn't. She's a doctor.
3. Can she swim? No, she can't.

C. Your turn. Draw and write what you can do.

Students draw a picture of themselves doing an activity they can name in English. They then complete the sentence using this activity.

Check answers by having several volunteers take turns standing up, showing the class their pictures, and saying the sentence they wrote.

Answer Key

Answers will vary.

Units 1–12 Reviews

Conversation Time Review, Page 57

A. Read and connect.

Student match the lines of each conversation.

Check answers by saying *Number 1*. *Ah-choo!* A volunteer then says the next 2 lines of conversation. Do the same for numbers 2–5 and Exercise B.

Answer Key

1. Ah-choo!/Bless you!/Thank you.
2. Good morning./Hello! How are you?/Fine, thank you.
3. Here you are./Thanks./You're welcome.
4. Sh! Be quiet!/Sorry./That's okay.
5. Are you finished?/No, not yet./Please hurry!

B. Read and connect.

1. What's wrong?/I feel sick./That's too bad.
2. Ouch!/Are you okay?/I think so.
3. May I borrow a pen?/Sure. Here you are./Thanks.
4. I'm going now./Bye-bye./See you tomorrow.
5. Dad, this is my friend, Sue./Nice to meet you, Sue./Hello.

Word Time Review, Page 58

A. Complete the puzzle.

Students look at the picture cues and write the corresponding words in the puzzle.

Check answers by saying *Across, Number 1* and having a volunteer say and spell the word he/she wrote. Do the same for the remaining words.

Answer Key

- | | |
|---------------|------------|
| Across | Down |
| 1. horse | 1. young |
| 2. hamburgers | 2. happy |
| 3. pencil | 3. oranges |
| 4. apples | 4. flower |
| 5. tree | 5. sad |

B. Which picture is different? Write X.

For each number, students write **X** on the picture that is different.

Check answers by pointing to and naming each picture. Students repeat, then stand up if they wrote **X** on that picture and stay seated if they did not.

Answer Key

1. pen 2. lake 3. vet 4. pig

Practice Time Review, Page 59

Read and match.

Students read each sentence in the left column then match it to the most logical response in the right-hand column.

Check answers by saying *Number 1. What's that?* and having a volunteer say the sentence he/she matched it to. Do the same for numbers 2–6 and Exercise B.

Answer Key

A. Read and match.

1. What's that?/It's a horse.
2. I'm Annie. I'm a girl./You're Ted. You're a boy.
3. Is it a pen?/No, it isn't. It's a pencil.
4. He can swim./She can ride a bike.
5. How many books? /Twelve books.
6. Are you happy?/Yes, I am.

B. Read and match.

1. Do you like bananas?/No, I don't.
2. This is a lake./That's a tree.
3. Is he a teacher?/No, he isn't. He's a doctor.
4. I like pizza./You don't like hamburgers.
5. Can he swim?/Yes, he can.
6. She's short./She isn't tall.

Phonics Time Review, Page 60

A. Circle the words you can read.

Students circle any words they can read. They then count how many words they have circled and write that number in the space provided.

Answer Key

Answers will vary.

B. Which picture begins with a different sound? Write X.

For each number, students write **X** on the illustration of the word that begins with a different sound.

For each number, check answers by pointing to and naming the pictures then having volunteers point to and name the picture they wrote **X** on.

Answer Key

1. bus 2. violin 3. zebra 4. duck

C. Match and say.

Students match each lowercase letter to the corresponding uppercase letter. They then say each letter.

Check answers by writing lowercase *a, i, t, m, g, u, e, w, o, v, n, z, s,* and *h* on the board. Then have volunteers come to the board and write the corresponding uppercase letter next to each lowercase letter. Point to each letter and elicit its name.

Answer Key

- | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| a A | i I | t T | m M |
| g G | u U | e E | w W |
| o O | v V | n N | z Z |
| s S | h H | | |

Storybook Instructions and Answer Key

Annie and the Map

Introduce the Storybook

Students open their Storybooks to page iv. Direct students' attention to the map of Sunnyville. Point out Ted's and Annie's houses, saying *This is Ted's house. This is Annie's house.* Students look at the map and name any items or characters they recognize. For example: *Digger, Annie, pig, dog.* After students have named several items, touch or point to a tree, a cow, a bird, and a horse on the map, and ask *What's this/that?* Students respond *This is/That's a (tree).*

Read the Storybook

For each chapter, follow the steps below:

Introduce the Chapter

1. Students turn to the first two pages of the chapter and take turns naming any items they recognize in the scenes. They then guess what the characters might be saying in each scene.
2. Students look at the text accompanying each scene. Encourage them to point to and say any words they recognize. Then teach the new vocabulary items at the bottom of the left-hand page.

Read the Chapter

1. Hold up the Storybook so that students can see it. Read the text on the first two pages of the chapter clearly, at natural speed, and dramatically, using a different voice for each character. Pause between scenes to indicate the change to the next scene. Students listen.
2. Read the text again in the same way. Students listen and follow along in their Storybooks.
3. Read the sentence at the bottom of the right-hand page, pausing at the blank. Students circle the word and picture that belong in the blank. Check answers by reading the sentence, pausing at the blank, and having volunteers say the word they circled. (See answer key on pages 166–167.)
4. Turn to the third and fourth pages of the chapter, then to the fifth and sixth pages, and follow the same procedure as above, starting with Step 1 of Introduce the Chapter.

Play the Recording

1. Play the recording of the Chapter. Students listen and follow along in their Storybooks, pointing to each scene or the text for each scene. Play the recording as many times as necessary for students to follow along with ease.
2. Play the recording again. Pause after each line and have students repeat.

3. Ask volunteers to try to read the text for each scene out loud. Prompt when necessary.
4. Divide the class into groups of three to four. Each group works together to read the text. Circulate between the different groups, and prompt when necessary.

Check Comprehension

1. Ask comprehension questions to check students' understanding of the chapter. (For suggested questions, see pages 166–167.) Answer the questions yourself, if necessary, and have students repeat.
2. Do the chapter's review in class or assign it as homework. (See answer key on pages 166–167.)

Activities for the Chapter

1. **Favorite Scenes.** Students take turns holding up their Storybooks, pointing to their favorite scenes in the chapter, and naming any items or characters they recognize.
2. **Listing.** Students close their Storybooks and name any characters, actions, or items they can remember from the chapter. Write students' responses on the board. Then point to each item on the board, and have the entire class try to read it. Alternatively, students can scan the scenes in their Storybooks and point to those items.
3. **Act It Out.** Divide the class into groups of the same number of students as there are characters in the chapter. Students in each group take on the role of one of the characters in the chapter. Play the recording, and have students in each group act out the story as the recording plays.
4. **Role-play.** Bring the same number of volunteers as there are characters in the chapter to the front of the classroom. Each volunteer takes on the role of one of the characters in the chapter, and says his/her lines of the story. Choose another volunteer to read the narration.

After Completing the Storybook

1. Play the recording of the entire Storybook. Students listen and follow in their books, reading along where they can.
2. Students draw a picture or design a poster of their favorite character or scene and show it to the class.
3. Students form groups and role-play their favorite scene(s) or chapter.
4. Students create their own version of the story and read or role-play it to the class.

Chapter 1: Pages 2–11

Students open their Storybooks to page 2. Proceed through the chapter as described on Teacher's Book page 165.

Comprehension Questions

Read the following questions while pointing to the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*). Answer the questions yourself, if necessary, and have students repeat.

Pages 2–3

Can you *point* to Annie's grandfather?
Can you *point* to Annie?
Can you *point* to Digger?

Pages 4–5

(map) What's this?
(Annie's house) Is this Ted's house?
(map) Is Annie's house on the map?

Pages 6–7

(map) Is a school on the map?
Can you *point* to Ted?
(map) Is Ted's house on the map?

Answer Key

Page 3: Digger is a dog.

Page 5: A tree is on the map.

Page 7: Ms. Lee says, "Go to school!"

Review 1, Pages 8–9

A. Look and match.

- Annie
- Ms. Lee
- Ted
- Annie's grandfather
- Digger

B. Look and match.

- | | |
|-----------|---------|
| 1. farm | 2. tree |
| 3. school | 4. map |

C. Read. Then write ✓ or ✗.

- ✓
- ✗
- ✓
- ✗
- ✗

Pages 10–11

D. Complete the puzzle.

Good m o r n i n g, Digger!

- | | |
|--------|-----------|
| 1. map | 2. tree |
| 3. pig | 4. Digger |

E. Circle the correct character.

Digger 1.
Annie 2.
Ted 3.

Chapter 2: Pages 12–21

Students open their Storybooks to page 12. Proceed through the chapter as described on Teacher's Book page 165.

Comprehension Questions

Read the following questions while pointing to the pictures (**bold words**) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized words*). Answer the questions yourself, if necessary, and have students repeat.

Pages 12–13

Are Annie and Ted at school?
Is everyone *sad*?
Does Annie have a letter?

Pages 14–15

Are Ted and Annie at school?
How many cows are on the farm?
How many horses are on the farm?

Pages 16–17

Is Ted *thirsty*?
Is Annie *hungry*?
(letter) Is this a map?

Answer Key

Page 13: Kim asks, "Is it a letter?"

Page 15: Two horses are on the farm.

Page 17: Ted is hungry.

Review 2, Pages 18–19

A. Look and match.

- Mr. Brown
- Annie's grandfather
- Ms. Apple

B. Find and circle the words.

x i j (lunch) f v
w e n b a c k (eat)
s (letter) m f o
(farm) z r e a d

C. Read, circle, and write.

- "Let's go to a farm today," says Ms. Apple.
- "How many horses?" asks Ms. Apple.
- "Let's eat lunch," says Ms. Apple.
- "Is it a map?" asks Ted.

Pages 20–21

D. What's missing? Draw. Then circle the correct words.

- His beard is missing. Mr. Brown
- Her glasses are missing. Ms. Apple
- The circle around Digger's left eye is missing. Annie's dog
- Its tail is missing. A horse

E. Circle the animals that belong on a farm. Write ✗ on the animals that do not belong on a farm.

Circled: horse, chickens, sheep, pig, cow

✗: giraffe, panda, monkey, penguin, zebra

Chapter 3: Pages 22–31

Students open their Storybooks to page 22. Proceed through the chapter as described on Teacher's Book page 165.

Comprehension Questions

Read the following questions while pointing to the pictures (**bold** words) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized* words). Answer the questions yourself, if necessary, and have students repeat.

Pages 22–23

Do Ted and Annie go to a farm?
Does Annie *see* a girl?

Pages 24–25

Does Ted *see* a girl?
Is the man in the letter *thin*?

Pages 26–27

Does the **fat man** *give* Ted and Annie a book?
Does Ted borrow a pair of scissors?

Answer Key

Page 23: Annie *sees* a man.

Page 25: Digger *barks* at a man.

Page 27: A letter is with the box.

Review 3, Pages 28–29

A. Read, circle, and write.

- Ted reads the letter.
- Ted sees a thin man.
- "Are you Annie?" asks the man.
- "May I borrow your scissors?" asks Ted.

B. Look and write.

- supermarket
- scissors
- bananas
- letter

Pages 30–31

C. Unscramble and write.

- apples
- cucumbers
- oranges
- carrots
- bananas

D. Count and write the numbers.

- 11 carrots
7 cucumbers
9 oranges
12 bananas
10 apples

E. Connect the opposite words.

- old/young
- thin/fat
- tall/short
- happy/sad

Chapter 4: Pages 32–40

Students open their Storybooks to page 32. Proceed through the chapter as described on Teacher's Book page 165.

Comprehension Questions

Read the following questions while pointing to the pictures (**bold** words) and pantomiming the actions or adjectives (*italicized* words). Answer the questions yourself, if necessary, and have students repeat.

Pages 32–33

Are Ted and Annie at a park?
Can Ted *climb* a tree?
Can Annie *ride* a bike?
Is Ms. Spot a firefighter?

Pages 34–35

Do Ted, Annie, and Ms. Spot go to Annie's grandfather's apartment?
Does Annie give her grandfather the letter?

Pages 36–37

Is it Annie's birthday?
Is Digger *sad*?

Answer Key

Page 33: Ms. Spot is a dog trainer.

Page 35: Annie gives Grandpa the box.

Page 37: A cake is in the box.

Review 4, Pages 38–39

A. Read and circle ✓ or X.

- X
- ✓
- X
- ✓

B. Complete the puzzle.

- park
- apartment
- ride a bike
- letter
- cake

Page 40

C. Where did Ted and Annie go? Connect the places. Write the number.

Ted and Annie were at home. Then they went to school, to a farm, to the supermarket, to the park, and to Annie's grandparents' apartment.

Worksheet Instructions and Answer Key

Unit 1

Worksheet 1: Name Game

A. Write and circle.

Each student writes his/her own name in the blank, then circles either *girl* or *boy*.

Answer Key

Answers will vary.

B. Listen to seven classmates introduce themselves. Write and circle.

Students walk around the classroom and introduce themselves to seven of their classmates. When they hear a classmate's name and gender, they write his/her name in the space provided and circle the appropriate picture and word.

Answer Key

Answers will vary.

Worksheet 2: Phonics Fun b and p

A. Does it begin with b or p? Look and write.

Students look at each picture, then write either *b* or *p* to complete the word.

Answer Key

- | | |
|-------------------|------------------|
| 1. ball | 2. <u>p</u> izza |
| 3. <u>p</u> encil | 4. <u>b</u> oy |
| 5. <u>p</u> ig | 6. <u>b</u> ird |

B. Pairwork. Does it begin with b or p?

Divide the class into pairs. Students fold the page on the dotted line and look at their respective columns. A student in each pair (Student 1) begins by saying the first word in the left-hand column, *boy*. Student 2 listens and circles the word's initial letter, *b*, in the right-hand column. Student 1 then says the second word, *pencil*, and Student 2 circles its initial letter. Student 2 then says both of the words in his/her column, and Student 1 circles each word's initial letter.

Answer Key

- b
- p
- b
- p

C. Does it begin with b or p? Read and circle.

Students circle all the words that begin with either *b* or *p*.

Answer Key

Circled words: ball, pig, pencil, bird, boy, pizza

Unit 2

Worksheet 3: This/That Bingo

Cut out the cards. Make a Bingo grid.

Play Bingo.

Students cut out each square, and arrange them in any order in the shape of a 3x3 grid. Cut out a set to use when calling out the words. Play Bingo using these cards. (See Game 10, page 141.) When calling the cards, say *This is/That's a (flower)*.

Worksheet 4: Phonics Fun g and k

A. Does it begin with g or k? Look and write.

Students look at each picture, then write either *g* or *k* to complete the word.

Answer Key

- | | |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| 1. <u>k</u> ite | 2. <u>k</u> ey |
| 3. <u>g</u> orilla | 4. <u>g</u> irl |
| 5. <u>g</u> arden | 6. <u>k</u> angaroo |

B. Pairwork. Does it begin with g or k?

Divide the class into pairs. Students fold the page on the dotted line and look at their respective columns. A student in each pair (Student 1) begins by saying the first word in the left-hand column, *gorilla*. Student 2 listens and circles the word's initial letter, *g*, in the right-hand column. Student 1 then says the second word, *key*, and Student 2 circles its initial letter. Student 2 then says both of the words in his/her column, and Student 1 circles each word's initial letter.

Answer Key

- g
- k
- k
- g

C. Does it begin with g or k? Write the words.

Students look at the picture of the kangaroo, then write *kangaroo* in the row that corresponds to its initial sound, *k*. They then do the same for the remaining pictures, writing each word in the row that corresponds to its initial sound.

Answer Key

Gg: gorilla garden girl

Kk: kangaroo kite key

Unit 3

Worksheet 5: What's This?/What's That?

Point to a number. Play the game with a partner.

Divide the class into pairs. Each student chooses an item to be a marker, such as a coin, a pen top, or an eraser, and places it on the *Start* square. Students in each pair take turns closing their eyes, pointing to a number at the top of the page, and moving their marker along the game board the corresponding number of squares. They then look at the square on which they have landed and ask *What's this?* or *What's that?* using the pointing fingers as cues for *this/that*. Partners answer the question using *It's a (cat)*. If students correctly ask the question, they remain on that square. If they do not, they return the marker to where it was at the beginning of the turn. The first student in each pair to reach the *Finish* square wins.

Worksheet 6: Phonics Fun m and n

A. Do they both begin with the same sound? Write ✓ or X.

For each number students look at two pictures and decide if they both have the same initial sound. If they do, students write ✓. If they do not have the same initial sound, students write X.

Answer Key

- | | |
|------|------|
| 1. X | 2. ✓ |
| 3. ✓ | 4. X |
| 5. ✓ | 6. ✓ |

B. Pairwork. Does it begin with m or n?

Divide the class into pairs. Students fold the page on the dotted line and look at their respective columns. A student in each pair (Student 1) begins by saying the first word in the left-hand column, *milk*. Student 2 listens and circles the word's initial letter, *m*, in the right-hand column. Student 1 then says the second word, *net*, and Student 2 circles its initial letter. Student 2 then says both of the words in his/her column, and Student 1 circles each word's initial letter.

Answer Key

- m
- n
- n
- m

C. Look and match.

Students match each picture to the letter that corresponds to its initial sound.

Answer Key

- n
- b
- m
- g
- n
- n

Unit 4

Worksheet 7: Make a Guess

A. Pairwork.

Divide the class into pairs. Students fold the page on the dotted line and look at their respective columns. A student in each pair (Student 1) begins by looking at the first set of pictures in the left-hand column, and guessing which item Student 2 has for number 1, asking *Is it a (book)?* Student 2 answers saying either *Yes, it is.* or *No, it isn't. It's a ruler.* Student 1 then circles the correct picture. Students do the same for numbers 2–3. Student 2 then takes a turn, asking questions in the same way for numbers 4–6.

Answer Key

- | | |
|-----------|----------------|
| 1. ruler | 2. eraser |
| 3. pencil | 4. pencil case |
| 5. book | 6. pen |

B. Read the question. Write the answer.

Students read each question and answer it based on the picture cue.

Answer Key

- Is it a pencil? Yes, it is.
- Is it an eraser? No, it isn't. It's a book.

Worksheet 8: Phonics Fun d and t

A. Does it begin with d or t? Look and write.

Students look at each picture, then write either *d* or *t* to complete the word.

Answer Key

- | | |
|------------------|------------------|
| 1. <u>d</u> uck | 2. teacher |
| 3. <u>d</u> esk | 4. <u>t</u> iger |
| 5. <u>t</u> able | 6. <u>d</u> og |

B. Pairwork. Do they both begin with the same sound?

Divide the class into pairs. Students fold the page on the dotted line and look at their respective columns. A student in each pair (Student 1) begins by saying the first set of words in the left-hand column, *table* and *tiger*. Student 2 listens and circles ✓ if both words have the same initial sound, and X if they do not. Student 1 then says the second set of words, *duck* and *teacher*, and Student 2 circles ✓ or X. Student 2 then says both sets of words in his/her column, and Student 1 circles ✓ or X.

Answer Key

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. ✓ | 2. X | 3. X | 4. ✓ |
|------|------|------|------|

C. Does it begin with d or t? Circle and write.

Students circle the initial letter of each illustrated word, then write the word.

Answer Key

- | | |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| 1. <u>d</u> , dog | 2. <u>t</u> , table |
| 3. <u>d</u> , desk | 4. <u>t</u> , tiger |

Worksheet 9: On My Farm

A. Draw pigs, sheep, cows, birds, trees, and flowers.

Students decide how many of each specified item they would like to have on their make-believe farms. They then draw a farm, including their chosen number of animals or nature items.

Answer Key

Answers will vary.

B. Pairwork. Ask questions about your partner's farm. Listen and write the number.

Divide the class into pairs. A student in each pair (Student 1) asks his/her partner (Student 2) *How many (cows)?* for each illustrated item. Student 2 answers using the number of that animal or nature item he/she drew in A. Student 1 records these responses in the space provided. Student 2 then takes a turn and asks Student 1 the questions.

Answer Key

Answers will vary.

Worksheet 10: Phonics Fun h and w

A. Does it begin with h or w? Look and write.

Students look at each picture, then write either *h* or *w* to complete the word.

Answer Key

- | | |
|----------|-------------------|
| 1. horse | 2. <u>w</u> indow |
| 3. woman | 4. <u>h</u> ouse |
| 5. water | 6. <u>h</u> and |

B. Pairwork. Does it begin with h or w?

Divide the class into pairs. Students fold the page on the dotted line and look at their respective columns. A student in each pair (Student 1) begins by saying the first word in the left-hand column, *hand*. Student 2 listens and writes the word's initial letter, *h*, in the right-hand column. Student 1 then says the second word, *water*, and Student 2 writes its initial letter. Student 2 then says both of the words in his/her column, and Student 1 writes each word's initial letter.

Answer Key

1. h
2. w
3. w
4. h

C. Circle the h and w words.

Students look at the pictures and circle each one that has *h* or *w* as its initial sound.

Answer Key

Pictures 1, 3, and 4 are circled.

Worksheet 11: Feelings

Ask six classmates the questions. Listen and write ✓ or X.

Students walk around the classroom and ask six classmates *Are you (happy)?* They then record the answers on their charts by writing ✓ for positive answers and X for negative answers.

Answer Key

Answers will vary.

Worksheet 12: Phonics Fun f and v

A. Does it begin with f or v? Look and write.

Students look at each picture, then write either *f* or *v* to complete the word.

Answer Key

- | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1. <u>f</u> ee | 2. fish |
| 3. <u>v</u> iolin | 4. <u>v</u> ase |
| 5. <u>f</u> ork | 6. <u>v</u> an |

B. Pairwork. Does it begin with f or v?

Divide the class into pairs. Students fold the page on the dotted line and look at their respective columns. A student in each pair (Student 1) begins by saying the first word in the left-hand column, *fork*. Student 2 listens and circles the word's initial letter, *f*, in the right-hand column. Student 1 then says the second word, *van*, and Student 2 circles its initial letter. Student 2 then says both of the words in his/her column, and Student 1 circles each word's initial letter.

Answer Key

1. f
2. v
3. v
4. f

C. Look and match.

Students match each picture to the letter that corresponds to its initial sound.

Answer Key

1. h
2. d
3. f
4. T
5. h
6. v

Unit 7

Worksheet 13: I Like Pizza!

A. Draw lines to items you like and don't like.

Students draw lines from the happy face, representing *I like*, to food items that they like. They then draw lines from the sad face, representing *I don't like*, to food items that they do not like.

Answer Key

Answers will vary.

B. Pairwork.

Divide the class into pairs. Students fold the page on the dotted line and look at their respective columns. A student in each pair (Student 1) begins by saying *I like (sushi)* or *I don't like (sushi)* about each food item in his/her column. Student 2 listens and circles ☺ if Student 1 likes the item, and ☹ if he/she does not. Student 2 then does the same with the food items depicted in his/her column, with Student 1 circling either ☺ or ☹.

Answer Key

Answers will vary.

Worksheet 14: Phonics Fun s and z

A. Which pictures begin with the same sound? Circle.

For each number, students circle the pictures that begin with the same sound.

Answer Key

1. soup, sock
2. zoo, zebra
3. zebra, zipper
4. sea, soup

B. Pairwork.

Divide the class into pairs. Students fold the page on the dotted line and look at their respective columns. A student in each pair (Student 1) begins by saying the first letter in the left-hand column, *S*. Student 2 listens and writes that letter in the right-hand column. Student 1 then says the second letter, *z*, and Student 2 writes it. Student 2 then says each of the letters in his/her column, and Student 1 writes them.

Answer Key

1. S
2. z
3. Z
4. s

C. Does it begin with s or z? Circle and write.

Students circle the initial letter of each illustrated word, then write the word.

Answer Key

1. s, soup
2. z, zebra
3. z, zipper
4. s, sock

Unit 8

Worksheet 15: Do You Like Bananas?

Ask six classmates the questions. Listen and draw ☺ or ☹.

Students walk around the classroom and ask six classmates if they like each food item, saying *Do you like (apples)?* Students record the answers in their charts by drawing ☺ for positive answers, and ☹ for negative answers.

Answer Key

Answers will vary.

Worksheet 16: Phonics Fun short a

A. Read the words.

Students read each word.

B. Look and write.

Students look at each picture, then write the missing vowel to complete the word.

Answer Key

1. ant
2. bag
3. map

C. Pairwork. Does it have short a?

Divide the class into pairs. Students fold the page on the dotted line and look at their respective columns. A student in each pair (Student 1) begins by saying the first word in the left-hand column, *hat*. Student 2 listens and circles ✓ if the word has *short a*, and ✗ if it does not. Student 1 then says the second word, *hot*, and Student 2 circles ✓ or ✗. Student 2 then reads each of the words in his/her column, and Student 1 circles ✓ or ✗.

Answer Key

1. ✓
2. ✗
3. ✗
4. ✓

D. Write the words in the correct columns. Then read the words.

Students write each word in the column corresponding to its ending.

Answer Key

- ad: dad, sad, bad
- ag: bag, tag, nag
- an: pan, fan, man
- at: bat, hat, pat

Unit 9

Worksheet 17: Old or Young?

Pairwork.

Divide the class into pairs. Students fold the page on the dotted line and look at their respective columns. A student in each pair (Student 1) begins by using the target pattern to describe the illustrations in numbers 1–3. Student 2 listens and circles the picture that corresponds to each description. Student 2 then describes the illustrations in numbers 4–6, and Student 1 circles the appropriate picture in his/her column.

Answer Key

- | | | |
|------|------|------|
| 1. a | 2. b | 3. a |
| 4. a | 5. b | 6. a |

Worksheet 18: Phonics Fun short e

A. Read the words.

Students read each word.

B. Find and circle.

Students look at each picture cue, then find and circle that word in the small puzzle.

Answer Key

- | | | |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. z m i
(b e d)
v t n | 2. v w o
e i n
t b b | 3. z k e
f a p
(e g g) |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------------|

C. Pairwork. Does it have short a or short e?

Divide the class into pairs. Students fold the page on the dotted line and look at their respective columns. A student in each pair (Student 1) begins by reading the first word in the left-hand column, *egg*. Student 2 listens and circles *short a* if the word has *short a*, and *short e* if it has *short e*. Student 1 then reads the second word, *map*, and Student 2 circles the appropriate short vowel. Student 2 then says each of the words in his/her column, and Student 1 circles either *short a* or *short e*.

Answer Key

- short e
- short a
- short a
- short e

D. Does it have short a or short e? Look and match.

Students match each picture to the corresponding vowel.

Answer Key

- short e
- short a
- short a
- short e

Unit 10

Worksheet 19: Teacher or Nurse?

A. Pairwork.

Divide the class into pairs. Students fold the page on the dotted line and look at their respective columns. A student in each pair (Student 1) begins by looking at the first set of pictures in the left-hand column, and guessing which picture Student 2 has for number 1, asking *Is she a (nurse)?* Student 2 answers either *Yes, she is* or *No, she isn't. She's a firefighter*. Student 1 then circles the correct picture. Students do the same for numbers 2–3. Student 2 then takes a turn, asking questions in the same way for numbers 4–6.

Answer Key

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1. firefighter | 2. nurse |
| 3. doctor | 4. police officer |
| 5. mail carrier | 6. teacher |

B. Read the question. Write the answer.

Students read each question and answer it based on the picture cue.

Answer Key

- Is she a police officer? Yes, she is.
- Is he a firefighter? No, he isn't. He's a teacher.

Worksheet 20: Phonics Fun short i

A. Read the words.

Students read each word.

B. Follow the short i words to Digger.

Students find a path to Digger made up of only *short i* words. They can either circle the words along the path, or connect them with a line.

Answer Key

Words along the path to Digger: in, zip, big, sit, pin, dig, win, fin, nip, zip, fig, in, sit, pin, fin, hit, big, dip, dig, nip, wig, bit, win

C. Say, circle, and write.

Students name each picture, then circle one letter from each column to spell the corresponding word. They then write the word.

Answer Key

- sit
- hat
- bed
- pin

Worksheet 21: Play a Game!

Point to a number. Play the game with a partner.

Divide the class into pairs. Each student chooses an item to be a marker, such as a coin, a pen top, or an eraser, and places it on the *Start* square. Students in each pair take turns closing their eyes, pointing to a number at the top of the page, and moving their marker along the game board the corresponding number of squares. They then look at the picture on which they have landed and make a statement about it using the target pattern. If students make the statement correctly, they remain on that picture. If they do not, they return the marker to where it was at the beginning of the turn. The first student in each pair to reach the *Finish* square wins.

Worksheet 22: Phonics Fun short o

A. Read the words.

Students read each word.

B. Pairwork. Does it have short a, short e, short i, or short o?

Divide the class into pairs. Students fold the page on the dotted line and look at their respective columns. A student in each pair (Student 1) begins by reading the first word in the left-hand column, *mop*. Student 2 listens and circles the corresponding short vowel in the right-hand column. Student 1 then reads the remaining words, *pan* and *bed*, and Student 2 circles the corresponding short vowels. Student 2 then reads each word in his/her column, and Student 1 circles the corresponding short vowels.

Answer Key

1. short o
2. short a
3. short e
4. short i
5. short e
6. short o

C. Circle the short o pictures.

For each number, students circle the illustrations of words that have *short o*.

Answer Key

1. hot
2. mop
3. pot
4. on

Worksheet 23: Can You Swim?

A. Ask four classmates the questions. Listen and write ✓ or X.

Students walk around the classroom and use the target question to ask four classmates if they can do the illustrated activities. Students record the answers on their charts by writing ✓ for positive answers, and X for negative answers.

Answer Key

Answers will vary.

B. Read the question. Write the answer.

Students read each question and answer it based on the picture cue.

Answer Key

1. Can he fly a kite? No, he can't.
2. Can it swim? Yes, it can.
3. Can she do a cartwheel? Yes, she can.

Worksheet 24: Phonics Fun short u

A. Read the words.

Students read each word.

B. Pairwork. Does it have short a, short e, short i, short o, or short u?

Divide the class into pairs. Students fold the page on the dotted line and look at their respective columns. A student in each pair (Student 1) begins by circling one of the pictures in the first row in the left-hand column, then naming it. Student 2 listens and circles the corresponding short vowel in the right-hand column. They do the same for numbers 2–3. Student 2 then circles and names a picture in each of numbers 4–6, and Student 1 circles the corresponding short vowels.

Answer Key

Answers will vary.

C. Follow the short u words to Ted.

Students find a path to Ted made up of only *short u* words. They can either circle the words along the path, or connect them with a line.

Answer Key

Words along the path to Ted: bus, nut, hut, gum, up, dug, bug, pun, bug, tug, sun, up

Unit 1, Worksheet 1: Name Game

I'm Annie. I'm a girl.



A. Write and circle.

I'm _____ . I'm a

















girl.



boy.




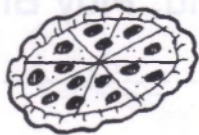




B. Listen to seven classmates introduce themselves. Write and circle.

	Name		
1.			
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			
6.			
7.			


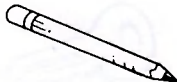


Unit 1, Worksheet 2: Phonics Fun b and p

ball bird boy pencil pig pizza

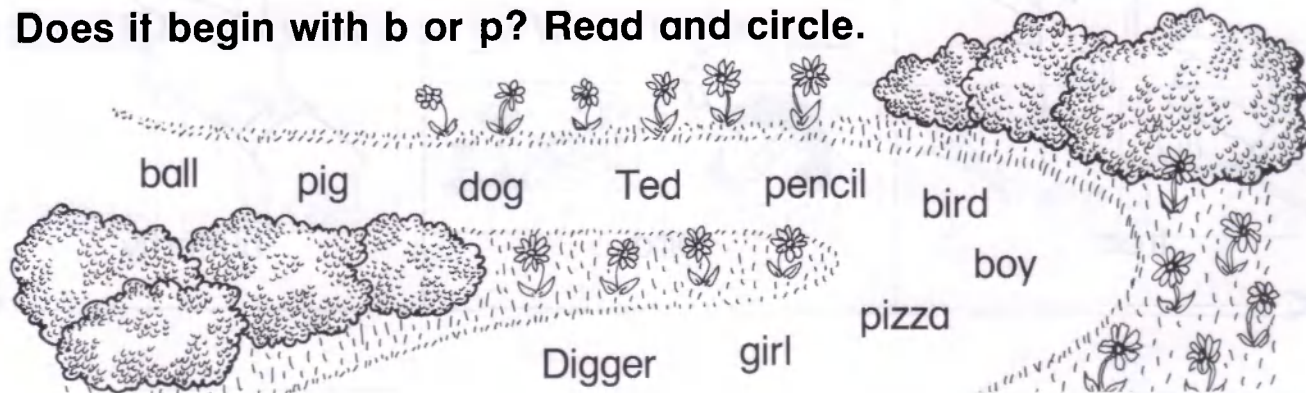
A. Does it begin with b or p? Look and write.

1.  ___all
2.  ___izza
3.  ___encil
4.  ___oy
5.  ___ig
6.  ___ird

B. Pairwork. Does it begin with b or p?

Student 1	Student 2
Say the word.	Listen and circle.
1. boy 	1. b p
2. pencil 	2. b p
Listen and circle.	Say the word.
3. b p	3. ball 
4. b p	4. pig 

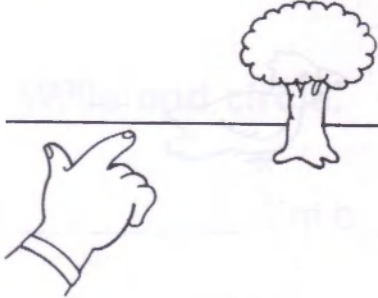
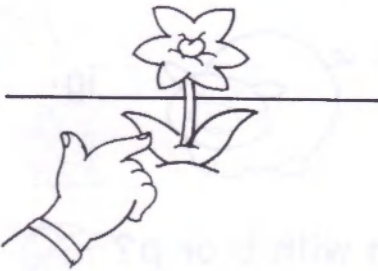




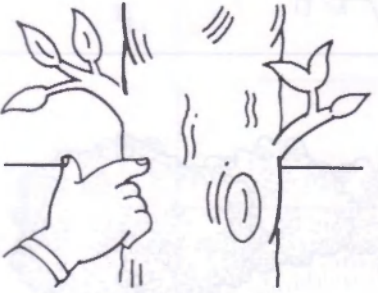
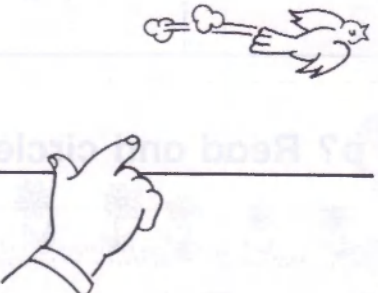
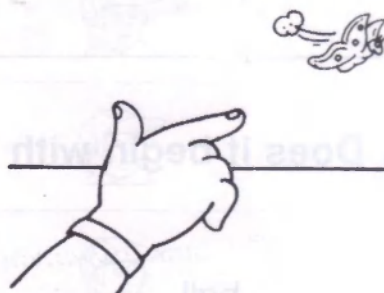
C. Does it begin with b or p? Read and circle.



Unit 2, Worksheet 3: This/That Bingo

This is a flower.
That's a lake.

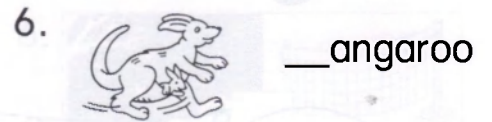
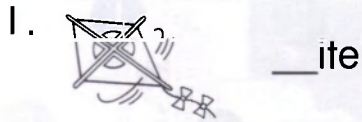
Cut out the cards. Make a Bingo grid. Play Bingo.

 <p>tree</p>	 <p>flower</p>	 <p>bird</p>
 <p>butterfly</p>	 <p>cloud</p>	 <p>lake</p>
 <p>tree</p>	 <p>bird</p>	 <p>butterfly</p>

Unit 2, Worksheet 4: Phonics Fun g and k

kite girl kangaroo key gorilla garden

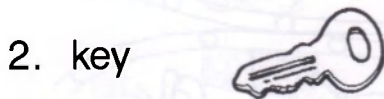
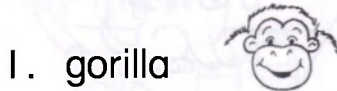
A. Does it begin with g or k? Look and write.



B. Pairwork. Does it begin with g or k?

Student 1

Say the word.



Listen and circle.

3. g k

4. g k

Student 2


Listen and circle.

1. g k

2. g k

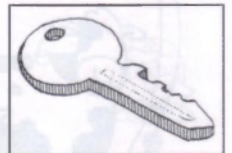
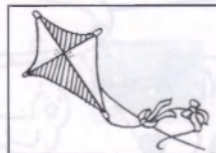
Say the word.

3. kite 

4. garden 

FOLD

C. Does it begin with g or k? Write the words.



G g _____

K k _____

Unit 3, Worksheet 5: What's This?/What's That?

What's this? It's a cat.

What's that? It's a pig.

Point to a number. Play the game with a partner.


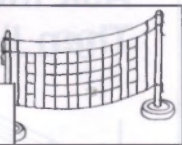
The board game consists of 16 numbered spaces arranged in a circular path. The starting point is labeled 'START' with an arrow pointing to space 1. The path proceeds clockwise through spaces 2 to 15, ending at a star-shaped 'FINISH' space. Each space contains an illustration of an animal or an action, with a hand pointing to it. Some spaces include instructions: 'GO BACK 2' (space 4), 'GO BACK 3' (space 6), 'GO AHEAD 2' (space 11), and 'GO BACK 4' (space 15). The numbers 1 through 6 are placed in small circles around the board for a dot-marker game.

Unit 3, Worksheet 6: Phonics Fun m and n







nurse mother net milk mop night

A. Do they both begin with the same sound? Write ✓ or X.







1.   2.   3.  

4.   5.   6.  

B. Pairwork. Does it begin with m or n?

Student 1	Student 2
Say the word.	Listen and circle.
1. milk 	1. m n
2. net 	2. m n
Listen and circle.	Say the word.
3. m n 	3. night 
4. m n 	4. mop 

C. Look and match.

1.  2.  3.  4.  5.  6. 

● ● ● ● ● ●


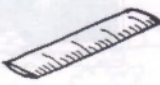

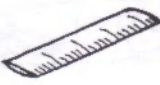

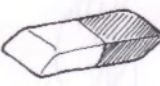

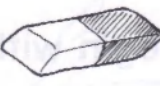
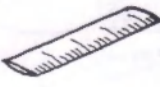

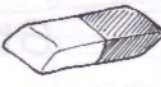











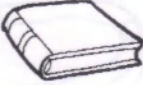
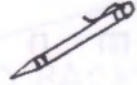
● ● ● ● ● ●

n m b n n g

Unit 4, Worksheet 7: Make a Guess

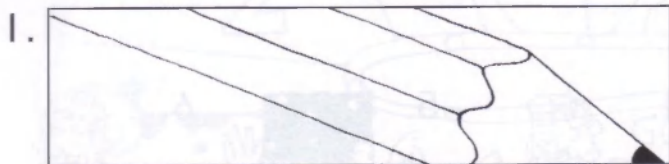
Is it a book? Yes, it is. Is it an eraser? No, it isn't.

A. Pairwork.

Student 1	Student 2
<p>Ask the question. Then listen and circle.</p>	<p>Answer the question.</p>
<p>1.   </p>	<p>1. </p>
<p>2.   </p>	<p>2. </p>
<p>3.   </p>	<p>3. </p>
<p>Answer the question.</p>	<p>Ask the question. Then listen and circle.</p>
<p>4. </p>	<p>4.   </p>
<p>5. </p>	<p>5.   </p>
<p>6. </p>	<p>6.   </p>

FOLD

B. Read the question. Write the answer.



Is it a pencil?


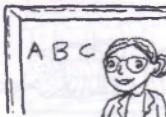






Is it an eraser?









Unit 4, Worksheet 8: Phonics Fun d and t

dog tiger desk teacher duck table



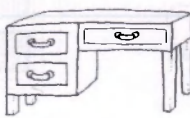

A. Does it begin with d or t? Look and write.

1.  ___uck 2.  ___eacher 3.  ___esk
4.  ___iger 5.  ___able 6.  ___og

B. Pairwork. Do they both begin with the same sound?

Student 1	FOLD	Student 2
Say the words.		Listen and circle.
1. table  tiger 		1. ✓ X
2. duck  teacher 		2. ✓ X
Listen and circle.		Say the words.
3. ✓ X		3. desk  teacher 
4. ✓ X		4. dog  duck 

C. Does it begin with d or t? Circle and write.

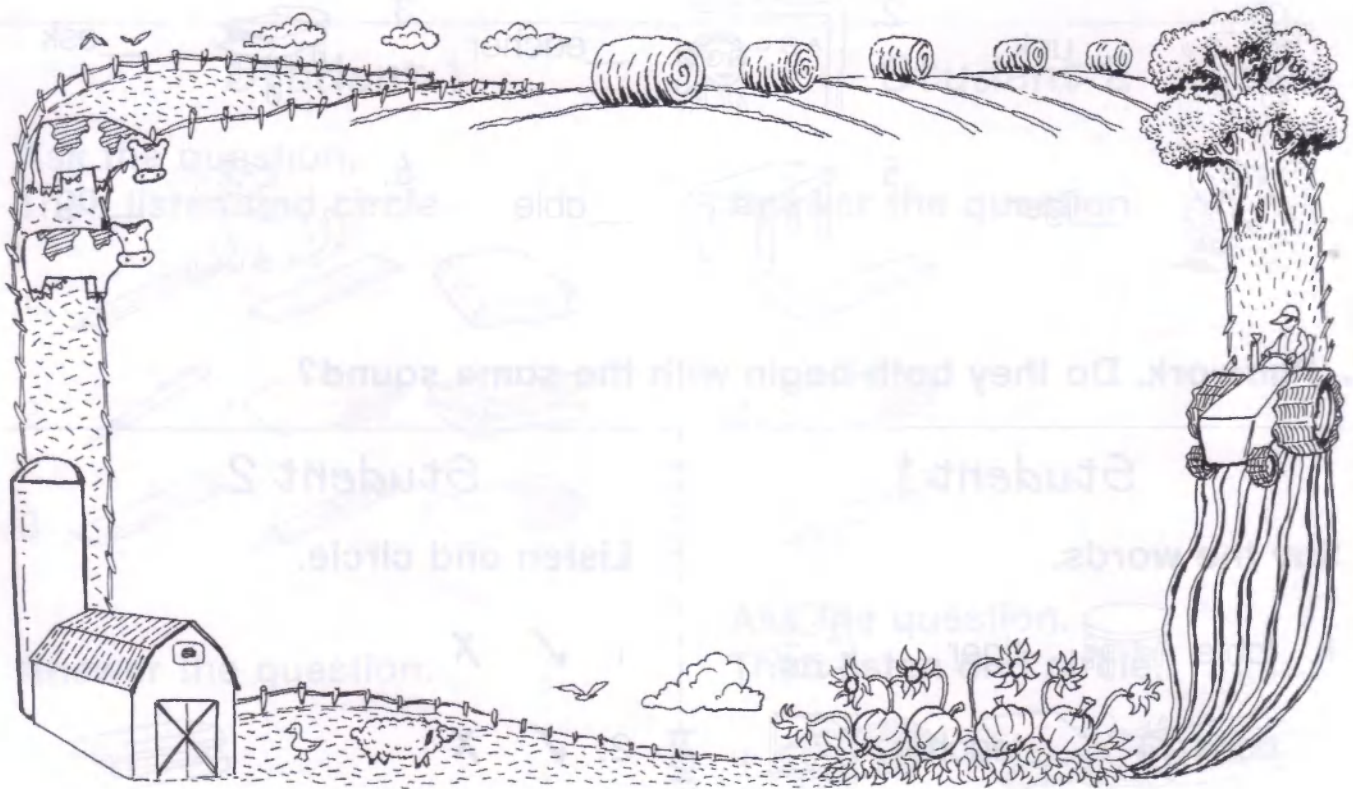
1.  d t 2.  d t 3.  d t 4.  d t
- _____

Unit 5, Worksheet 9: On My Farm

How many pigs? One pig.

How many birds? Two birds.

A. Draw pigs, sheep, cows, birds, trees, and flowers.




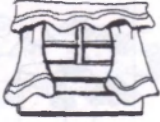




B. Pairwork. Ask questions about your partner's farm. Then listen and write the number.





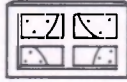
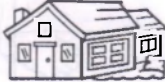
Unit 5, Worksheet 10: Phonics Fun h and w

water hand woman house window horse



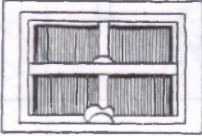


A. Does it begin with h or w? Look and write.

1.  ___orse	2.  ___indow	3.  ___oman
4.  ___ouse	5.  ___ater	6.  ___and

B. Pairwork. Does it begin with h or w?

Student 1	Student 2
<p>Say the word.</p> <p>1. hand </p> <p>2. water </p> <p>Listen and write the letter.</p> <p>3. _____</p> <p>4. _____</p>	<p>Listen and write the letter.</p> <p>1. _____</p> <p>2. _____</p> <p>Say the word.</p> <p>3. window </p> <p>4. house </p>




C. Circle the h and w words.




1. 	2. 	3. 	4. 	5. 
--	--	--	--	--

Unit 6, Worksheet 11: Feelings

Are you cold? Yes, I am. Are you hungry? No, I'm not. I'm thirsty.

Ask six classmates the questions. Listen and write ✓ or X.







Name	 happy	 thirsty	 hot
1. _____			
2. _____			
3. _____			

Name	 cold	 hungry	 sad
1. _____			
2. _____			
3. _____			

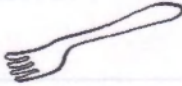
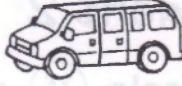


Unit 6, Worksheet 12: Phonics Fun f and v

fish vase feet van fork violin






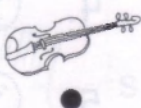
A. Does it begin with f or v? Look and write.

1.  ___eet 2.  ___ish 3.  ___iolin
4.  ___ase 5.  ___ork 6.  ___an

B. Pairwork. Does it begin with f or v?

Student 1	FOLD	Student 2
Say the word.		Listen and circle.
1. fork 		1. f v
2. van 		2. f v
Listen and circle.		Say the word.
3. f v		3. vase 
4. f v		4. feet 



C. Look and match.







1.  2.  3.  4.  5.  6. 
- ● ● ● ● ●
- ● ● ● ● ●
- d T h h f v

Unit 7, Worksheet 13: | Like Pizza!

I like sushi. I don't like noodles.

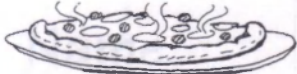


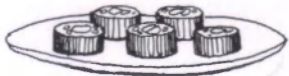














A. Draw lines to items you like and don't like.

pizza noodles sushi hamburgers dumplings fried rice

B. Pairwork.

Student 1	Student 2
Say what you like and don't like.	Listen and circle 😊 or ☹️.
1. 	1.  
2. 	2.  
3. 	3.  
Listen and circle 😊 or ☹️.	Say what you like and don't like.
4.  	4. 
5.  	5. 
6.  	6. 

FOLD

Unit 7, Worksheet 14: Phonics Fun s and z

sea sock zebra soup zoo zipper

A. Which pictures begin with the same sound? Circle.



B. Pairwork.

Student 1

Say the letter.

1. S

2. z

Listen and write.

3. _____

4. _____

Student 2

Listen and write.

1. _____

2. _____

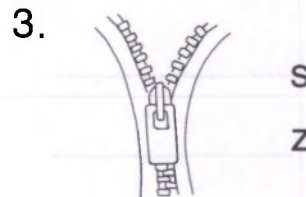
Say the letter.

3. Z

4. s

FOLD

C. Does it begin with s or z? Circle and write.









Unit 8, Worksheet 15: Do You Like Bananas?

Do you like oranges? Yes, I do.

Do you like carrots? No, I don't.

Ask six classmates the questions. Listen and draw 😊 or ☹️.

Name	 apples	 oranges	 potatoes
1. _____			
2. _____			
3. _____			

Name	 cucumbers	 bananas	 carrots
1. _____			
2. _____			
3. _____			

Unit 8, Worksheet 16: Phonics Fun short a



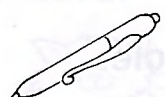

A. Read the words.

1. ant 2. hat 3. map 4. bag 5. gap 6. fat

B. Look and write.

1.  _nt 2.  b__g 3.  m__p

C. Pairwork. Does it have short a?

Student 1	FOLD	Student 2
Say the word.		Listen and circle.
1. hat 		1. ✓ X
2. hot 		2. ✓ X
Listen and circle.		Say the word.
3. ✓ X		3. pen 
4. ✓ X		4. sad 

D. Write the words in the correct columns. Then read the words.

bag	dad	pan	bat	fan	sad	hat	tag	bad	man	nag	pat
-ad	-ag			-an			-at				
_____	_____			_____			_____				
_____	_____			_____			_____				
_____	_____			_____			_____				

Unit 9, Worksheet 17: Old or Young?

He's short. He isn't tall.

She's fat. She isn't thin.

Pairwork.

Student 1

Say the sentence.

1.



2.



3.



Listen and circle.

4. a.



b.



5. a.



b.



6. a.



b.



Student 2

Listen and circle.

1. a.



b.



2. a.



b.



3. a.



b.



Say the sentence.

4.



5.



6.



FOLD

Unit 9, Worksheet 18: Phonics Fun short e

A. Read the words.

1. egg 2. pen 3. bed 4. vet 5. web 6. hem

B. Find and circle.

1. 

z	m	i
b	e	d
v	t	n





 2. 

v	w	o
e	i	n
t	b	b


 3. 


z	k	e
f	a	p
e	g	g


C. Pairwork. Does it have short a or short e?


Student 1	FOLD	Student 2
<p>Read the word.</p> <p>1. egg </p> <p>2. map </p> <p>Listen and circle.</p> <p>3. short a short e</p> <p>4. short a short e</p>	FOLD	<p>Listen and circle.</p> <p>1. short a short e</p> <p>2. short a short e</p> <p>Read the word.</p> <p>3. cat </p> <p>4. pen </p>

D. Does it have short a or short e? Look and match.

1.  ●

2.  ●

3.  ●

4.  ●

● ● ● ●

short a short e short a short e

Unit 10, Worksheet 19: Teacher or Nurse?

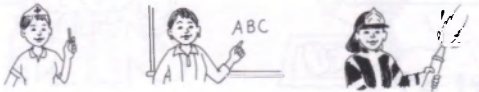


Is she a mail carrier? Yes, she is.

Is he a teacher? No, he isn't. He's a doctor.



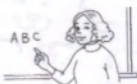
A. Pairwork.

Student 1

Ask the question.
Then listen and circle.




1. 
2. 
3. 

Answer the question.

4. police officer 
5. mail carrier 
6. teacher 

Student 2

Answer the question.

1. firefighter 
2. nurse 
3. doctor 

Ask the question.
Then listen and circle.

4. 
5. 
6. 

FOLD

B. Read the question. Write the answer.



Is she a police officer?



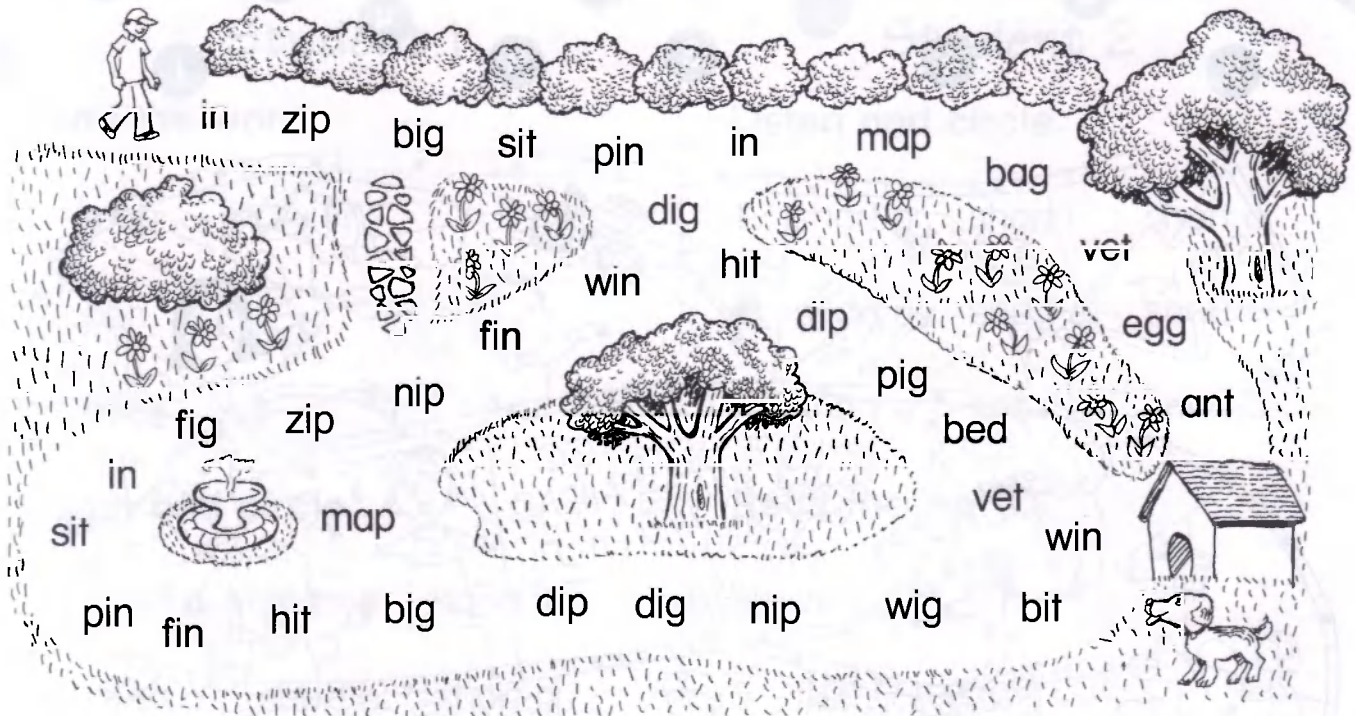
Is he a firefighter?

Unit 10, Worksheet 20: Phonics Fun short i



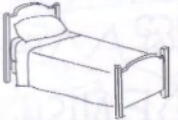
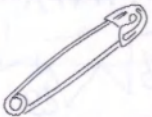
A. Read the words.

1. dig 2. sit 3. pin 4. in 5. fit 6. hid

B. Follow the short i words to Digger.



C. Say, circle, and write.

	Say	Circle	Circle	Circle
1.		s z	e i	d t
2.		s h	a i	v t
3.		b z	e i	d t
4.		g p	a i	n m

Write

Unit 11, Worksheet 21: Play a Game!

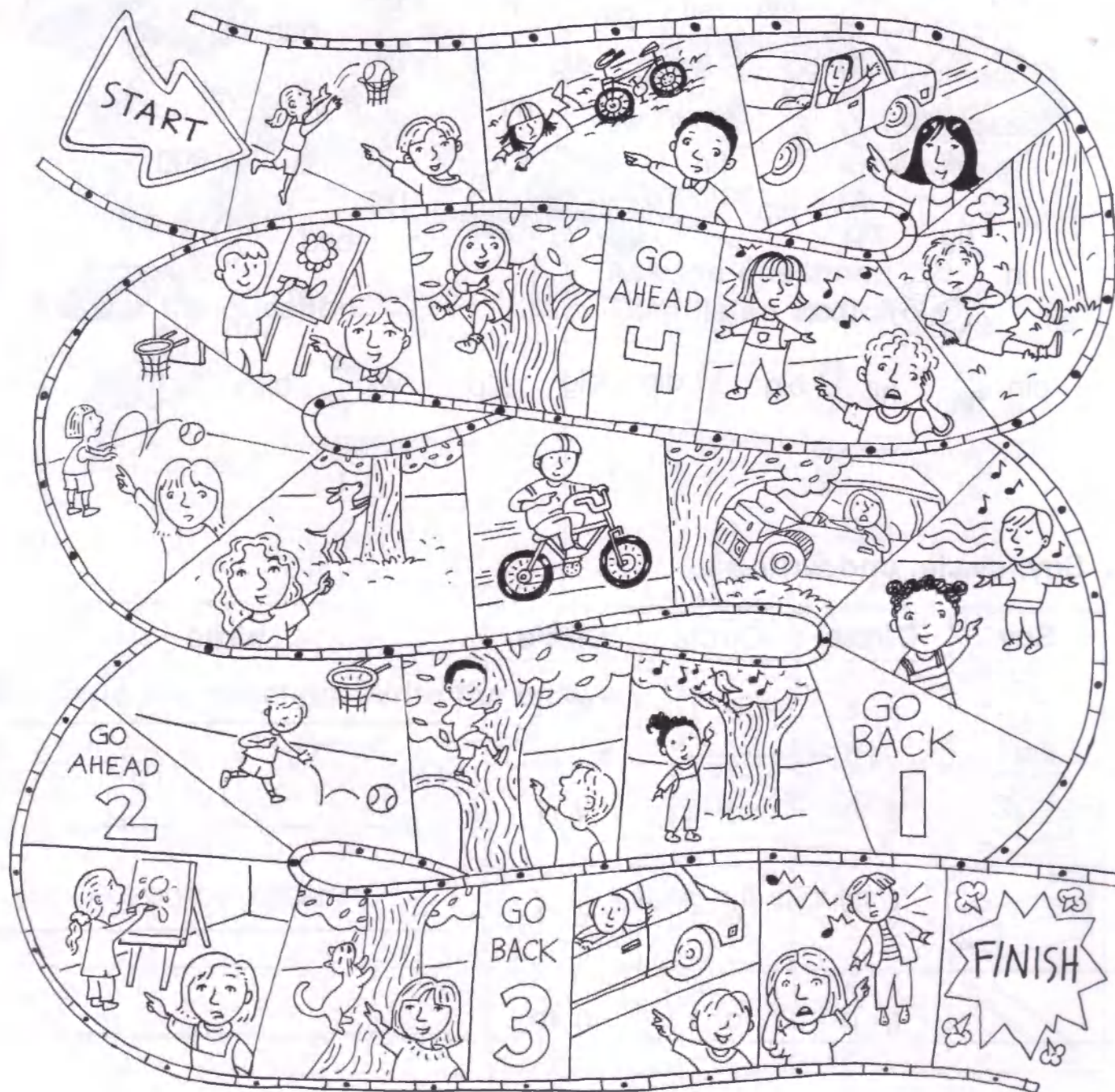
I can play basketball.
You can't play basketball.

It can climb a tree.
She can't climb a tree.

Point to a number. Play the game with a partner.

5 3 1 2 3 3 1 5

2 3 3 3 1 5


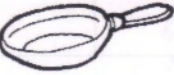






Unit 11, Worksheet 22: Phonics Fun short o




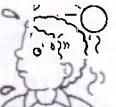





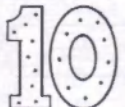

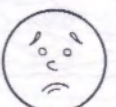



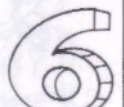
A. Read the words.

1. hot 2. mop 3. on 4. pot 5. Tom 6. jot

B. Pairwork. Does it have short a, short e, short i, or short o?

Student 1	FOLD	Student 2
<p>Read the word.</p> <p>1. mop </p> <p>2. pan </p> <p>3. bed </p> <p>Listen and circle.</p> <p>4. short a short e short i</p> <p>5. short a short e short o</p> <p>6. short a short i short o</p>	FOLD	<p>Listen and circle.</p> <p>1. short a short i short o</p> <p>2. short a short e short i</p> <p>3. short e short i short o</p> <p>Read the word.</p> <p>4. in </p> <p>5. net </p> <p>6. pot </p>

C. Circle the short o pictures.




<p>1.    </p>	<p>2.    </p>
<p>3.    </p>	<p>4.    </p>




Unit 12, Worksheet 23: Can You Swim?

Can you swim? Yes, I can.

Can she do a cartwheel? No, she can't.

A. Ask four classmates the questions. Listen and write ✓ or X.

Name	 fly a kite	 use chopsticks	 make a sandwich
1. _____			
2. _____			

Name	 swim	 play the guitar	 do a cartwheel
1. _____			
2. _____			

B. Read the question. Write the answer.



Can he fly a kite?



Can it swim?



Can she do a cartwheel?

Unit 12, Worksheet 24: Phonics Fun short u

A. Read the words.

1. up 2. bus 3. nut 4. sun 5. dug 6. hum

B. Pairwork. Does it have short a, short e, short i, short o, or short u?

Student 1

Circle one. Then say the word.

1.  
2.  
3.  

Listen and circle.







4. short e short i short u
5. short i short o short u
6. short a short e short u

Student 2

Listen and circle.

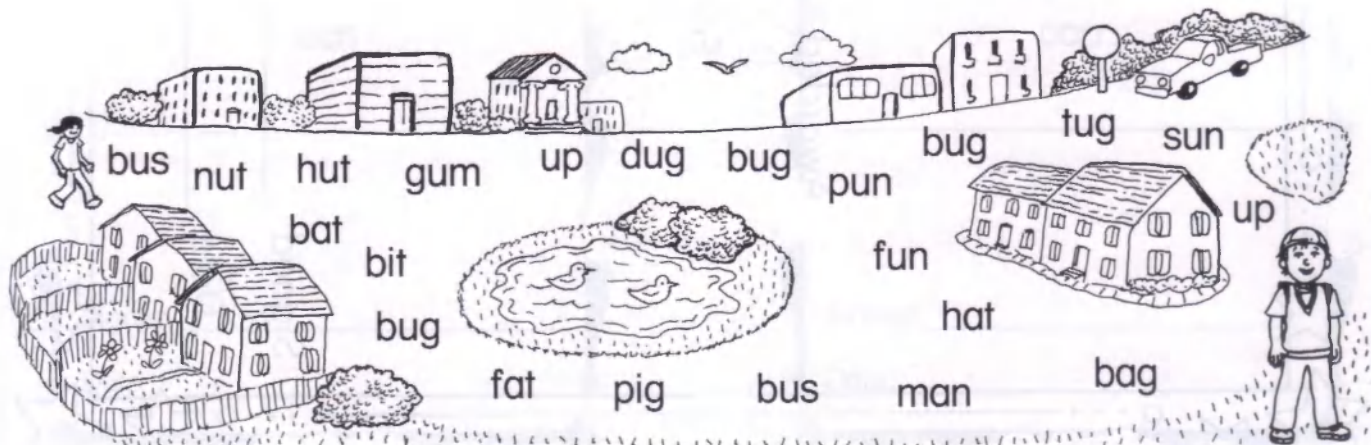
1. short a short e short u
2. short a short i short o
3. short e short o short u

Circle one. Then say the word.

4.  
5.  
6.  

FOLD

C. Follow the short u words to Ted.



Certificate of Merit

Awarded to _____

For _____

Signed _____


Date _____





Thanks to _____
for _____
Thanks!
Thanks!

An illustration of a ribbon with a decorative border and a small alarm clock hanging from the left side.



Thanks to _____
for _____
Thanks!
Thanks!

An illustration of a ribbon with a decorative border and a small alarm clock hanging from the left side.



Great Job!

This is to certify that _____
can _____

Signed _____
Date _____

A rectangular certificate with a decorative border of smiley faces and a ribbon-like top edge.



Great Job!

This is to certify that _____
can _____

Signed _____
Date _____

A rectangular certificate with a decorative border of smiley faces and a ribbon-like top edge.

Congratulations!

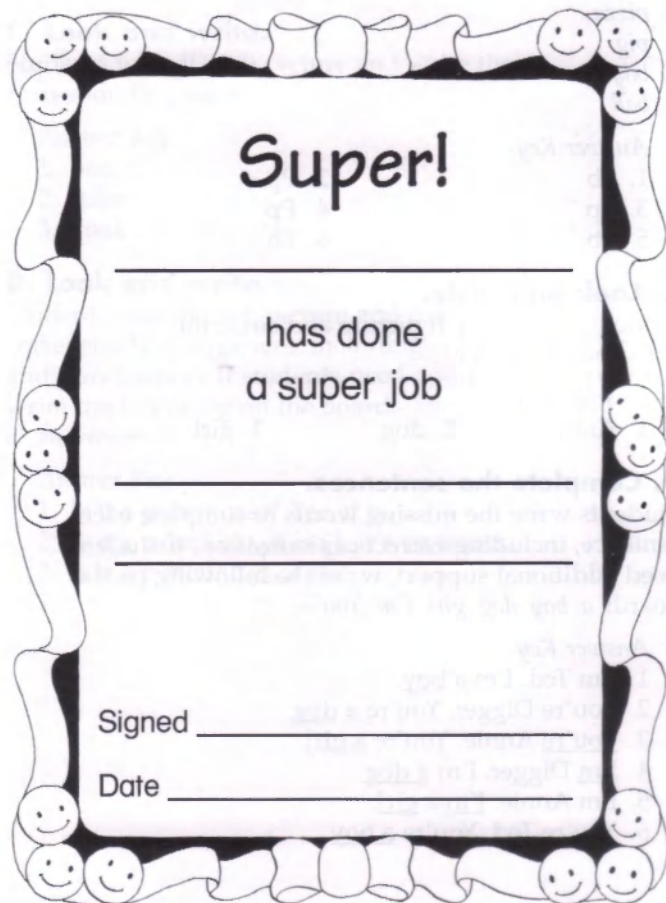
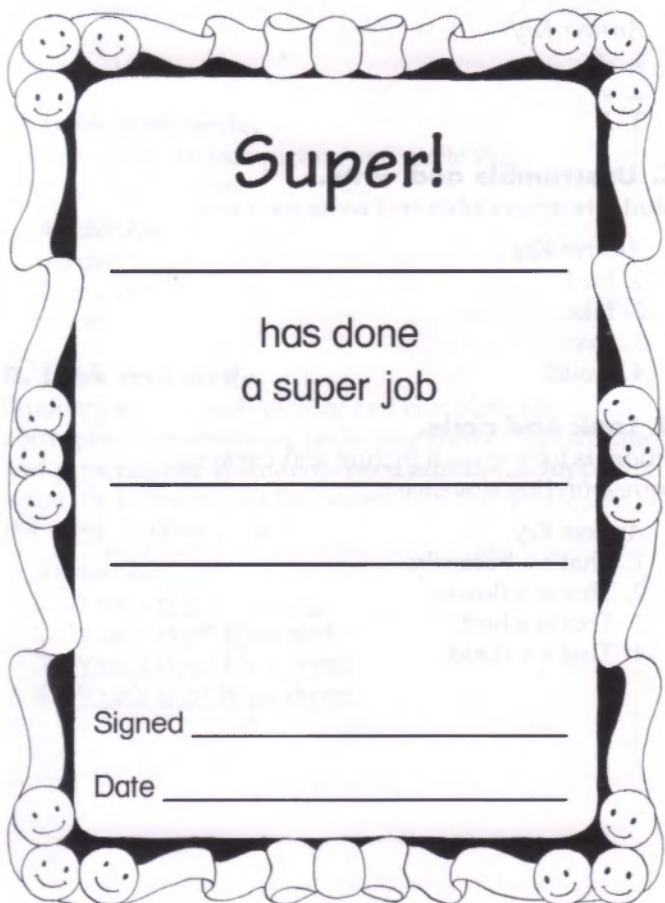
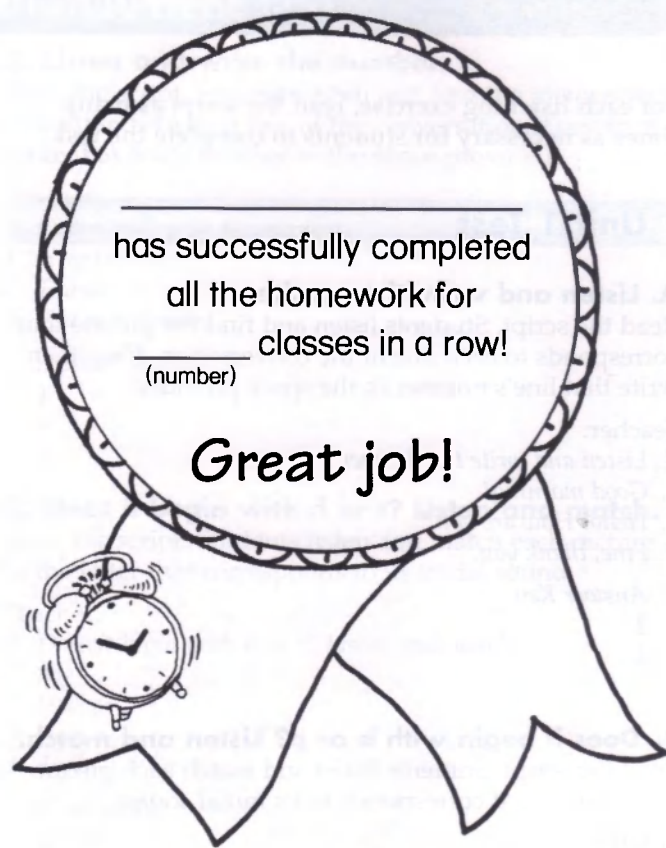
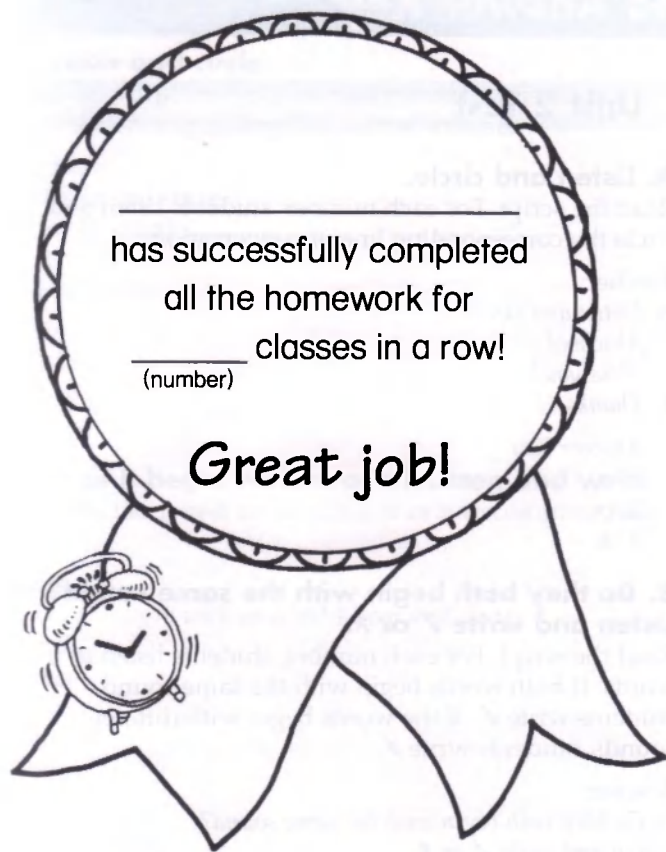
Awarded to _____

For _____

Signed _____

Date _____





Test Instructions and Answer Key

For each listening exercise, read the script as many times as necessary for students to complete the task.

Unit 1 Test

A. Listen and write the number.

Read the script. Students listen and find the picture that corresponds to each line of the conversation. They then write that line's number in the space provided.

Teacher:

A. Listen and write the number.

1. Good morning!
2. Hello! How are you?
3. Fine, thank you.

Answer Key

- 2
- 1
- 3

B. Does it begin with b or p? Listen and match.

Read the script. Students listen and match each picture to the letter that corresponds to its initial sound.

Teacher:

B. Does it begin with b or p? Listen and match.

1. bird
2. pencil
3. pizza
4. pig
5. boy
6. ball

Answer Key

- | | |
|-------|-------|
| 1. Bb | 2. Pp |
| 3. Pp | 4. Pp |
| 5. Bb | 6. Bb |

C. Look and circle.

Students look at each picture and circle the corresponding word.

Answer Key

- | | | |
|----------|--------|---------|
| 1. Annie | 2. dog | 3. girl |
|----------|--------|---------|

D. Complete the sentences.

Students write the missing words to complete each sentence, including correct capitalization. If students need additional support, write the following on the board: *a boy dog girl I'm You're*

Answer Key

1. I'm Ted. I'm a boy.
2. You're Digger. You're a dog.
3. You're Annie. You're a girl.
4. I'm Digger. I'm a dog.
5. I'm Annie. I'm a girl.
6. You're Ted. You're a boy.

Unit 2 Test

A. Listen and circle.

Read the script. For each number, students listen and circle the corresponding line of conversation.

Teacher:

A. Listen and circle.

1. Ah-choo!
2. Bless you!
3. Thanks.

Answer Key

1. a
2. b
3. a

B. Do they both begin with the same sound? Listen and write ✓ or X.

Read the script. For each number, students listen to the words. If both words begin with the same sound, students write ✓. If the words begin with different sounds, students write X.

Teacher:

B. Do they both begin with the same sound?

Listen and write ✓ or X.

1. kite, key
2. girl, gorilla
3. kangaroo, garden

Answer Key

1. ✓
2. ✓
3. X

C. Unscramble and write.

Students unscramble and write each word.

Answer Key

1. bird
2. lake
3. tree
4. cloud

D. Look and circle.

Students look at each picture and circle the corresponding sentence.

Answer Key

1. That's a butterfly.
2. This is a flower.
3. This is a bird.
4. That's a cloud.

Unit 3 Test

A. Listen and circle.

Read the script. For each number, students listen and circle the corresponding line of conversation.

Teacher:

A. Listen and circle.

1. *Sh! Be quiet!*
2. *Sorry.*
3. *That's okay.*

Answer Key

1. a
2. b
3. a

B. Does it begin with m or n? Listen and write.

Students listen and write either *m* or *n* to complete each word.

Teacher:

B. Does it begin with m or n? Listen and write.

1. *milk*
2. *mop*
3. *net*
4. *nurse*
5. *night*
6. *mother*

Answer Key

1. milk
2. mop
3. net
4. nurse
5. night
6. mother

C. Look and circle.

Students look at each picture and circle the corresponding word.

Answer Key

1. cow
2. chicken
3. cat

D. Look and write.

Students look at each picture and complete the corresponding sentences, including correct capitalization and punctuation. If students need additional support, write the following on the board: *this that bird horse pig It's sheep ? What's . a*

Answer Key

1. What's this? It's a pig.
2. What's that? It's a bird.
3. What's that? It's a horse.
4. What's this? It's a sheep.

Unit 4 Test

A. Listen and write the number.

Read the script. Students listen and find the picture that corresponds to each line of the conversation. They then write that line's number in the space provided.

Teacher:

A. Listen and write the number.

1. *Here you are.*
2. *Thanks.*
3. *You're welcome.*

Answer Key

- 1
- 3
- 2

B. Does it begin with d or t? Listen and match.

Read the script. Students listen and match each picture to the letter that corresponds to its initial sound.

Teacher:

B. Does it begin with d or t? Listen and match.

1. *dog*
2. *teacher*
3. *tiger*
4. *duck*

Answer Key

1. Dd
2. Tt
3. Tt
4. Dd

C. Look and write.

Students look at each picture and write the corresponding word.

Answer Key

1. pen
2. ruler
3. book

D. Look and write.

Students look at each picture and complete the corresponding sentences, including correct capitalization and punctuation. If students need additional support, write the following on the board: *Yes . a Is it isn't , No is an eraser*

Answer Key

1. Is it a pencil case? Yes, it is.
2. Is it a ruler? No, it isn't. It's an eraser.
3. Is it a pencil? Yes, it is.

Unit 5 Test

A. Listen and write.

Read the script. Students listen and complete the conversation. If students need additional support, write the following on the board: *last first What's name*

Teacher:

A. Listen and write.

1. What's your first name? *Matt.*
2. What's your last name? *Young.*

Answer Key

1. What's your first name? *Matt.*
2. What's your last name? *Young.*

B. Which picture begins with a different sound? Listen and write X.

Read the script. For each number, students listen and write **X** on the picture that begins with a different sound.

Teacher:

B. Which picture begins with a different sound?

Listen and write **X**.

1. *water, woman, house*
2. *hand, window, horse*
3. *horse, house, water*
4. *hand, woman, window*

Answer Key

1. house
2. window
3. water
4. hand

C. Read the question. Write the answer.

Students look at the picture and answer each question, including correct capitalization and punctuation. If students need additional support, write the following on the board: *One cats Four lake . trees Three birds clouds Two flowers Twelve Six*

Answer Key

1. How many trees? Two trees.
2. How many lakes? One lake.
3. How many clouds? Three clouds.
4. How many cats? Four cats.
5. How many birds? Six birds.
6. How many flowers? Twelve flowers.

Unit 6 Test

A. Listen and write the number.

Read the script. Students listen and find the picture that corresponds to each line of the conversation. They then write that line's number in the space provided.

Teacher:

A. Listen and write the number.

1. *Ouch!*
2. *Are you okay?*
3. *I think so.*

Answer Key

- 2
- 1
- 3

B. Does it begin with f or v? Listen and write.

Read the script. Students listen and write either *f* or *v* to complete each word.

Teacher:

B. Does it begin with f or v? Listen and write.

1. *feet*
2. *vase*
3. *fish*
4. *van*
5. *violin*
6. *fork*

Answer Key

- | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1. <u>f</u> eet | 2. <u>v</u> ase |
| 3. <u>f</u> ish | 4. <u>v</u> an |
| 5. <u>v</u> iolin | 6. <u>f</u> ork |

C. Look and write.

Students look at each picture and write the corresponding word.

Answer Key

1. hot
2. happy
3. hungry

D. Read and circle.

Students read each question and circle the correct answer, based on the picture cue.

Answer Key

1. a
2. b
3. b
4. a

Midterm Test

A. Listen and write.

Read the script. Students listen and complete the conversations, including correct capitalization and punctuation.

Teacher:

A. Listen and write.

1. Good morning!
2. Hello! How are you?
3. Fine, thank you.

1. Ah-choo!
2. Bless you!
3. Thanks.

Answer Key

1. Good morning!
2. Hello! How are you?
3. Fine, thank you.

1. Ah-choo!
2. Bless you!
3. Thanks.

B. Listen and circle.

Read the script. For each number, students look at the picture and listen to the conversation. If the picture illustrates the conversation, students circle ✓. If it does not, students circle X.

Teacher:

B. Listen and circle.

1. Ouch!

Are you okay?
I think so.

2. Sh! Be quiet!

Sorry.
That's okay.

3. What's your first name? Emily.
What's your second name? Young.

Answer Key

1. X
2. ✓
3. X

C. Listen and circle.

Read the script. Students listen and circle the corresponding line of conversation.

Teacher:

C. Listen and circle.

1. Here you are.
2. Thanks.
3. You're welcome.

Answer Key

1. a
2. b
3. a

D. Which picture begins with a different sound? Listen and write X.

Read the script. For each number, students listen and write X on the picture that begins with a different sound.

Teacher:

D. Which picture begins with a different sound?

Listen and write X.

1. pencil, pen, boy
2. violin, feet, fish
3. gorilla, kite, key
4. milk, night, nurse

Answer Key

1. boy
2. violin
3. gorilla
4. milk

E. Listen and write.

Read the script. Students listen and write the initial letter of each word they hear.

Teacher:

E. Listen and write.

1. vase
2. house
3. water
4. desk

Answer Key

1. vase
2. house
3. water
4. desk

F. Find and circle.

Students find and circle the words from the word bank.

Answer Key

v	p	o	w	l	s	b	e
u	e	p	c	a	h	i	f
r	(f	l	o	w	e	r	i
a	s	a	w	p	e	d	m
m	n	k	i	r	p	a	a
p	t	e	(h	o	r	s	e)
b	(c	h	i	c	k	e	n)
r	a	(g	i	r	l)	n	i

G. Look and circle.

Students look at each picture and circle the corresponding word.

Answer Key

1. ruler
2. hot
3. cloud

Unit 7 Test

H. Look and write.

Students look at each picture and complete the corresponding sentences, including correct capitalization and punctuation.

Answer Key

1. I'm Annie. I'm a girl.
2. You're Digger. You're a dog.
3. You're Joe. You're a boy.

I. Read and write.

Students look at each picture, read the corresponding text, and write the question or answer, including correct capitalization and punctuation.

Answer Key

1. Are you sad? No, I'm not. I'm happy.
2. Are you cold? Yes, I am.
3. Are you hungry? Yes, I am.

J. Look and write.

Students look at each picture and complete the sentences, including correct capitalization and punctuation.

Answer Key

1. This is a cat.
2. What's that? It's a tree.
3. That's a horse.
4. What's this? It's a butterfly.

K. Look and write.

Students complete each sentence based on the picture cue.

Answer Key

1. How many pens? Eight pens.
2. How many pencil cases? Two pencil cases.

L. Look and write.

Students look at each picture and complete the corresponding sentences, including correct capitalization and punctuation.

Answer Key

1. Is it a book? Yes, it is.
2. Is it a ruler? No, it isn't. It's a pencil.
3. Is it an eraser? Yes, it is.
4. Is it a pencil? No, it isn't. It's a pencil case.

A. Listen and circle.

Read the script. For each number, students listen and circle the corresponding line of conversation.

Teacher:

- A. Listen and circle.
1. Are you finished?
 2. No, not yet.
 3. Please hurry!

Answer Key

1. a
2. b
3. b

B. Does it begin with s or z? Listen and match.

Read the script. Students listen and match each picture to the letter that corresponds to its initial sound.

Teacher:

- B. Does it begin with s or z? Listen and match.
1. sea
 2. zebra
 3. zipper
 4. sock

Answer Key

1. Ss
2. Zz
3. Zz
4. Ss

C. Look and circle.

Students look at each picture and circle the corresponding word.

Answer Key

1. hamburgers
2. noodles
3. pizza

D. Look and write.

Students look at each picture and complete the corresponding sentence, including correct capitalization and punctuation. If students need additional support, write the following on the board: *don't fried rice . like sushi I dumplings*

Answer Key

1. I like sushi.
2. You don't like fried rice.
3. I don't like dumplings.

Unit 8 Test

A. Listen and write.

Read the script. Students listen and complete the conversation, including correct capitalization and punctuation. If students need additional support, write the following on the board: *Here . May book Thanks you*

Teacher:

A. Listen and write.

1. *May I borrow a book?*
2. *Sure. Here you are.*
3. *Thanks.*

Answer Key

1. May I borrow a book?
2. Sure. Here you are.
3. Thanks.

B. Does it have short a? Listen and write

✓ or X.

Read the script. Students listen to each word. They write ✓ if it has *short a* and X if it does not.

Teacher:

B. Does it have short a? Listen and write ✓ or X.

1. *ant*
2. *hat*
3. *net*
4. *mop*

Answer Key

1. ✓
2. ✓
3. X
4. X

C. Read and write the letter.

Students read each word and look at the picture. They then find and write the letter that corresponds to each word.

Answer Key

1. c bananas
2. a apples
3. d potatoes
4. b cucumbers

D. Your turn. Read the question. Write the answer.

Students read each question and write an answer about themselves. If students need additional support, write the following on the board: *Yes . No I , do don't*

Answer Key

Answers will vary.

Unit 9 Test

A. Listen and circle.

Read the script. For each number, students listen and circle the corresponding line of conversation.

Teacher:

A. Listen and circle.

1. *What's wrong?*
2. *I feel sick.*
3. *That's too bad.*

Answer Key

1. a
2. b
3. a

B. Does it have short a or short e? Listen and write.

Read the script. Students listen and write either *a* or *e* to complete each word.

Teacher:

B. Does it have short a or short e? Listen and write.

1. *bed*
2. *pen*
3. *cat*
4. *egg*
5. *hat*

Answer Key

1. bed
2. pen
3. cat
4. egg
5. hat

C. Look and write.

Students look at each picture and write the corresponding word.

Answer Key

1. thin
2. fat
3. young
4. old

D. Look and match.

Students look at each picture and match it to the corresponding sentences.

Answer Key

1. He's old. He isn't young.
2. She's tall. She isn't short.
3. He's thin. He isn't fat.
4. She's short. She isn't tall.

Unit 10 Test

A. Listen and write.

Read the script. Students listen and complete the conversation, including correct capitalization and punctuation. If students need additional support, write the following on the board: *telephone . 831-4968 What's Pardon*

Teacher:

A. Listen and write.

1. What's your telephone number?
2. It's 831-4968.
3. Pardon me?
4. 831-4968.

Answer Key

1. What's your telephone number?
2. It's 831-4968.
3. Pardon me?
4. 831-4968.

B. Does it have short e or short i? Listen and write.

Read the script. Students listen and write either *e* or *i* to complete each word.

Teacher:

B. Does it have short e or short i? Listen and write.

1. *net*
2. *sit*
3. *Ted*
4. *pen*
5. *pig*

Answer Key

1. net
2. sit
3. Ted
4. pen
5. pig

C. Unscramble and write.

Students unscramble and write each word.

Answer Key

1. doctor
2. nurse
3. firefighter
4. police officer
5. teacher
6. mail carrier

D. Read and write.

Students look at each picture and complete the corresponding question and answer, including correct capitalization and punctuation. If students need additional support, write the following on the board: *Yes No . is he She's isn't , firefighter He's a she mail carrier Is*

Answer Key

1. Is he a teacher? Yes, he is.
2. Is he a doctor? No, he isn't. He's a firefighter.
3. Is she a police officer? No, she isn't. She's a mail carrier.

Unit 11 Test

A. Listen and write.

Read the script. Students listen and complete the conversation, including correct capitalization and punctuation. If students need additional support, write the following on the board: *this . Nice my Dave meet Hello*

Teacher:

A. Listen and write.

1. Dad, this is my friend, Dave.
2. Nice to meet you, Dave.
3. Hello.

Answer Key

1. Dad, this is my friend, Dave.
2. Nice to meet you, Dave.
3. Hello.

B. Does it have short a, short e, short i, or short o? Listen and write.

Read the script. Students listen and write *a, e, i, or o* to complete each word.

Teacher:

B. Does it have short a, short e, short i, or short o?

Listen and write.

1. *hot*
2. *bag*
3. *vet*
4. *mop*
5. *sick*

Answer Key

1. hot
2. bag
3. vet
4. mop
5. sick

C. Look and circle.

Students look at each picture and circle the corresponding verb phrase.

Answer Key

1. climb a tree
2. draw a picture
3. drive a car
4. play basketball

D. Look and write.

Students look at each picture and complete the corresponding sentence. If students need additional support, write the following on the board: *can play basketball sing a song can't ride a bike*

Answer Key

1. I can play basketball.
2. She can ride a bike.
3. It can't sing a song.

Unit 12 Test

A. Listen and circle.

Read the script. For each number, students listen and circle the corresponding line of conversation.

Teacher:

A. Listen and circle.

1. I'm going now.
2. Bye-bye.
3. See you tomorrow.

Answer Key

1. b
2. b
3. a

B. Does it have short o or short u? Listen and write.

Read the script. Students listen and write either *o* or *u* to complete each word.

Teacher:

B. Does it have short o or short u? Listen and write.

1. pot
2. nut
3. sun
4. mop
5. up

Answer Key

1. pot
2. nut
3. sun
4. mop
5. up

C. Look and write.

Students look at each picture and write the corresponding words.

Answer Key

1. fly a kite
2. use chopsticks
3. do a cartwheel
4. make a sandwich

D. Write the question and the answer.

Students look at each picture and read the cue words. They then write the appropriate question and its answer, including correct capitalization and punctuation. If students need additional support, write the following on the board: *can Yes , . he can't she No Can*

Answer Key

1. Can she ride a bike? No, she can't.
2. Can he play the guitar? Yes, he can.
3. Can it swim? Yes, it can.

Final Test

A. Listen and circle.

Read the script. For each number, students look at the picture and listen to the conversation. If the picture and the conversation are the same, students circle ✓. If the picture and the conversation are different, students circle ✗.

Teacher:

A. Listen and circle.

1. Dad, this is my friend, Sam.
Nice to meet you, Sam.
Hello.

2. What's wrong?
I feel sick.
That's too bad.

3. May I borrow a ruler?
Sure. Here you are.
Thanks.

4. I'm going now.
Bye-bye!
See you tomorrow.

Answer Key

1. ✓
2. ✗
3. ✗
4. ✓

B. Listen and circle.

Read the script. For each number, students listen and circle the corresponding line of conversation.

Teacher:

B. Listen and circle.

1. What's your telephone number?
2. It's 483-0094.
3. Pardon me?
4. 483-0094.

1. Good morning!
2. Hello! How are you?
3. Fine, thank you.

Answer Key

1. a
2. b
3. a
4. a
1. a
2. a
3. b

C. Listen and write.

Read the script. Students listen and complete the conversations, including correct capitalization and punctuation.

Teacher:

A. Listen and write.

1. Are you finished?
2. No, not yet.
3. Please hurry!

1. Sh! Be quiet!
2. Sorry.
3. That's okay.

Answer Key

1. Are you finished?
2. No, not yet.
3. Please hurry!
1. Sh! Be quiet!
2. Sorry.
3. That's okay.

D. Do they both have the same vowel sound? Listen and write ✓ or X.

Read the script. For each number, students listen to the words. If both words have the same vowel sound, students write ✓. If the words have different vowel sounds, students write X.

Teacher:

D. Do they both have the same vowel sound?

Listen and write ✓ or X.

1. up, bus
2. pig, pot
3. van, ant
4. bed, egg
5. bag, in
6. on, sit
7. vet, map
8. pen, pin

Answer Key

1. ✓
2. X
3. ✓
4. ✓
5. X
6. X
7. X
8. X

E. Does it have short a, short e, short i, short o or short u? Listen and write.

Read the script. Students listen and write a, e, i, o, or u to complete each word.

Teacher:

B. Does it have short a, short e, short i, short o or short u? Listen and write.

1. sun
2. sock
3. six
4. map
5. nut
6. bag
7. hat
8. vet

Answer Key

- | | |
|--------|---------|
| 1. sun | 2. sock |
| 3. six | 4. map |
| 5. nut | 6. bag |
| 7. hat | 8. vet |

F. Do they both begin with the same sound? Listen and write ✓ or X.

Read the script. For each number, students listen to the words. If both words begin with the same sound, students write ✓. If the words begin with different sounds, students write X.

Teacher:

F. Do they both begin with the same sound?

Listen and write ✓ or X.

1. desk, duck
2. sea, soup
3. pizza, boy
4. girl, kite

Answer Key

1. ✓
2. ✓
3. X
4. X

G. Which picture begins with a different sound? Listen and write X.

Read the script. For each number, students listen and write X on the picture that begins with a different sound.

Teacher:

G. Which picture begins with a different sound?

Listen and write X.

1. zipper, zebra, sock
2. milk, net, map
3. fork, vet, violin
4. ball, pen, bird
5. hand, window, horse
6. night, nurse, mop

Answer Key

- | | |
|-----------|--------|
| 1. sock | 2. net |
| 3. fork | 4. pen |
| 5. window | 6. mop |

H. Look and write.

Students look at each picture and write in the missing letters to complete each word.

Answer Key

- | | |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. teacher | 2. <u>swim</u> |
| 3. <u>thin</u> | 4. <u>pizza</u> |
| 5. <u>sushi</u> | 6. <u>doctor</u> |

I. Unscramble and write.

Students unscramble and write each word.

Answer Key

- | | |
|-----------------|---------------|
| 1. oranges | 2. old |
| 3. mail carrier | 4. carrots |
| 5. tall | 6. fried rice |

J. Circle and write.

Students look at each picture and circle the corresponding words. They then write each verb phrase.

Answer Key

- make a sandwich
- play the guitar
- climb a tree
- drive a car

K. Find and circle.

Students find and circle the words from the word bank.

Answer Key

t	e	a	c	h	e	r	p
s	u	s	h	t	s	i	o
e	t	h	r	e	e	s	t
v	c	c	e	n	v	u	a
n	o	o	d	l	e	s	t
e	l	l	p	o	n	h	o
n	d	o	o	l	e	i	e
t	b	a	n	a	n	a	s

L. Read and circle.

Students look at each picture and read the question. They then circle the correct answer.

Answer Key

- | | |
|------|------|
| 1. a | 2. a |
| 3. b | 4. a |
| 5. b | 6. a |

M. Look and write.

Students look at each picture and complete the sentences, including correct capitalization and punctuation.

Answer Key

- She's fat. She isn't thin.
- He's old. He isn't young.
- She's short. She isn't tall.
- He's thin. He isn't fat.

N. Write the question and the answer.

Students look at each picture and read the cue words. They then write the appropriate question and its answer, including correct capitalization and punctuation.

Answer Key

- Is he a firefighter? Yes, he is.
- Is she a police officer? No, she isn't. She's a doctor.
- Is he a teacher? No, he isn't. He's a police officer.
- Is she a nurse? Yes, she is.

UNIT 1 TEST

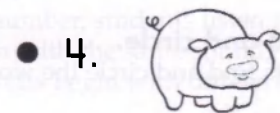
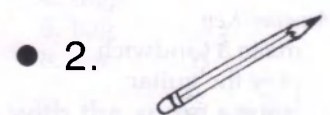
A. Listen and write the number.



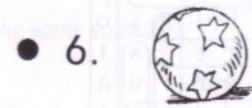
B. Does it begin with b or p? Listen and match.



B b



P p



C. Look and circle.



D. Complete the sentences.

1. I'm Ted. I'm a _____.

2. You're Digger. You're a _____.

3. _____ Annie. You're _____.

4. _____ Digger. I'm _____.

5. I'm Annie. _____ a _____.

6. _____ Ted. You're _____.

UNIT 2 TEST

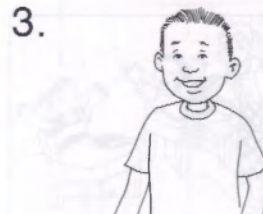
A. Listen and circle.



- a. Ah-choo!
b. Hello!

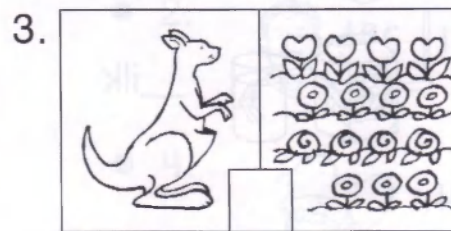
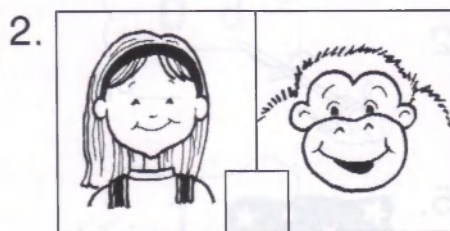
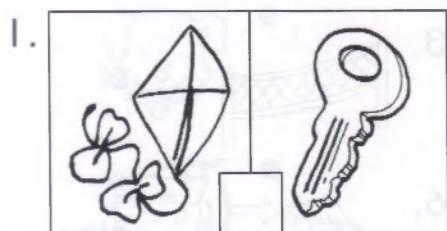


- a. Good morning!
b. Bless you!

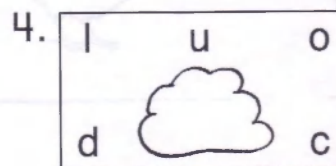
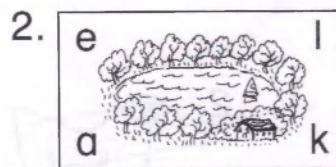


- a. Thanks.
b. How are you?

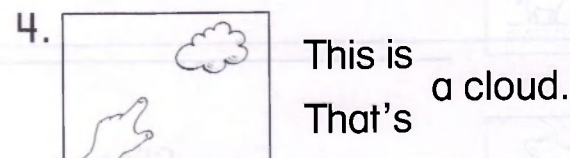
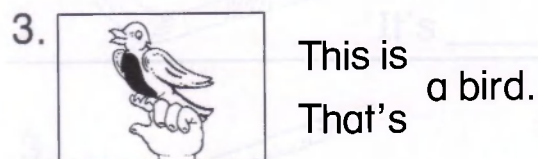
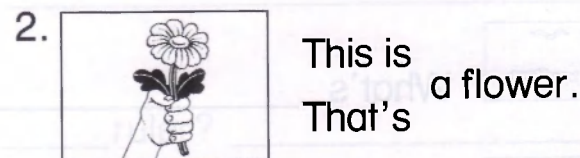
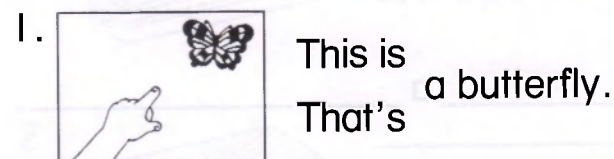
B. Do they both begin with the same sound? Listen and write ✓ or X.



C. Unscramble and write.



D. Look and circle.



UNIT 3 TEST

A. Listen and circle.



- a. Sh! Be quiet!
b. Bless you!

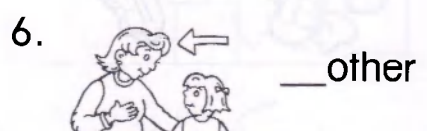
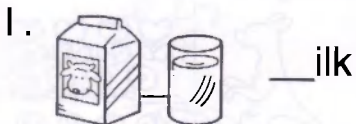


- a. Thank you.
b. Sorry.



- a. That's okay.
b. Sorry.

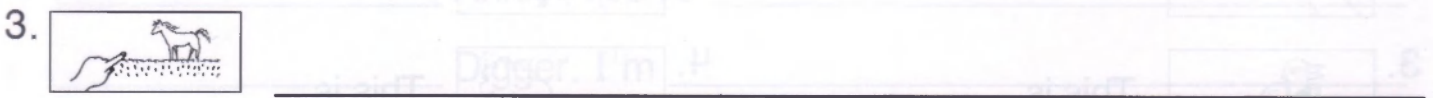
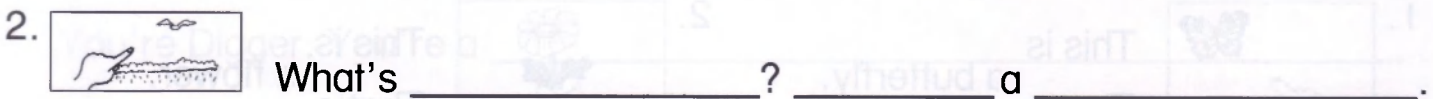
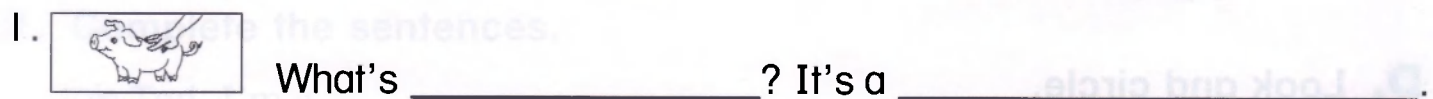
B. Does it begin with m or n? Listen and write.



C. Look and circle.



D. Look and write.


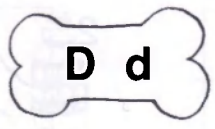


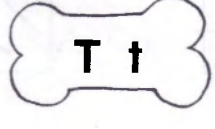



UNIT 4 TEST




A. Listen and write the number.



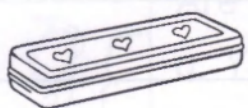
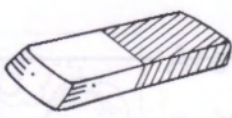
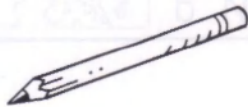
B. Does it begin with d or t? Listen and match.

1. 		2. 
3. 		4. 

C. Look and write.

1. 	2. 	3. 

D. Look and write.

1.		Is it a pencil case? _____
2.		_____ ruler? _____ It's _____
3.		_____ pencil? _____

UNIT 5 TEST

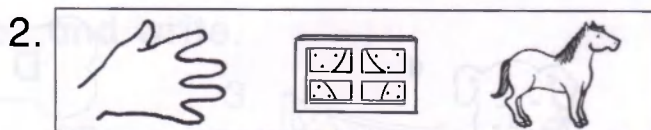
A. Listen and write.



1. What's your _____? Matt.

2. _____ your _____ name? Young.

B. Which picture begins with a different sound? Listen and write X.



C. Read the question. Write the answer.



1. How many trees? _____

2. How many lakes? _____

3. How many clouds? _____

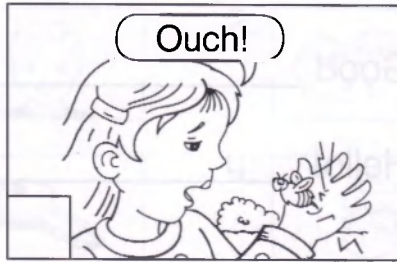
4. How many cats? _____

5. How many birds? _____

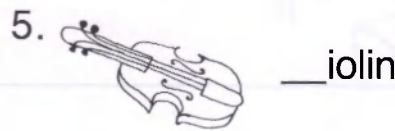
6. How many flowers? _____

UNIT 6 TEST

A. Listen and write the number.



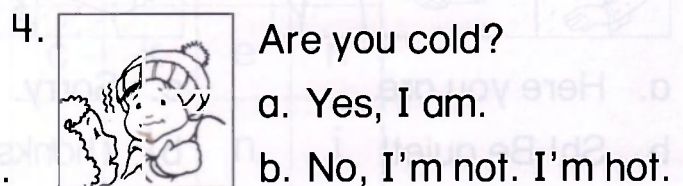
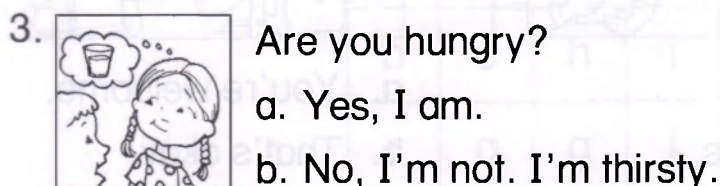
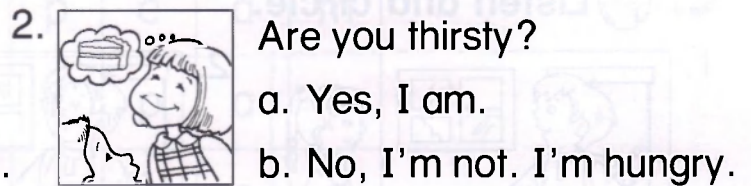
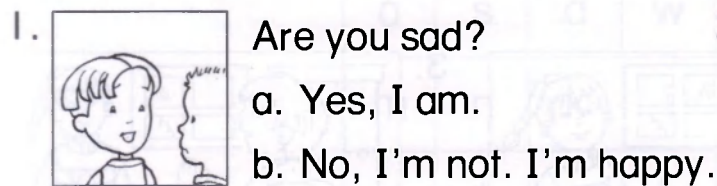
B. Does it begin with f or v? Listen and write.



C. Look and write.



D. Read the question. Circle the answer.



MIDTERM TEST

A. Listen and write.

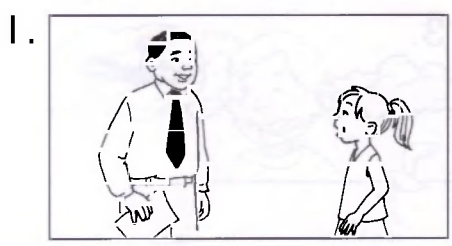


1. Good _____!
2. Hello! _____ are _____?
3. _____, thank you.

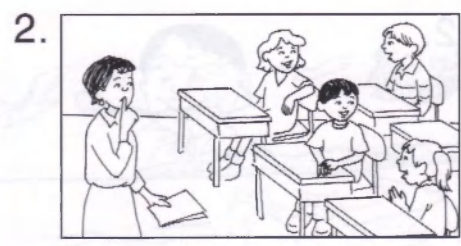


1. Ah-choo!
2. _____
3. _____

B. Listen and circle.



✓ ✗

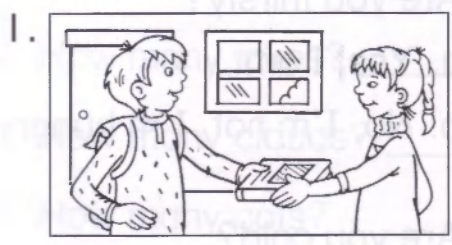


✓ ✗



✓ ✗

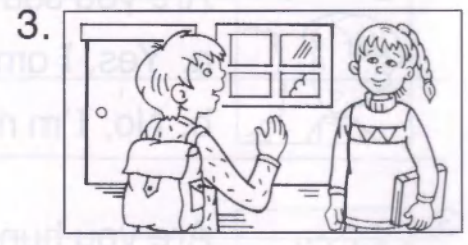
C. Listen and circle.



- a. Here you are.
- b. Sh! Be quiet!



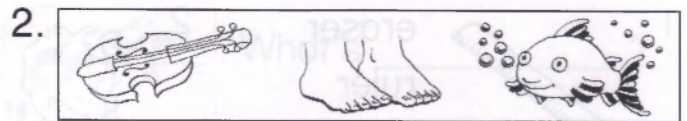
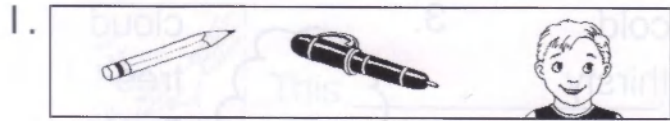
- a. Sorry.
- b. Thanks.




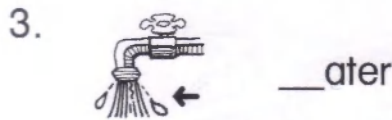
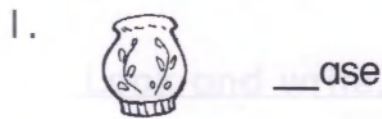
- a. You're welcome.
- b. That's okay.

MIDTERM TEST

D.  Which picture begins with a different sound? Listen and write X.



E.  Listen and write.




F. Find and circle.

chicken horse bird flower girl lake sheep cow


v	p	o	w	l	s	b	e
u	e	p	c	a	h	i	f
r	f	l	o	w	e	r	i
a	s	a	w	p	e	d	m
m	n	k	i	r	p	a	a
p	t	e	h	o	r	s	e
b	c	h	i	c	k	e	n
r	a	g	i	r	l	n	i

MIDTERM TEST


G. Look and circle.


1.  eraser
ruler
pencil case


2.  cold
thirsty
hot

3.  cloud
tree
flower


H. Look and write.


1.  I'm Annie. _____ a _____.


2.  _____ Digger. You're a _____.

3.  _____ Joe. _____.

I. Look and write.

1.  Are you sad?

2.  Yes, I am.

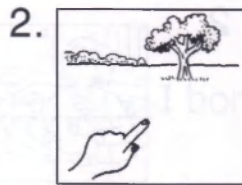
3.  Are you hungry?

MIDTERM TEST

J. Look and write.

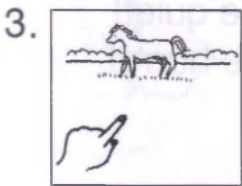


This _____.

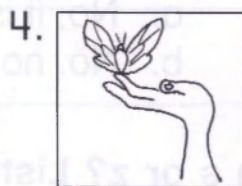


What's _____?

It's a _____.

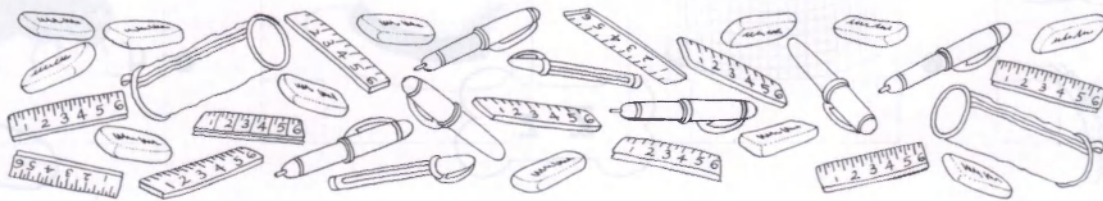


_____ a _____.



It's _____.

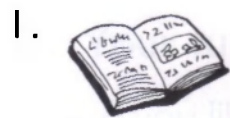
K. Look and write.



1. How _____ pens? _____

2. _____ many pencil cases? _____

L. Look and write.



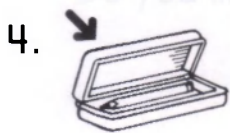
Is it a book? Yes, _____.



Is _____ ruler? No, _____. It's _____.



_____ eraser? _____



_____ pencil? _____

UNIT 7 TEST

A. Listen and circle.



- a. Are you finished?
b. Are you hot?

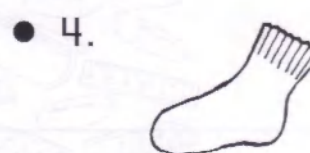
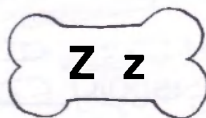
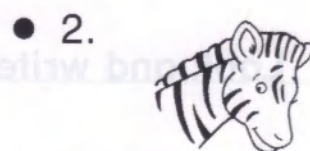
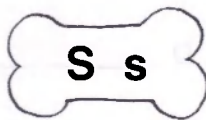


- a. No, it isn't.
b. No, not yet.



- a. Sh! Be quiet!
b. Please hurry!

B. Does it begin with s or z? Listen and match.



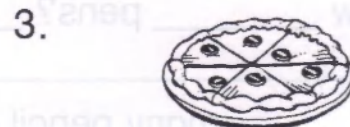
C. Look and circle.



hamburgers sushi



dumplings noodles



pizza fried rice

D. Look and write.



I like _____.



You _____.



_____.

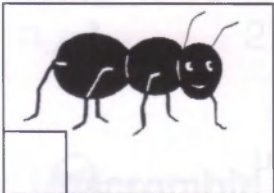

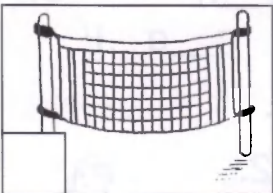
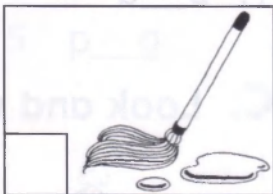
UNIT 8 TEST

A. Listen and write.

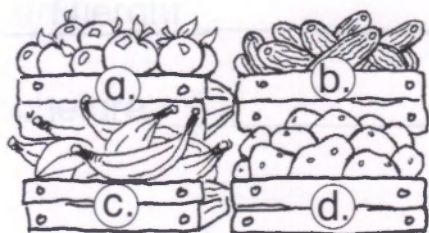


1. _____ I borrow a _____ ?
2. Sure. _____ are.
3. _____

B. Does it have short a? Listen and write ✓ or X.

1. 	2. 	3. 	4. 
--	--	---	--

C. Read and write the letter.



- | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1. _____ bananas | 2. _____ apples |
| 3. _____ potatoes | 4. _____ cucumbers |

D. Your turn. Read the question. Write the answer.

1. Do you like apples? _____
2. Do you like oranges? _____
3. Do you like bananas? _____
4. Do you like carrots? _____

UNIT 9 TEST

A. Listen and circle.



- a. What's wrong?
b. How are you?



- a. I'm happy.
b. I feel sick.

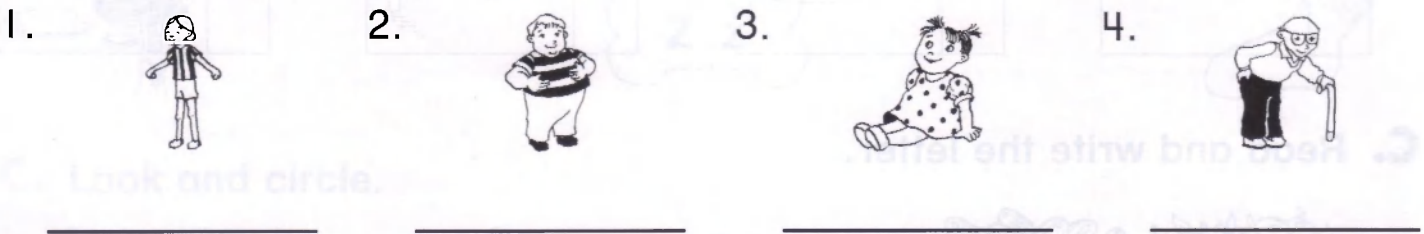


- a. That's too bad.
b. That's okay.

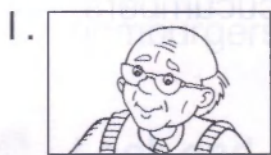
B. Does it have short a or short e? Listen and write.

1. b__d 2. p__n 3. c__t 4. __gg 5. h__t

C. Look and write.



D. Look and match.



- She's tall. She isn't short.



- He's thin. He isn't fat.



- He's old. He isn't young.



- She's short. She isn't tall.

UNIT 10 TEST

A. Listen and write.



1. _____ your _____ number?
2. It's _____.
3. _____ me?
4. _____




B. Does it have short e or short i? Listen and write.

1. n__t 2. s__t 3. T__d 4. p__n 5. p__g

C. Unscramble and write.

- | | |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. tdcoor _____ | 2. runse _____ |
| 3. erfifierght _____ | 4. poclie ffocier _____ |
| 5. chetare _____ | 6. lami arcieerr _____ |

D. Read and write.

1.  Is he a teacher? _____
2.  _____ a doctor? _____
3.  _____ a police officer? _____

UNIT 11 TEST

A. Listen and write.



1. Dad, _____ is _____ friend, Dave.
2. _____ to _____ you, _____.
3. _____

B. Does it have short a, short e, short i, or short o? Listen and write.

1. h__t
2. b__g
3. v__t
4. m__p
5. s__ck

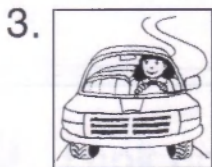
C. Look and circle.



climb a tree
a table



draw a pencil
a picture



drive a bike
a car



play butterfly
basketball

D. Look and write.



I _____.



She _____.



It _____.

UNIT 12 TEST

A. Listen and circle.



- a. Are you finished?
b. I'm going now.



- a. Pardon me?
b. Bye-bye.

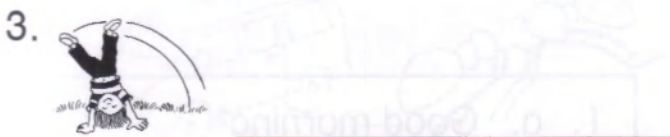
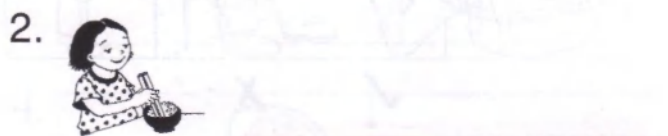
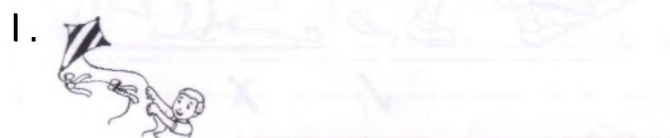


- a. See you tomorrow.
b. Sure. Here you are.

B. Does it have short o or short u? Listen and write.

1. p__t 2. n__t 3. s__n 4. m__p 5. __p

C. Look and write.



D. Write the question and the answer.

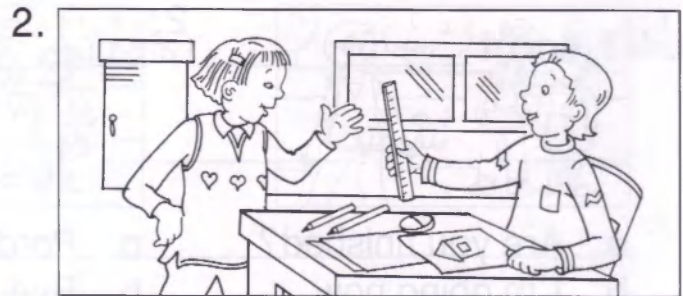


FINAL TEST

A. Listen and circle.



✓ X



✓ X



✓ X



✓ X

B. Listen and circle.

1. a. What's your telephone number?
b. What's your first name?
2. a. Emily.
b. It's 483-0094.
3. a. Pardon me?
b. Please hurry!
4. a. 483-0094.
b. Sorry.

1. a. Good morning!
b. Are you finished?
2. a. Hello! How are you?
b. Here you are.
3. a. I feel sick.
b. Fine, thank you.

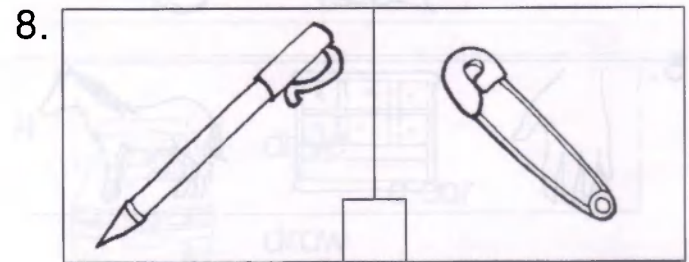
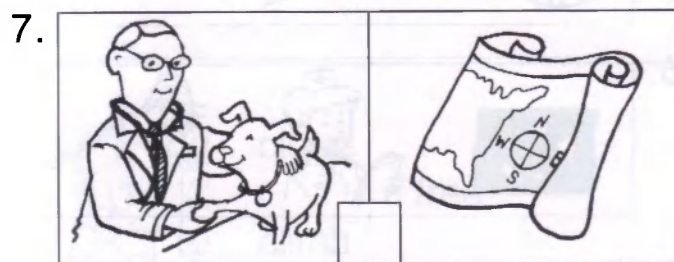
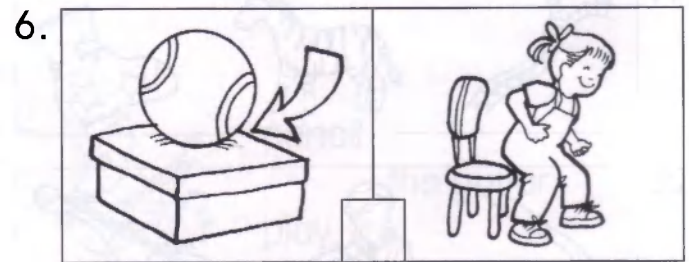
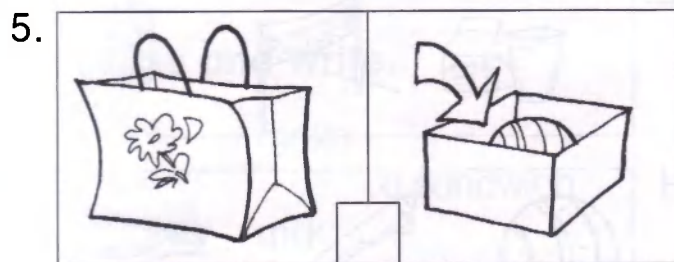
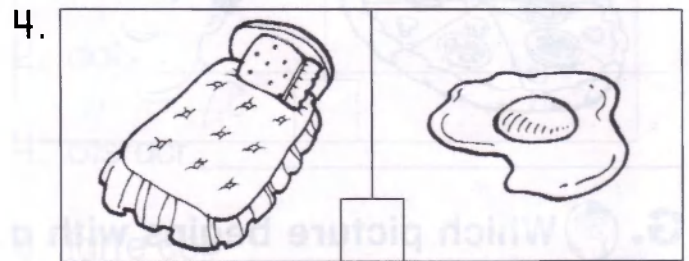
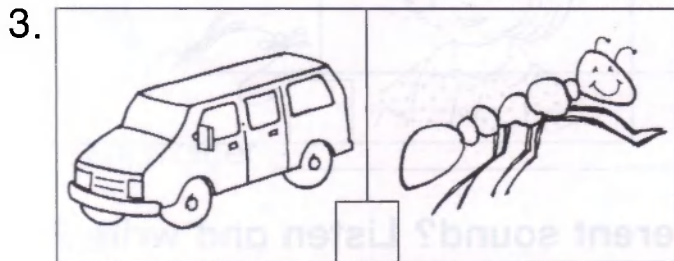
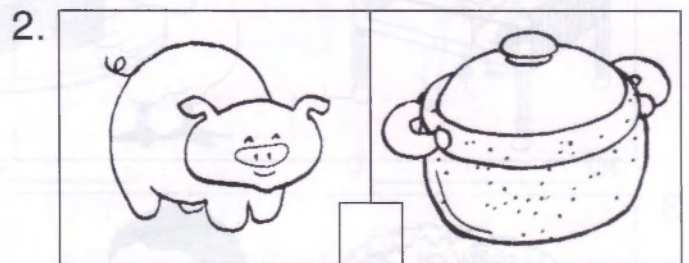
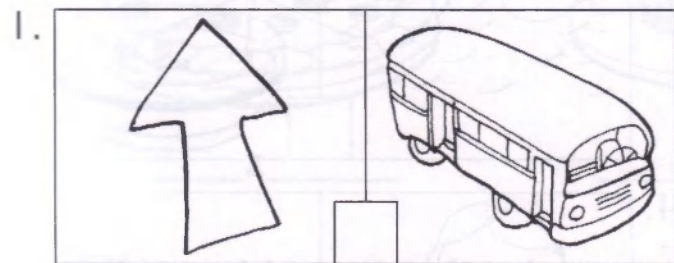
FINAL TEST

C. Listen and write.


1. _____ finished?
2. No, _____ yet.
3. Please _____!

1. Sh! _____
2. _____
3. That's _____.

D. Do they both have the same vowel sound? Listen and write ✓ or X.

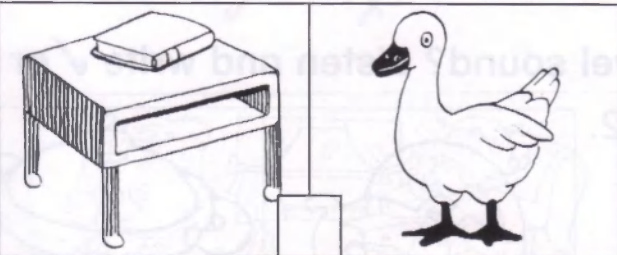
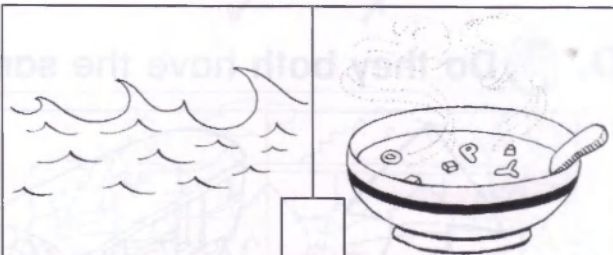
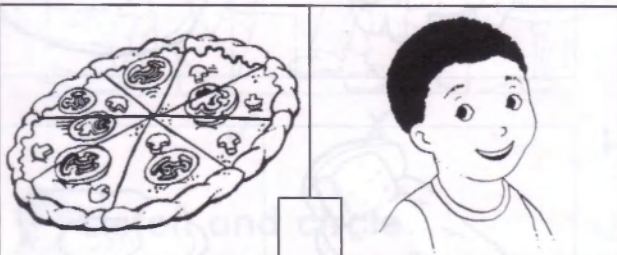



FINAL TEST







E.  Does it have short a, short e, short i, short o, or short u? Listen and write.

1. s__n 2. s__ck 3. s__x 4. m__p
 5. n__t 6. b__g 7. h__t 8. v__t

F.  Do they both begin with the same sound? Listen and write ✓ or X.

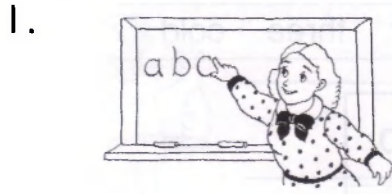
1. 	2. 
3. 	4. 

G.  Which picture begins with a different sound? Listen and write X.

1. 	2. 
3. 	4. 
5. 	6. 

FINAL TEST

H. Look and write.



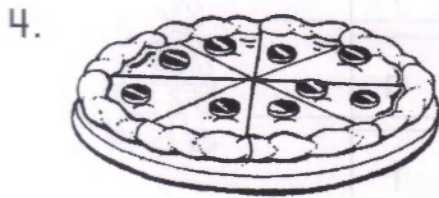
t _____ h _____



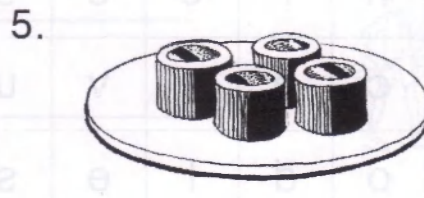
_____ w _____



t _____



_____ z _____



_____ us _____



d _____ or _____

I. Unscramble and write.

1. serogan _____

2. dol _____

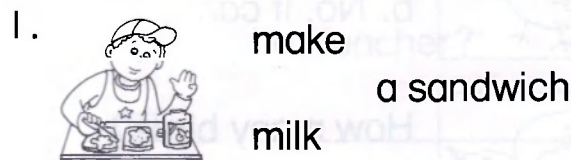
3. aiml rraicer _____

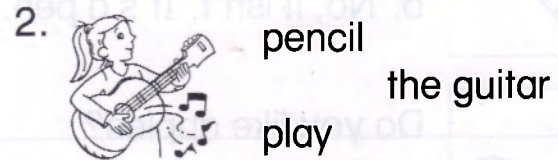
4. otsracr _____

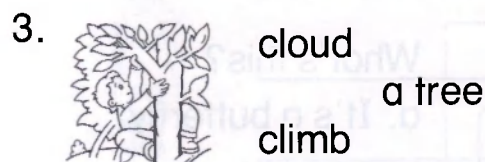
5. lalt _____

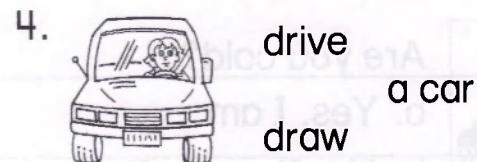
6. idrfe ceir _____

J. Circle and write.










FINAL TEST


K. Find and circle.


noodles sushi potatoes seven bananas teacher three cold


t	e	a	c	h	e	r	p
s	u	s	h	t	s	i	o
e	t	h	r	e	e	s	t
v	c	c	e	n	v	u	a
n	o	o	d	l	e	s	t
e	l	l	p	o	n	h	o
n	d	o	o	l	e	i	e
t	b	a	n	a	n	a	s


L. Read and circle.


- 

Is it a ruler?
a. Yes, it is.
b. No, it isn't. It's a pen.
- 

Can it sing a song?
a. Yes, it can.
b. No, it can't.
- 

Do you like apples?
a. Yes, I do.
b. No, I don't.
- 


How many birds?
a. One bird.
b. Three birds.
- 


Are you cold?
a. Yes, I am.
b. No, I'm not. I'm hot.
- 


What's this?
a. It's a butterfly.
b. It's a bird.


FINAL TEST

M. Look and write.


1.  _____ fat.
 _____ isn't _____.


2.  _____


3.  _____


4.  _____

N. Write the question and the answer.

1.  he / firefighter?

2.  she / police officer?

3.  he / teacher?

4.  she / nurse?

Card List

Unit 1: Pages 1-4

Annie
Ted
Digger
girl
boy
dog
ball
bird
boy
pencil
pig
pizza

Unit 2: Pages 5-8

tree
butterfly
flower
cloud
bird
lake
garden
girl
gorilla
kangaroo
key
kite

Unit 3: Pages 9-12

pig
cow
horse
chicken
sheep
cat
milk
mop
mother
net
night
nurse

Unit 4: Pages 13-16

pen
book
eraser
pencil
ruler
pencil case
desk
dog
duck
table
teacher
tiger

Unit 5: Pages 17-22

one
two
three
four
five
six
seven
eight
nine
ten
eleven
twelve
hand
horse
house
water
window
woman

Unit 6: Pages 23-26

happy
sad
cold
hot
hungry
thirsty
feet
fish
fork
van
vase
violin

Unit 7: Pages 27–30

hamburgers
sushi
fried rice
dumplings
noodles
pizza
sea
sock
soup
zebra
zipper
zoo

Unit 8: Pages 31–34

apples
oranges
bananas
cucumbers
potatoes
carrots
ant
bag
hat
map

Unit 9: Pages 35–38

tall
short
fat
thin
young
old
bed
egg
pen
vet

Unit 10: Pages 39–42

doctor
nurse
police officer
teacher
mail carrier
firefighter
dig
in
pin
sit

Unit 11: Pages 43–46

ride a bike
climb a tree
drive a car
draw a picture
play basketball
sing a song
hot
mop
on
pot

Unit 12: Pages 47–50

swim
use chopsticks
fly a kite
make a sandwich
do a cartwheel
play the guitar
bus
nut
sun
up

Alphabet Cards: Pages 51–54

Grammar Cards: Pages 55–59

Word List

The numbers to the right of the entries indicate the Student Book page on which the word is introduced. Words in blue appear only in the art (on the Conversation Time pages).

A

a	3
actor	43
ah-choo	5
am	25
an	17
angry	23
Annie	2
ant	36
apples	34
are	1

B

baby	1
bad	37
bag	36
baker	43
ball	4
bananas	34
basketball	48
be quiet	9
beautiful	37
bed	40
bee	5
big	37
bike	48
bird	4
bless you	5
book	16
book bag	15
borrow	33
boy	2
bus	54
bush	5
butterfly	6
bye-bye	51

C

can	49
can't	49
car	48
carrots	34
cartwheel	52
cat	10
chicken	10
chopsticks	52
close	vii
cloud	6
circle	vii
climb a tree	48
cold	24
cow	10
crayon	15
cucumbers	34

D

dad	47
dance	51
desk	18
dig	46
Digger	2
do	35
do a cartwheel	52
doctor	44
dog	2
don't	31
draw a picture	48
drive a car	48
duck	18
dumplings	30

E

egg	40
eight	20
eleven	20
eraser	16

F

fat	38
feel	37
feet	26
fifteen	19
fine	1
finished	29
firefighter	44
first	19
fish	26
five	20
flower	6
fly a kite	52
fork	26
four	20
fourteen	19
fried rice	30
friend	47
frog	5

G

garden	8
girl	2
goat	9
going	51
good morning	1
gorilla	8
grapes	33
guitar	52

H

hamburgers	30
hand	22
happy	24
hat	36
he	39
hello	1
here you are	15
he's	39
hi	1
hot	24
hot dogs	29
horse	10
house	22
how are you	1
hungry	24
hurry	29

I

I think so	23
I'm	3
in	46
is	7
isn't	17
it	17
it's	11

J

jump	51
jump rope	47

K

kangaroo	8
key	8
kite	8

L

lake	6
last	19
like	31
line	vii
listen	vi

M

mail carrier	44
make a circle	vii
make a line	vii
make a sandwich	52
man	1
many	21
map	36
may	33
me	43
meet	47
milk	12
mop	12
morning	1
mother	12
my	47

N

name	19
net	12
nice to meet you	47
night	12
nine	20
no	17
noodles	30
not	25
not yet	29
notebook	15
now	51
number	43
nurse	12
nut	54

O

okay	9
old	38

on	50
one	20
open	vii
oranges	34
ouch	23

P

pardon me	43
pears	33
pen	16
pencil	4
pencil case	16
picture	48
pig	4
pin	46
pizza	4
play basketball	48
play soccer	47
play the guitar	52
please	29
point	vi
police officer	44
pot	50
potatoes	34
proud	23
put away	vii

Q

quiet	vi
-------	----

R

read a book	47
ride a bike	48
ruler	16
run	51

S

sad	24
salad	29
Sam	47
sandwich	52
sea	32
see you tomorrow	51
seven	20

she	39
sheep	10
she's	39
short	38
sick	37
sing a song	48
sit	46
sit down	vi
six	20
small	37
so	23
sock	32
song	48
sorry	9
soup	32
spaghetti	29
stand up	vi
stop	vi
sun	54
sure	33
sushi	30
swim	52

T

table	18
take out	vii
tall	38
teacher	18
Ted	2
telephone	43
ten	20
thanks	5
thank you	1
that	11
that's	7
that's too bad	37
thin	38
think	23
thirsty	24
thirteen	19
this	7
three	20
tiger	18
tired	23

to	47
tomatoes	33
tomorrow	51
too	37
tree	6
turkey	9
twelve	20
two	20

U

ugly	37
up	54
use chopsticks	52

V

van	26
vase	26
vet	40
violin	26

W

water	22
welcome	15
what's	11
what's wrong	37
window	22
woman	22
wrong	37

Y

yes	17
yet	29
you	1
young	38
your	vii
you're	3
you're welcome	15

Z

zebra	32
zipper	32
zoo	32



ENGLISH TIME

English Time is a six-level communicative course for children who are studying English for the first time. The series develops students' speaking, listening, reading, and writing skills through activities that appeal to their curiosity and sense of fun.

The syllabus progresses at a natural, steady pace and offers students many opportunities to practice new language. Three recurring characters—Ted, Annie, and Digger the dog—help to maintain student interest and involvement throughout the series.

English Time is preceded by the two-level introductory series *Magic Time*. These two series can be used separately or as one complete eight-level course.

Each level of *English Time* contains:

- Student Book
- Audio Cassette and CD
- Workbook
- Teacher's Book
- Storybook
- Storybook Audio Cassette
- Picture and Word Card Book
- Wall Charts

English Time Teacher's Book 1 provides detailed lesson plans, teaching tips, game ideas, and photocopiable Tests and Worksheets for *English Time* Student Book 1.

